

SIEMENS

Industrial Control Panels and Electrical Equipment of Machinery for North America

A Guide for Practical Use

Reference Manual



[siemens.com/controlpanel](https://www.siemens.com/controlpanel)

[siemens.com/controlpanel/northamerican-standards](https://www.siemens.com/controlpanel/northamerican-standards)

Industrial control panels and electrical equipment of machinery for North America

A Guide for Practical Use

Reference Manual

Authors

Disclaimer of Liability	1
Introduction	2
Area of application for this documentation	3
General information for manufacturers of machinery and their associated electrical equipment	4
Electrical equipment for machines and their associated industrial control panels	5
Overcurrent protection and sizing of the power circuit	6
Overcurrent protection and sizing of the control circuit	7
Grounding	8
Control circuit functions	9
Control equipment	10
Cables and conductors	11
Accessories and lighting	12
Marking the control panel and the machine	13
Technical documentation	14
Testing and verification	15
Special features and general information for Canada	16
Technical inquiries and hotline	A
Appendix	B
Glossary	C

Legal information

Warning notice system

This manual contains notices you have to observe in order to ensure your personal safety, as well as to prevent damage to property. The notices referring to your personal safety are highlighted in the manual by a safety alert symbol, notices referring only to property damage have no safety alert symbol. These notices shown below are graded according to the degree of danger.

 DANGER
indicates that death or severe personal injury will result if proper precautions are not taken.
 WARNING
indicates that death or severe personal injury may result if proper precautions are not taken.
 CAUTION
indicates that minor personal injury can result if proper precautions are not taken.
NOTICE
indicates that property damage can result if proper precautions are not taken.

If more than one degree of danger is present, the warning notice representing the highest degree of danger will be used. A notice warning of injury to persons with a safety alert symbol may also include a warning relating to property damage.

Qualified Personnel

The product/system described in this documentation may be operated only by **personnel qualified** for the specific task in accordance with the relevant documentation, in particular its warning notices and safety instructions. Qualified personnel are those who, based on their training and experience, are capable of identifying risks and avoiding potential hazards when working with these products/systems.

Proper use of Siemens products

Note the following:

 WARNING
Siemens products may only be used for the applications described in the catalog and in the relevant technical documentation. If products and components from other manufacturers are used, these must be recommended or approved by Siemens. Proper transport, storage, installation, assembly, commissioning, operation and maintenance are required to ensure that the products operate safely and without any problems. The permissible ambient conditions must be complied with. The information in the relevant documentation must be observed.

Trademarks

All names identified by ® are registered trademarks of Siemens AG. The remaining trademarks in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owner.

Disclaimer of Liability

We have reviewed the contents of this publication to ensure consistency with the hardware and software described. Since variance cannot be precluded entirely, we cannot guarantee full consistency. However, the information in this publication is reviewed regularly and any necessary corrections are included in subsequent editions.

Authors

Authors

Gerhard Flierl

Dipl.-Ing. **Gerhard Flierl** has been employed by Siemens AG in the area of low-voltage controls and distribution since 1996.

On qualifying as an industrial electronics engineer at Siemens AG, and after studying electrical engineering and business administration, he spent 4 years in the development department of low-voltage circuit protection systems.

Since 2008, he has worked in the areas of technical marketing and technical sales at Siemens AG in Germany, and also for many years at Siemens Industry Inc. in the USA.

His tasks include application consulting for North American regulations, UL / NFPA / ANSI and CSA standards, as well as the relevant IEC standards in the environment of low-voltage controls and distribution.

Email: gerhard.flierl@siemens.com

Martin Berger

Martin Berger has worked at Siemens AG since 1991 during which time he has been active almost exclusively in the area of low-voltage controls and distribution.

On completion of his training, he spent some years in industrial control equipment production. Completion of his advanced training to state-certified technician was followed by seven years developing distribution boards and industrial control equipment. For some of these years, he had project responsibility for new products.

Since 2010, he has worked in the area of technical sales at Siemens AG in Germany.

His tasks include global application consulting for North American regulations, UL / NFPA / ANSI and CSA standards, as well as the relevant IEC standards in the environment of low-voltage controls and distribution.

Email: bergermartin@siemens.com

Table of contents

	Authors	3
1	Disclaimer of Liability	19
2	Introduction	21
3	Area of application for this documentation	23
4	General information for manufacturers of machinery and their associated electrical equipment	25
4.1	Organizations	25
4.2	Laws, general requirements, and rules	30
4.3	Standards	33
4.4	Peculiarities	39
4.5	UL-specific definitions and identification	46
4.5.1	Marks	46
4.5.1.1	UL-listed	47
4.5.1.2	UL-recognized.....	48
4.5.1.3	Practical use of "Listed" and "Recognized"	49
4.5.2	Categorization using the Category Code Number (CCN)	49
4.5.3	Further UL marking "Enhanced Certification Marks and Badges"	51
5	Electrical equipment for machines and their associated industrial control panels	53
5.1	General information	53
5.1.1	Through air and over surface spacings.....	54
5.1.2	Plastic materials	58
5.2	Operating conditions and ambient conditions	61
5.2.1	General information	61
5.2.2	Power supply system configurations.....	62
5.2.3	Selection of the industrial control panel components depending on the existing line system configuration	66
5.3	Incoming supply circuit and disconnecting means	68
5.3.1	Incoming supply circuit conductor and power terminals	68
5.3.2	Disconnecting means.....	70
5.3.2.1	Devices.....	72
5.3.2.2	Sizing	72
5.3.2.3	Excepted circuits.....	76

5.4	Protective measures.....	82
5.4.1	General information	82
5.4.2	Protection against electrical hazards.....	82
5.4.2.1	Basic protection (protection against direct touching)	83
5.4.2.2	Fault protection (protection against indirect touching)	91
5.4.2.3	Protection by the use of protective extra low voltage (PELV) or NEC Class 2 electric circuits	92
5.4.2.4	Protection against residual voltages	94
5.4.3	Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing)	95
5.4.3.1	Background, objective, and purpose.....	95
5.4.3.2	Necessary data and identification by the manufacturer.....	96
6	Overcurrent protection and sizing of the power circuit	99
6.1	General information	99
6.2	Feeder circuit.....	100
6.2.1	Feeder Circuit Protective Device	101
6.2.2	Feeder conductor	101
6.2.3	FLC - Full load current (standard current rating).....	102
6.2.4	Feeder tap conductor UL508A.....	105
6.2.5	Dimensioning of the short-circuit protection device for the feeder circuit.....	106
6.3	Branch Circuit	109
6.3.1	Motor loads	109
6.3.1.1	Single Installation	112
6.3.1.2	Group Installation	140
6.3.2	Non-motor loads.....	147
6.3.2.1	Receptacles	147
6.3.2.2	Heater loads	148
6.3.2.3	Overcurrent protection for appliance loads.....	151
6.3.2.4	Overcurrent protection for lighting loads.....	151
6.3.2.5	Variable-speed drives, servo motors and semiconductor devices.....	152
6.3.2.6	Power transformers	154
6.4	Short-circuit current rating (SCCR) and calculation.....	156
6.4.1	Influence of the type of coordination 1 or 2 on the HIGH-SCCR of checked unit combinations.....	163
7	Overcurrent protection and sizing of the control circuit.....	175
7.1	General information	175
7.2	Classification	176
7.2.1	Class 1 control circuit.....	176
7.2.2	Class 2 control circuit.....	177
7.2.3	Low-voltage limited energy circuit	178
7.3	Power supply and short-circuit protection.....	180
7.3.1	Tapping and power supply	180
7.3.2	Overcurrent protection of control circuits.....	187
7.4	Unlisted components	194

8	Grounding.....	199
8.1	General requirements	199
8.2	Requirements of UL 508A for grounding the industrial control panel	201
8.3	Requirements of NFPA 79 for grounding machinery	207
9	Control circuit functions	215
9.1	Start and stop functions.....	215
9.2	Operating modes.....	216
9.3	Overriding safety functions and protective devices	217
9.4	Operation	218
9.4.1	Start	219
9.4.2	Stop	220
9.4.3	Operations in the event of an emergency (EMERGENCY STOP, EMERGENCY OFF).....	221
10	Control equipment	225
10.1	Enclosure type ratings.....	225
10.2	Working space	232
10.3	Access and maintenance.....	234
10.4	Separation and grouping.....	236
10.4.1	Separation	236
10.4.2	Grouping	237
10.5	Enclosures, doors, and openings	238
10.6	Operator interfaces and control devices	240
10.6.1	General information	240
10.6.2	Location and mounting	241
10.6.2.1	Control devices	241
10.6.2.2	Control equipment outside the industrial control panel in the machinery field	241
10.6.2.3	Protection.....	242
10.6.3	Special features of the individual devices.....	243
10.6.3.1	Arrangement of pushbuttons for START	243
10.6.3.2	Foot-operated switches.....	243
10.6.3.3	Operator controls on pushbuttons and color displays.....	244
10.6.3.4	Flashing lights	247
10.6.3.5	Illuminated pushbuttons	247
10.6.3.6	Rotary control devices.....	247
10.6.4	Devices and requirements for STOP and EMERGENCY STOP.....	248
10.6.4.1	General information	248
10.6.4.2	Types of EMERGENCY STOP devices.....	249
10.6.4.3	EMERGENCY STOP actuators	249
10.6.4.4	Local operation of the disconnecting means to effect EMERGENCY STOP	250
10.6.5	Devices and requirements for the EMERGENCY OFF	251
10.6.5.1	General requirements and position of the EMERGENCY OFF.....	251
10.6.5.2	Types of EMERGENCY OFF devices.....	251
10.6.5.3	Actuators.....	252
10.6.5.4	Local operation of the disconnecting means to effect EMERGENCY OFF	252

11	Cables and conductors	253
11.1	General information	253
11.2	Certifications	254
11.2.1	Inside the industrial control panel	254
11.2.1.1	Power circuit.....	254
11.2.1.2	Control circuit.....	255
11.2.2	Outside the industrial control panel	256
11.2.2.1	Fundamental requirements of cables and conductors.....	256
11.2.2.2	Conductors and cables for flexible applications.....	257
11.2.2.3	Cable drums	259
11.2.2.4	Cords.....	259
11.2.2.5	Special cables and conductors.....	260
11.3	Sizing	264
11.3.1	Inside the industrial control panel UL508A	264
11.3.1.1	Power circuit.....	264
11.3.1.2	Control circuit.....	268
11.3.2	Outside the industrial control panel	268
11.3.2.1	Power circuit.....	269
11.3.2.2	Lighting circuit	273
11.3.2.3	Control circuit.....	274
11.3.3	Sizing examples.....	275
11.4	Identification and color.....	277
11.5	Wiring practice	279
11.5.1	Inside the industrial control panel	280
11.5.1.1	UL 508A	280
11.5.1.2	NFPA 79	283
11.5.2	Outside the industrial control panel	284
11.5.2.1	External raceways (ducts)	285
11.5.2.2	Connection to moving elements of the machine	286
11.5.2.3	Cable handling systems	287
11.5.2.4	Interconnection of devices on the machine	287
11.5.2.5	Attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations	287
11.5.2.6	Dismantling for shipment	288
11.5.2.7	Rigid, flexible and liquidtight cable conduits.....	288
11.5.2.8	Raceways (ducts) and cable trunking systems.....	291
11.5.2.9	Requirements for the proper routing of cables.....	291
12	Accessories and lighting.....	293
12.1	Receptacle for accessories and maintenance	293
12.1.1	Requirements from UL508A.....	293
12.1.1.1	UL tests and certifications	293
12.1.1.2	Ground fault circuit interrupters on receptacles	294
12.1.2	Requirements of NFPA 79	294
12.1.2.1	Receptacles for associated equipment parts of the machine.....	294
12.1.2.2	Receptacles for maintenance purposes.....	296
12.2	Control panel lighting and machine lighting	297
12.2.1	General information	297
12.2.2	Requirements for the industrial control panel in accordance with UL 508A	297
12.2.2.1	Components in the lighting circuit and their certification.....	297

12.2.2.2	Configuration and overcurrent protection in accordance with UL 508A.....	297
12.2.3	Requirements for machines and equipment parts in accordance with NFPA	298
12.2.3.1	General information	298
12.2.3.2	Supply	299
13	Marking the control panel and the machine	305
13.1	General requirements	305
13.2	Nameplate.....	306
13.2.1	Requirements of NFPA 79	306
13.2.2	Requirements according to UL 508A.....	307
13.2.3	Example	308
13.3	Marking of the enclosure type rating on enclosures.....	309
13.4	Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)	310
13.4.1	General information	310
13.4.2	Markings for all field wiring terminals.....	310
13.4.3	Other markings for terminals in control circuits	316
13.5	Warning and safety instructions	318
13.5.1	Warning information in accordance with UL 508A	318
13.5.1.1	General information	318
13.5.1.2	Multiple incoming supply circuits	321
13.5.1.3	Separate markings for circuit breakers and motor circuit breakers.....	322
13.5.2	Safety signs in accordance with NFPA 79 for enclosures with electrical components	324
13.5.2.1	General information	324
13.5.2.2	Hazard warning for electric shock and arc flashes	324
13.5.2.3	Safety sign for disconnecting means	324
13.5.2.4	Arc flash hazards.....	325
13.6	Device marking on the industrial control panel acc. to UL 508A	326
13.6.1	Fuse holders	326
13.6.2	Switches.....	327
13.6.3	Receptacles.....	328
13.6.4	Field-installed devices	329
13.6.5	Separately supplied control circuits	329
13.6.6	Marking in circuit diagrams / wiring diagrams.....	329
13.6.7	Function identification.....	330
13.7	Marking of equipment in accordance with NFPA 79.....	331
14	Technical documentation	333
14.1	General requirements and information.....	333
14.2	Documentation according to UL 508A for machine control panels	335
14.3	Documentation according to NFPA 79 for the electrical equipment of machines and systems	336
14.3.1	Installation diagrams according to NFPA 79.....	337
14.3.2	Layout diagrams, block diagrams, and function diagrams	338
14.3.3	Operating manual.....	345
14.3.4	Maintenance manual	345
14.3.5	Parts list.....	347

15	Testing and verification	349
15.1	General information	349
15.2	Testing and verification	350
16	Special features and general information for Canada	355
16.1	Market access and general conditions	355
16.2	Important Canadian authorities and organizations.....	356
16.3	The most important Canadian standards	358
16.4	Units, definitions and other specifics	360
16.5	Short-circuit current ratings in Canada	362
A	Technical inquiries and hotline	363
B	Appendix	365
B.1	Conversion tables and factors	365
B.2	Control Panel Design in the TIA Selection Tool: Automatic dimensioning of the electrical system according to North American standards	368
B.3	NX Industrial Electrical Design.....	369
B.4	Checklists	372
B.4.1	Checklist for industrial control panels and the electrical equipment of machinery for North America (UL 508A and NFPA 79)	372
B.4.2	Flexible cords and cables.....	374
B.5	Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA	377
C	Glossary	417

Tables

Table 4- 1	UL marks	46
Table 4- 2	Significance of the additional digit (in fifth position)	49
Table 4- 3	Examples of product classifications (Category Code Numbers - CCN).....	50
Table 5- 1	Inquiry form (extract)	53
Table 5- 2	Extract from UL 508A, Table 10.2: Feeder circuits.....	56
Table 5- 3	Extract from UL 508A, Table 10.1 for branch circuits branch circuits and electric circuits max. 600 V	57
Table 5- 4	Generic materials for use as barriers.....	60
Table 5- 5	Generic materials for direct support of uninsulated live parts.....	60
Table 5- 6	Wire-bending space	69
Table 5- 7	Minimum distance from an opening to a part involving risk of electric shock or personal injury.....	84
Table 6- 1	FLC, motor standard currents in ampere, dependent on AC motor outputs, voltages and number of phases.....	103
Table 6- 2	FLC, motor standard currents in ampere, dependent on DC motor outputs and the voltage....	104
Table 6- 3	Different construction types of "standard motor feeder types Type A to F"	110
Table 6- 4	Required controller ratings for various load types	112
Table 6- 5	Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes.....	114
Table 6- 6	Horse power for Types 3RT1054.....	116
Table 6- 7	Short-circuit breaking capacity Excerpt from the catalog LV18 circuit breaker 3VA5..by Siemens	121
Table 6- 8	Contactor sizing for wye-delta controller	137
Table 6- 9	Horsepower ratings of wye-delta controllers using standard size contactors.....	138
Table 6- 10	Horsepower ratings of standard size full-voltage magnetic motor controllers	138
Table 6- 11	Basic functions of the motor branch circuit.....	140
Table 6- 12	Sizing of primary winding only branch circuit protection.....	154
Table 6- 13	Sizing of primary and secondary branch circuit protection of a power transformer	155
Table 6- 14	Assumed standard SCCR values for unmarked components.....	159
Table 6- 15	Single phase transformer secondary available short circuit currents ^a	168
Table 6- 16	Three-phase transformer secondary available short circuit currents ^a	168
Table 6- 17	Peak let-through currents and I ² t values for fuses	171
Table 7- 1	Overcurrent protection for a low-voltage limited energy circuit	178
Table 7- 2	Sizing of primary winding only overcurrent protection of a control transformer	189
Table 7- 3	Sizing of primary and secondary overcurrent protective devices.....	190
Table 7- 4	Motor branch circuit protection of common control circuit without remote control devices....	190
Table 7- 5	Motor branch circuit protection of common control circuit with remote control devices.....	192
Table 7- 6	Example - Devices to be protected by a "Ground fault circuit interrupter"	195
Table 7- 7	Example "Logging form".....	198
Table 8- 1	Size of equipment grounding conductor terminal.....	202

Table 8- 2	Minimum size of equipment grounding conductors and bonding jumpers	210
Table 9- 1	Stop categories.....	215
Table 10- 1	List of all currently applicable "Enclosure ratings" for "Non-Hazardous" locations	226
Table 10- 2	Openings for conduit connections in enclosures with environmental rating other than Type 1	227
Table 10- 3	Openings for components in enclosures with environmental rating other than Type 1	228
Table 10- 4	Alternative enclosure ratings	229
Table 10- 5	Examples of enclosure ratings; comparison between Enclosure Type Rating and IP (Ingress Protection) rating	230
Table 10- 6	NFPA 79 Table F.5.5 "Assignment of IP-ratings to type-rated enclosures"	231
Table 10- 7	Working space depth	232
Table 10- 8	Colors for the operator controls of pushbuttons	245
Table 10- 9	Colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays	246
Table 11- 1	Single conductor characteristics.....	257
Table 11- 2	Derating factors for cables wound on drums	259
Table 11- 3	AWM style number system (4 or 5-digit number).....	263
Table 11- 4	Current carrying capacity and protection for power circuits with AWG 16 and AWG 18 conductors	264
Table 11- 5	Ampacities of insulated conductors.....	266
Table 11- 6	Ampacities of control circuit conductors.....	268
Table 11- 7	Conductor current carrying capacity based on copper conductors with 60 °C (140 °F), 75 °C (167 °F) and 90 °C (194 °F) temperature stability of the insulation in an ambient temperature of 30 °C (86 °F)	269
Table 11- 8	Ambient temperature correction factors.....	270
Table 11- 9	Adjustment factors for more than three current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable	270
Table 11- 10	Current carrying capacity for cords at an ambient temperature of 30 °C (86 °F).....	273
Table 11- 11	Metric designators/trade sizes	289
Table 11- 12	Minimum Radii of Conduit Bends	290
Table 11- 13	Support of Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC).....	290
Table 13- 1	Tightening torque for screws	313
Table 13- 2	Tightening torque for slotted head screws smaller than No. 10 intended for use with 8 AWG (8.4 mm ²) or smaller conductors	314
Table 13- 3	Tightening torque for socket head screws	314
Table 13- 4	Current carrying capacity of field wiring conductors smaller than 14 AWG (2.1 mm ²).....	317
Table 13- 5	Selection guide for signal word when death or injury can occur	319
Table 13- 6	Selection guide for signal word in the case of minor or moderate injury.....	320
Table 13- 7	Selection guide for signal word if there is no risk of injury	320
Table 14- 1	Summary of the required information and specifications	336
Table 14- 2	Examples of equipment designations	341
Table 15- 1	Verification of continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit.....	351

Table 16- 1	Various constructions of combination motor controllers	361
Table B- 1	Conversion of Fahrenheit to Celsius, and Celsius to Fahrenheit	365
Table B- 2	Celsius vs. Fahrenheit	365
Table B- 3	Converting different power specifications	366

Figures

Figure 4-1	Overview of the connections between the relevant authorities, laws, codes, and standards for building industrial control panels and machines	32
Figure 4-2	NEC acceptance	39
Figure 4-3	Overview diagram showing the use of different standards.....	40
Figure 4-4	Example: Label for a panel including devices and wiring	48
Figure 4-5	Future transition of the previous marking to the UL "enhanced" marking (source: http://www.ul.com)	51
Figure 4-6	Example of UL enhanced marking	51
Figure 5-1	Illustration Feeder Circuit – Branch Circuit	55
Figure 5-2	Example of "Manual self-protected combination motor controller" according to UL 508 Type E	56
Figure 5-3	Example Plastic Recognition Yellow Card	59
Figure 5-4	Line system configuration: Solidly grounded wye 480Y/277 V 3-phase, 4-wire	63
Figure 5-5	Grounded delta system, 480 V, 3-phase, 3-wire.....	64
Figure 5-6	Midpoint grounded delta 240/10 V 3-phase 4 wire	65
Figure 5-7	Sample nameplate of a motor circuit breaker approved for 65 kA at 240 V and 480Y / 277 V	67
Figure 5-8	Wire-bending space	69
Figure 5-9	Connection of the supply conductor to the disconnecting means.....	70
Figure 5-10	Installation height of main control switch.....	71
Figure 5-11	Example of the configuration of an excepted circuit	78
Figure 5-12	Example for the safety information: "Excepted Circuit" (NFPA 79)	79
Figure 5-13	Example of the configuration of an excepted circuit	79
Figure 5-14	IEC 417, symbol 5036, Warning against a hazardous electric voltage	80
Figure 5-15	Warning label excepted circuit (UL 508A)	81
Figure 5-16	Insulated cables	85
Figure 5-17	Test finger in accordance with NFPA 79, Fig. 6.2.3	86
Figure 5-18	SIRIUS M200D distributed motor starter	87
Figure 5-19	Label for a UL-tested empty industrial control panel enclosure.....	87
Figure 5-20	Example: Defeating with a screwdriver.....	88
Figure 5-21	Example: Switching on the main control switch with open door with deliberate action without tools by actuating a lever on the reverse side of the door with the left hand.	88

Figure 5-22	Equipment for door mounting	89
Figure 5-23	"Key or tool, dead front cover" warning label (NFPA79)	90
Figure 5-24	"Double Insulation" symbol (protection class 2)	91
Figure 5-25	Example configuration of a protective extra low voltage (PELV) circuit.....	93
Figure 5-26	SINAMICS frequency converters with warning sign	94
Figure 5-27	NFPA 70E Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace	95
Figure 5-28	Label warning against arcing faults	96
Figure 5-29	Warning sign relating to the arc flash hazard that specifies the safety limits and the occurring arc energy in cal/cm ²	97
Figure 6-1	Overview of feeder and branch circuit of main circuits.....	100
Figure 6-2	Example of sizing the feeder circuit.....	107
Figure 6-3	Result of the example for the dimensioning of the protection device in the Feeder Circuit.....	108
Figure 6-4	Examples of Type F and Type C	111
Figure 6-5	Siemens motor	115
Figure 6-6	Determining the motor standard current.....	115
Figure 6-7	Selection of the motor controller	116
Figure 6-8	Selection of the overload protective device	117
Figure 6-9	Selection of the short-circuit protective device	118
Figure 6-10	Fully dimensioned branch circuit.....	119
Figure 6-11	Sizing of the wiring.....	120
Figure 6-12	Excerpt High SCCR Combination test from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the overload relays 3RU2146...by Siemens.....	121
Figure 6-13	Excerpt High SCCR Combination test from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT105... by Siemens	122
Figure 6-14	Combined SCCR of all components in the feeder	122
Figure 6-15	200 HP Siemens motor: 1LE23214DC512AA3	123
Figure 6-16	Excerpt of the horse power table from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the soft starter 3RW 52 / 55 by Siemens. Selection of the 3RW5244 or 3RW5544 for 200 HP for 480 V	124
Figure 6-17	High SCCR Combination test from UL Certificate of Compliance of the soft starter 3RW 52 / 55 by Siemens	125
Figure 6-18	Siemens motor: 1LE23213DA212AA3	130
Figure 6-19	Selection of the motor controller	131
Figure 6-20	Horse power tables from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT204.. frame size S3 from Siemens	131
Figure 6-21	Extract from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT204.. frame size S3 from Siemens	132
Figure 6-22	Selection of the protection device	133
Figure 6-23	Certificate of Compliance: Setting range and horse power rating of the 3RV2041 - 4Y..	134
Figure 6-24	Certificate of Compliance: Short-circuit breaking capacity of the 3RV2041 - 4Y	134
Figure 6-25	Sizing the cable	135

Figure 6-26	Wye-delta circuits in accordance with UL 508A (source: UL 508A, Figure 33.1)	136
Figure 6-27	Siemens motor	139
Figure 6-28	Sizing of a contactor assembly for wye-delta start	139
Figure 6-29	Group installation method 1	141
Figure 6-30	Group installation without tap conductor protection method 2.....	143
Figure 6-31	Group installation with tap conductor protection method 2.....	144
Figure 6-32	Group installation method 3	146
Figure 6-33	Marking of a receptacle.....	147
Figure 6-34	Extract from a UL Report Supplementary sheet of a Siemens SINAMICS G120 PM 240-2, to be protected with 3RV20 motor starter protector SINAMICS Basic Line Modules	152
Figure 6-35	Extract from the UL report of the Siemens Sinamics G120D drive.....	153
Figure 6-36	Example of 3RT contactor label	158
Figure 6-37	Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of the device marking"	158
Figure 6-38	Example "Determination of the Combined SCCR of the feeder on the basis of the standard SCCR of the individual components"	160
Figure 6-39	Extract from the Certificate of Compliance of the Siemens 3RT2015... contactor.....	161
Figure 6-40	Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of tested device combinations"	161
Figure 6-41	Diagram showing "short-circuit limiting in the feeder circuit"	166
Figure 6-42	Let-through characteristic of a circuit breaker marked as "current limiting".....	169
Figure 6-43	Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of a short-circuit-current-limiting fuse"	174
Figure 7-1	Control circuit with separate incoming supply circuit conductor.....	180
Figure 7-2	Control circuit tapped upstream of the main control switch	181
Figure 7-3	Control circuit tapped downstream of the main control switch and upstream of the load branch circuits	182
Figure 7-4	Control circuit tapped downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device"	183
Figure 7-5	Device protection switch 5SK9	186
Figure 7-6	Comparison of "Supplementary Protector" and "Circuit Breaker" in the design of miniature circuit breakers	188
Figure 7-7	Tapping downstream of the main control switch and downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" of a motor feeder without control circuit components inside the cabinet without remote control.....	191
Figure 7-8	Tapping downstream of the main control switch downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" of a motor feeder without control circuit components outside the cabinet with remote control.....	193
Figure 7-9	Design of a control circuit for an unlisted component.....	196
Figure 7-10	Ground fault circuit interrupter	198
Figure 8-1	Grounding concept of an industrial control panel	207
Figure 8-2	Equipment grounding terminals for the incoming supply circuit conductor	209
Figure 8-3	Ungrounded control circuits.....	213
Figure 8-4	Lighting circuits	213

Figure 10-1	Grouping and separating terminals for the connection of external conductors	237
Figure 10-2	Machine environment.....	241
Figure 10-3	Proximity switch	242
Figure 10-4	Siemens 3SE2 foot-operated switch with cover	243
Figure 10-5	Siemens 3SU1 mushroom pushbutton	244
Figure 10-6	Siemens pushbutton 3SU1 with raised button.....	244
Figure 10-7	Example of Siemens 8WD4 signal column	246
Figure 10-8	Siemens illuminated pushbuttons 3SU1	247
Figure 10-9	Handle rotary switch.....	247
Figure 10-10	Example of operator station with EMERGENCY STOP	248
Figure 10-11	Symbol for EMERGENCY STOP	249
Figure 10-12	Door coupling rotary operating mechanism for EMERGENCY STOP.....	250
Figure 10-13	Example of an EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the application.....	252
Figure 11-1	Selection of "UL-listed" conductors suitable for industrial machines	256
Figure 11-2	Example of AS-Interface cable as a component of a tested application	260
Figure 11-3	Example of a motor cable on the load side of a variable-speed drive with associated extract from the Guide Info (UL database) of the manufacturer.....	261
Figure 11-4	Extract from the guide information for style number 1866	262
Figure 11-5	Example of a nameplate	267
Figure 11-6	Example of conductor identification.....	278
Figure 11-7	Example identification of an electrical enclosure	280
Figure 11-8	Manual crimping operation.....	281
Figure 11-9	Cable entry example	281
Figure 11-10	Cable clamp example.....	282
Figure 11-11	Example of cable fixing.....	283
Figure 11-12	Example of supporting using cable clamps	283
Figure 11-13	Cable entry through a connection receptacle (socket) in accordance with UL 514B	284
Figure 11-14	Conductors routed in raceways	285
Figure 11-15	Cable routing to moving elements of the machine	285
Figure 11-16	Drum cable example	286
Figure 11-17	Coded receptacle example	288
Figure 11-18	Examples of cable conduits.....	289
Figure 11-19	Example of exposed cables	291
Figure 12-1	Siemens 5TE6 800 receptacle in accordance with UL 498, with cover	295
Figure 12-2	Siemens GFCI, class A according to UL 943, 2-pole, I Δ N = 5 mA	296
Figure 12-3	Design of machine lighting option 1	299
Figure 12-4	Design of machine lighting option 2	300
Figure 12-5	Design of machine lighting option 3	301
Figure 12-6	Supply disconnecting means.....	302
Figure 12-7	Supply disconnecting means A.....	303

Figure 12-8	Structure machine lighting, using the example inside industrial control panel option 5	304
Figure 13-1	Marking of the incoming supply circuit conductor with overcurrent protection	307
Figure 13-2	Example of a nameplate	308
Figure 13-3	Marking of industrial control panel sections	309
Figure 13-4	Example of terminal marking	311
Figure 13-5	Example of terminal marking with spring-loaded terminals.....	312
Figure 13-6	Example of terminal marking with "wire binding screw".....	312
Figure 13-7	Siemens 8WH grounding terminals	315
Figure 13-8	Siemens 8WH terminal arrangement.....	316
Figure 13-9	Example of warning information on the industrial control panel enclosure	318
Figure 13-10	Flowchart for selecting signal words	320
Figure 13-11	Notes on security.....	321
Figure 13-12	Example marking for multiple incoming supply circuit conductors	321
Figure 13-13	Example of warning notice for Instantaneous trip circuit breaker.....	322
Figure 13-14	Example of warning notice for instantaneous trip circuit breaker.....	322
Figure 13-15	Example of warning notice for motor circuit breakers.....	323
Figure 13-16	Example of warning notice for motor circuit breakers.....	323
Figure 13-17	IEC symbol for the use of electrical components in enclosures	324
Figure 13-18	Example of safety sign for disconnecting means.....	325
Figure 13-19	Example of safety sign when using attachment plugs as the disconnecting means.....	325
Figure 13-20	Example of marking for fuse holders	326
Figure 13-21	Toggle lever for main disconnecting means.....	327
Figure 13-22	Example of the marking indicating that switching under load is prohibited	327
Figure 13-23	Example of the marking of receptacles for control circuit devices.....	328
Figure 13-24	Example of text for the marking	328
Figure 13-25	Siemens twin pushbutton with 3SB31 00 indicator light function identification on the actuator	330
Figure 13-26	Siemens 3SB3 38 pendant pushbutton with customized components, function identification adjacent to the actuator.....	330
Figure 14-1	Example of a block diagram	338
Figure 14-2	Examples of function diagrams	339
Figure 14-3	Example of control circuit diagram	342
Figure 14-4	Power circuit according to IEC representation.....	343
Figure 14-5	Control circuit according to IEC representation	344

Disclaimer of Liability

The information herein is provided as a general reference regarding the use of Siemens products in generic applications. This information is provided without warranty. It is your responsibility to ensure that you are correctly using/servicing all Siemens products properly in your specific application. Although we strive to maintain accurate and up-to-date information, there is no guarantee that the information provided herein is accurate or applies to your specific situation.

If you use the information provided herein in your specific application, please double check its accuracy and applicability and be advised that you are using this information at your own risk.

Introduction

This manual is a supporting guide produced by Siemens experts working in the field of low-voltage controls and distribution.

Target group

This manual is primarily addressed to the electrical designers of the following target groups:

- Plant manufacturers
- Industrial control panel builders
- Machine builders

The information in this manual is intended as an aid to users in practical issues.

Typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards

The typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards are not binding and do not claim to be complete regarding configuration, equipment or any other eventuality.

The typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards do not represent specific customer solutions, but are only intended to provide support when it comes to typical applications.

Every user is responsible for the correct operation of the products described.

The typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards do not relieve you of your responsibility to ensure safe handling when using, installing, operating, and maintaining the equipment. By using these typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards, you agree that Siemens cannot be held liable for possible damage beyond the scope of the liability outlined above. We reserve the right to make changes and revisions to these typical circuit diagrams and interpretations of standards without prior announcement.

Information about the sources used

Many of the tables and texts in this guide have been taken directly from the relevant regulations, standards, and codes. All users must always check whether the items quoted are still up to date and applicable or not.

The information provided in this manual will not, in most cases, be sufficient to attain approval, listing, certification, or authorization. Detailed knowledge of the corresponding regulations is needed for this.

Some expressions can end up lost in translation, which is why, in many cases, the German version still provides English terms in brackets and/or continues to use the English expressions and concepts.*

* Applies to the German version

Many of the terms and expressions used are explained in the Glossary (Page 417).

Provisions

The manual is based on ANSI, UL, and NFPA standards (originating in the USA), and contains primarily provisions from the following standards and codes:

- NFPA70, National Electrical Code, NEC
- NFPA 79, Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery
- UL 508A, Standard for Safety, Industrial Control Panels

Industrial control panels and equipment for machinery manufactured for and circulated in the US market must comply with the relevant regulations as a minimum requirement. This document is designed to aid manufacturers and their suppliers, regardless of whether the manufacturer exports the goods to the USA, or manufactures them on-site in the USA.

Electrical installations are inspected by local authorized bodies who usually use the **National Electrical Code®** (see Chapter Standards (Page 33)) as the basis for their work. NEC® specifies that all devices, apparatus, accessories, machinery and conductors must be approved for electrical installation. This means all such equipment installed in the USA shall be approved by the **Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ)** – see Chapter Organizations (Page 25)).

In many application cases, however, the NEC does not specify all the necessary details. To meet the needs of the manufacturer in spite of this, this guide makes liberal use of provisions from other relevant standards and regulations. The applications described here are generally recognized practices.

Area of application for this documentation

This guide is focused on the design of electrical equipment for machinery, in other words Industrial Control Panels, for general use according to the UL standard UL 508A, and general electrical equipment for industrial machinery and systems according to NFPA 79.

The NEC (National Electrical Code – NFPA 70), which is of higher importance, is also applicable in many respects and is referenced at various points in this guide.

Industrial control panels and items of general electrical machinery equipment are either built by the panel builder for the purpose of supplying them separately or incorporating them into other distribution systems, plants or machines, or they are otherwise produced by the machine manufacturers themselves.

As this guide is based heavily on specifications from standards, the area of application is, accordingly, based on these standards as well. Details of the area of application based on the key standards referred to (UL 508A, NFPA 79, and NEC) can be found in Chapter Standards (Page 33).

In addition, this guide is limited exclusively to information on the electrical safety required for industrial control panels and electrical equipment for machines and systems. Other aspects such as machine safety, explosion protection, and electromagnetic compatibility are not the primary focus of this documentation.

General information for manufacturers of machinery and their associated electrical equipment

4

4.1 Organizations

This chapter deals primarily with organizations, authorities, and standardization bodies in North America. To provide a clearer picture of the variety of these organizations, some of the more significant ones are listed here individually along with an explanation of their roles.

ANSI (American National Standard Institute)

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI)¹⁾ is the US authority on the standardization of industrial practices. ANSI is a member of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO).

¹⁾ 1919 to 1928 AESC (American Engineering Standards Committee), 1928 to 1966 ASA (American Standards Association), 1966 to 1969 USASI (United States of America Standards Institute)

As the voice of US standardization and conformity assessment procedures, ANSI enables its members and clients to strengthen the US economy in the global marketplace. At the same time, it supports the health and safety concerns of its consumers as well as promoting environmental protection. To achieve this, ANSI monitors the development, publication, and use of thousands of standards and directives in nearly all sectors, including power distribution, construction machinery, milk and livestock production, and many more besides.

As an organization, ANSI itself does not actually draw up standards, but instead certifies and evaluates standards produced by private standardization bodies (for example UL).

Examples:

- ANSI/NFPA 70 (NEC), ANSI/NFPA 79 Industrial Machinery
- ANSI/UL 508 Industrial Control Equipment
- ANSI/NEMA Z535 Series

UL508A Edition 3 has been an ANSI standard since July 2018.

Additional information

You can find more information on the Internet at the website of the American National Standards Institute (<http://www.ansi.org>).

4.1 Organizations

UL (Underwriters Laboratories)

UL was founded in 1894 and is an independent organization that inspects and certifies products in terms of their safety. The company is headquartered in Northbrook, Illinois.

UL International Germany GmbH, meanwhile, is based in Neu-Isenburg, near Frankfurt am Main.

The primary focus for UL is on testing and certifying products, materials, components, and systems to ensure that they correspond to and fulfill the specific requirements.

In doing so, UL does not approve any products in the sense of meeting legal requirements; the UL mark is actually a voluntary one that is particularly widespread and accepted in the USA.

As part of its work, UL carries out tests according to its own UL standards, or on the basis of other standards, and issues the respective UL mark accordingly.

Alongside this objective, UL also creates many significant and necessary standards, such as UL 508A for Industrial Control Panels.

Additional information

More information is available on the Internet:

- UL (<http://www.ul.com>)
- UL - Online Certifications Directory (<http://www.ul.com/database>)
- Access to UL standards (<http://ulstandardsinfontel.ul.com/scopes/>)

CSA (Canadian Standards Association)

The CSA was founded in 1919 under the name "Canadian Engineering Standards Association (CESA)", and was officially renamed as CSA in 1944. Its headquarters are in Mississauga, Ontario.

For industrial control panel building, the standard "CSA 22.2 No. 286 Industrial control panels and assemblies" published by the CSA is the approximate counterpart to "UL 508A Industrial Control Panels" published by UL.

Additional information

More information is available on the Internet:

- CSA Group (<http://www.csagroup.org>)
- CSA Group - Certified Product Listing (CPL) (<http://www.csagroup.org/ca/en/services/testing-and-certification/certified-product-listing>)
- CSA Group - Codes & Standards (<http://www.csagroup.org/us/en/services/codes-and-standards>)

NEMA (National Electrical Manufacturer Association)

NEMA is an American association with over 400 members, which both serves as a professional association for the North American electrotechnical industry and represents its interests. It was founded on September 1, 1926 and its headquarters are located in Rosslyn, Virginia.

Under the supervision of NEMA, a number of standards exist for the electrotechnical sector.

Examples:

- ANSI/NEMA MG 1: Motors and Generators
- ANSI Z535 series: Safety Signs, Labels and further information
- ANSI C12.1: Electric Meters-Code for Electricity Metering
- ANSI/NEMA 250: Enclosures for Electrical Equipment

Additional information

You can find more information on the Internet at the website of the National Electrical Manufacturer Association (<http://www.nema.org>).

NFPA (National Fire Protection Association)

The NFPA is an international, not-for-profit organization that was founded in 1896. The headquarters are in Quincy, Massachusetts.

The aim of the NFPA is to reduce the effects of fires and other hazards. This is essentially promoted by developing standards and regulations, education and training, and carrying out investigations.

In the area of standards and regulations, the NFPA is in charge of approximately 300 documents on fire protection. This includes establishing criteria in the fields of building construction, procedures, and processes for service and installation work in the USA and many other countries.

One of the most fundamental regulations of the NFPA when it comes to electrical aspects of installation is the NEC (NFPA 70). Not only is the NEC (NFPA 70) compulsory in the USA, it has also been accepted and adopted almost in its entirety in many other countries too.

Additional information

You can find more information on the Internet at the website of the National Fire Protection Association (<http://www.nfpa.org>).

4.1 Organizations

IAEI (International Association of Electrical Inspectors)

The IAEI was founded in 1928 and is a leading industrial organization in the electrical sector, with its headquarters in Richardson, Texas, USA. One of its primary responsibilities is to promote safe products and installations.

Its members include testing laboratories, standardization bodies, manufacturers, wholesalers, fitters, and, of course, inspectors.

The IAEI is a not-for-profit organization run by its members, whose main objectives include training and certifying inspectors as well as developing standards and regulations.

Additional information

You can find more information on the Internet at the website of the International Association of Electrical Inspectors (<http://www.iaei.org>).

OSHA (Occupational Safety and Health Administration)

OSHA is an authority in the USA that was founded in 1971 for the purpose of enforcing occupational health and safety laws. The primary objective of OSHA is to reduce the number of accidents in the workplace.

OSHA operates under the authority of the US Department of Labor. The laws and specifications of this federal authority are applicable in all US states, unless individual state specifications are stricter than OSHA's federal specifications. 22 states have their own laws, OSHA specifications apply in 29 US states.

These include OSHA 29 and, therefore, the essential CFR 1910¹⁾ "Safety and Health Standards", which covers topics such as electrical and mechanical safety, as well as hazardous materials. As a result, CFR 1910 is particularly important for machine manufacturers and ICP manufacturers.

¹⁾ CFR – Code of Federal Regulation

Further to these laws and specifications, OSHA also certifies and accredits NRTLs (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories). Among OSHA requirements are that equipment in electrical installations (e.g. on machinery and in plants) must be tested and listed in accordance with American product safety standards. Only those testing organizations that have been accredited accordingly by OSHA (NRTLs) are permitted to carry out these tests and certifications.

Additional information

You can find more information on the Internet at the website of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (<http://www.osha.gov>).

The NRTLs recognized by OSHA can be found online at Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories (NRTLs) (<https://www.osha.gov/dts/otpc/nrtl/nrtllist.html>).

AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction)

In the USA, "Authority Having Jurisdiction" (AHJ) is used to define an organization, office, or individual that is responsible for implementing the following requirements:

- Requirements from legislation and standards
- Requirements for certifying equipment and materials
- Requirements for installations and procedures

The AHJ plays a crucial role in the North American safety concept. Its most important role in respect of electrical safety is checking electrical installations in compliance with the National Electrical Codes (NEC).

The phrase "authority having jurisdiction", or its acronym AHJ, is used in NFPA documents in a broad manner, since local jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities.

In matters of public safety, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or regional authority. In this particular case, the AHJ may even be an individual. Examples: competent expert; fire chief; head of a fire safety, labor, or health authority; site manager; electrical inspector; or another person with legal responsibility.

For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the authority having jurisdiction.

In many cases, the product owner or their authorized representative assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction. In government institutions, the Head of Service can act as the authority having jurisdiction.

4.2 Laws, general requirements, and rules

Many products in the USA are subject to what are known as the Codes of Federal Regulations (CFR). The CFRs are federal laws that, in some cases, require products to be approved before they can be launched on the market.

The USA has many federal authorities in place, including:

- FDA ("Food and Drug Administration", Website FDA (<http://www.fda.gov>))
- FCC ("Federal Communications Commission", Website FCC (<http://www.fcc.gov>))
- OSHA ("Occupational Health and Safety Administration", Website OSHA (<http://www.osha.gov>))

OSHA is a particularly important authority that is associated with the Department of Labor. It issues the binding statutory regulations for occupational safety that are common to all US states. These statutory regulations are essentially requirements that are aimed at operators (occupational safety).

Alongside many other requirements, the OSHA Safety and Health Standards in Article 29, Part 1910 of the CFR are particularly relevant to operators of electrical and mechanical systems. It is therefore worth highlighting the following two subdivisions as especially important for machines and electrically operated equipment:

- **Machine Safeguarding**, Article 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart O
- **Electrical**, Article 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart S

In conjunction with certain applications, OSHA requires that all electrical Equipment be authorized by an OSHA-accredited NRTL for the specific application.

Essentially, all electrical systems must obtain a construction license. This is provided by the local authority having jurisdiction. It is regulated on a federal level and responsibility for it lies with various departments in each of the individual states; in many cases, this may be the State Electrical Commission, the State Fire Marshal, or the Department of Public Safety. Also refer to AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction) in Chapter Organizations (Page 25).

These departments are responsible for monitoring and implementing standards and laws; certifying devices, materials, and systems; and for correct installation. However, the departments do not themselves test the devices to be installed, but instead have this carried out by the responsible Third-Parties, the NRTLs. In the USA, the best-known Third-Party organization providing these kinds of approvals and testing services for accession to the market is UL. Also refer to UL (Underwriters Laboratories) in Chapter Organizations (Page 25).

The "Electrical Inspection Manual" is based on the NEC (NFPA 70) and is regularly used when checking and approving electrical installations. Its introduction includes the following two statements which should be emphasized:

Approved

Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. [Approval is a primary responsibility of an electrical inspector. Investigations by a third-party and the listing and labeling that result are a great aid to inspectors in this responsibility (see "Labeled" and "Listed").]

⇒ The inspector decides what is accepted and what is not. The UL marks provide a valuable point of reference and assistance for the inspector.

AHJ function

The key to a successful and correct electrical inspection lies in applying the rules of the Code, not the personal preferences of the inspector. To reiterate, if the installation meets the Code requirements (including any local amendments) and is safe, the installation should pass inspection.

⇒ The application and fulfillment of the NEC (the Code) perform a key function in helping the inspector to reach a decision concerning acceptance and approval.

The figure below shows an overview of the relevant authorities, laws, and codes, going right down to the level of the key standards in each case for constructing industrial control panels and machines, along with the connections between them. This diagram is only intended to serve as a guide and does not include all federal authorities, rules, laws, or relevant standards. Further applicable standards for machine construction can be found in Chapter Standards (Page 33).

4.2 Laws, general requirements, and rules

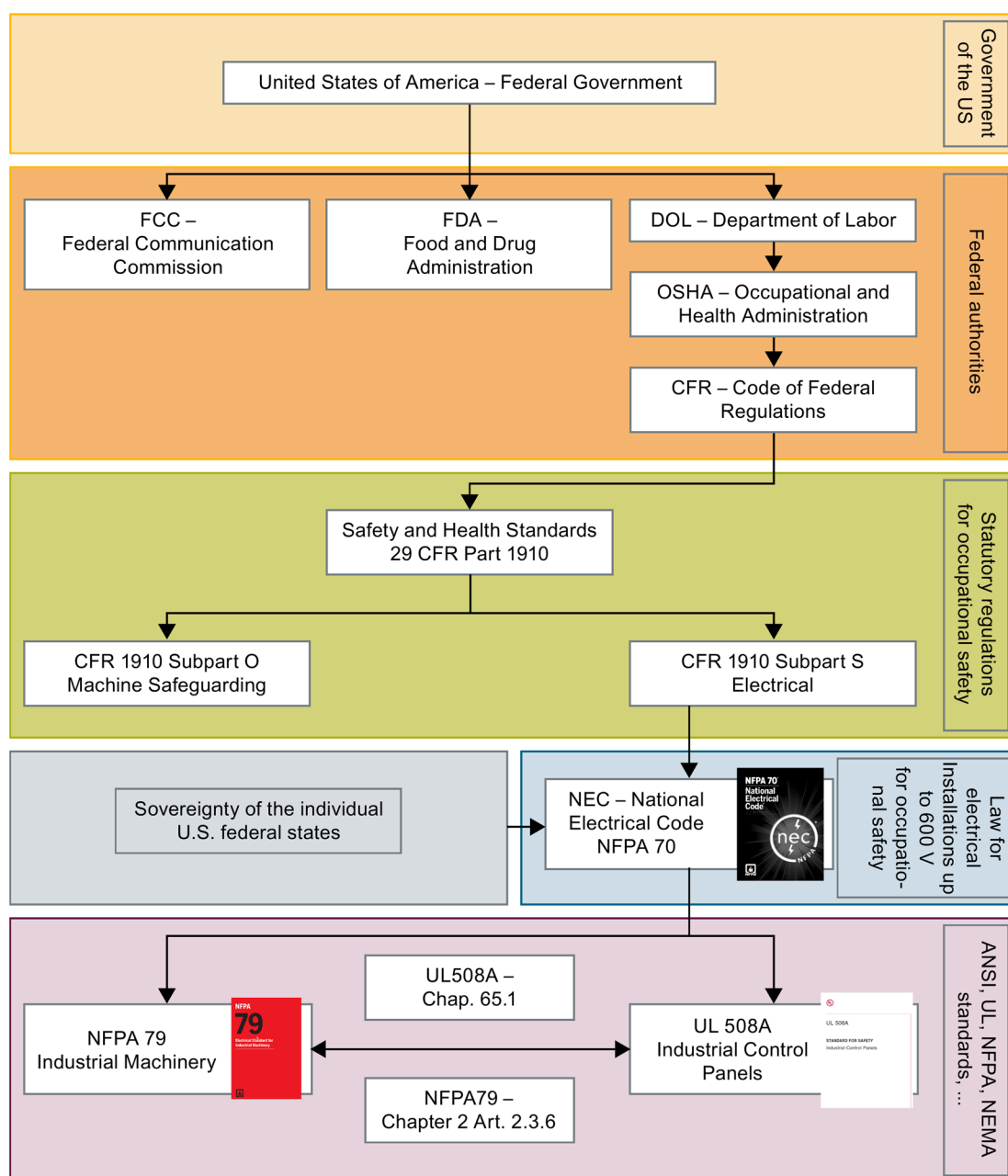


Figure 4-1 Overview of the connections between the relevant authorities, laws, codes, and standards for building industrial control panels and machines

4.3 Standards

This chapter provides an insight into the world of standards in the USA. It also includes a list and explanation of the standards substantially referred to in this documentation.

The Figure 4-3 Overview diagram showing the use of different standards (Page 40) provides an overview of the application area of the standards described in this guide.

In the USA, the standards listed below are important for manufacturers of machinery, systems, and industrial control panels for electrical safety and the relevant areas of application.

NEC (National Electrical Code)

Area of application

The NEC covers the installation of electrical wires, equipment, and associated cable ducts, as well as the configuration and routing of signal and communication lines and their equipment in the following areas:

- On private and public land including buildings, vehicles, houses, mobile homes and houseboats, farms, land, fairs, and industrial connection stations
- Installation of conductors and equipment for the electrical supply
- Installations for the electrical utility company, e.g. in buildings, warehouses, offices, and workshops that are not part of the power plant or its industrial control panel buildings and controls.

The NEC **does not cover**, for example, installations on ships or watercraft (with the exception of house boats), trains, airplanes, or automobiles. Further exceptions can be found in NEC, Art. 90.2 (B).

The NEC is **the definitive** regulation for low-voltage installations and, unlike standards, it is prescribed by law in the USA.

The first edition of the NEC was issued as early as 1897. The NEC is updated and published every three years.

The NEC can be viewed online for free on the Website of the NFPA (<http://www.nfpa.org>).

UL 508A Industrial Control Panels

Area of application

- Industrial control panels for industrial use
 - Installed in accordance with the NEC (NFPA 70) in a conventional, industrial environment
 - Max. 40 °C ambient temperature
 - Max. supply voltage of 1000 V
- Design of cabinet frames, industrial machines, industrial control panels for cranes or lifting devices, feeder cabinets, elevator controls, burner controls, industrial control panels on ships with a total length > 20 meters, air conditioning systems and cooling devices, water fountains, irrigation systems, industrial control panels for amusement parks with water attractions as well as swimming pools and jacuzzis.
- Controls for stationary, motor-actuated machines and systems

Definition of the control panel:

In this case, the definition of Industrial Control Panels covers at least two or more components in the main and/or control circuit. Examples of these include circuit breakers, control devices, commanding and signaling devices, fuses with the corresponding conductors, electrical and mechanical connections, and construction parts. The components can be installed on or inside an enclosure, or on a mounting panel.

In this regard, the specifications in the standard are limited exclusively to the industrial control panel itself and do not make any stipulations for incoming supply circuit conductors or outgoing conductors of the industrial control panel. Only the interfaces for the connected electrical circuits and their markings, for example, are described.

NFPA 79 Standard for Industrial Machinery

Area of application

Within its area of application, NFPA 79 covers the electrical equipment of machines, starting from the point of the incoming supply circuit and proceeding all the way through to the end consumer. The max. supply voltage lies at 1000 V. The standard applies to conventional, industrial ambient conditions. The actual machines are generally motor-actuated, permanently installed, and unable to be transported manually during operation.

Alongside the specifications of the NFPA 79, those of the NEC always apply across the board. This means that the protective devices for supplying machines, for example, shall have supply conductors, fuses, and configurations in accordance with the NEC (NFPA 70).

NFPA 79 represents a minimum requirement within its area of application. However, additional measures can be requested at any time in order to ensure a sufficient level of safety for the machines and systems in question.

The definition of Industrial Machinery covers machines that are used to shape, press, or cut material. This also includes electrical, thermal, or optical processes for handling materials, or a combination of all these. In this sense, machines also include equipment that is provided for transporting materials, preparing tools, assembling or dismantling parts (including accessories), packaging goods, and testing or inspection purposes.

The associated electrical equipment, such as the industrial control panel or other distributed components, is considered part of the machine.

Examples of Industrial Machinery

Annex C of the standard lists examples of industrial machines that are covered by the standard. The following machine categories are mentioned:

- Machine tools for cutting/forming metals
- Plastics machinery
- Wood machinery
- Assembly machines
- Material-handling machines
- Inspection/testing machines
- Packaging machines

Other standards

Other standards that this document refers to in part are listed below. A detailed explanation of the area of application is not included in this information.

ANSI/NEMA Z535.1 to 6 (Safety Labels and Signs, Colors, Criteria, Product Safety Tags, Product Safety Information in Manuals)

Important standard for safety information, safety symbols, and labels, and their design, color coding, selection criteria, etc.

NFPA 70E (Standard for electrical safety in the workplace)

This standard is primarily aimed at the operators and users of electrical equipment.

Above all, it covers specifications for electrical safety in the workplace, which ensure that staff members are safeguarded using practical means and are still able to work in favorable conditions.

NFPA 70B (Recommended Practice for Electrical Equipment Maintenance)

These specifications denote recommended practice for servicing and maintaining electrical equipment in order to prevent malfunctions and potentially hazardous situations for both people and objects. The specifications are not intended to replace the manufacturer's instructions, such as the equipment manual.

4.3 Standards

Important US standards for the construction of machines and systems at a glance

Note

As already mentioned in the introductory chapters of this guide, machine safety is not the focus of this guide. The following list of U.S. standards is only intended to provide an overview of the wide diversity of basic safety standards for machine safety. However, practice shows that international IEC and ISO standards are enjoying increasing acceptance on the U.S. market. NFPA 79 references both IEC/ISO and ANSI standards within the explanations in Annex A. Close agreement on this topic in advance between suppliers and customers is therefore recommended

Basic safety standards for general requirements

Standards	Description
OSHA 29CFR1910	Occupational Safety and Health Standards
OSHA 29CFR1910.212	General requirements for (Guarding of) All Machines

Generic safety standards for aspects of safety

Standards	Description
ANSI / NFPA 70	The National Electrical Code (NEC)
ANSI / NFPA 70E	Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace
ANSI / NFPA 79	Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery
OSHA 29CFR1910.333	Selection and Use of Work Practices (Electrical Safety)
OSHA 29CFR1910.147	The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lockout/Tagout)
ANSI Z244.1 (2016)	The Control of Hazardous Energy (Lockout, Tagout and Alternative Methods)
ANSI Z535.1	American National Standard for Safety Colors
ANSI Z535.2	American National Standard for Environmental and Facility Safety Signs
ANSI Z535.3	American National Standard for Criteria for Safety Symbols
ANSI Z535.4	American National Standard for Product Safety Signs and Labels
ANSI Z535.5	American National Standard for Safety Tags and Barricade Tapes (for Temporary Hazards)
ANSI Z136.1	Safe Use of Lasers
ANSI B11.21 (R2012)	Safety requirements for Machine Tools using Lasers for Processing Materials
OSHA 29CFR1910.219	Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus
ANSI / ASME B15.1	Safety Standard Mechanical Power Transmission Apparatus
ANSI B11.19	Safeguarding (Machine Tools) Performance requirements for Safeguarding
ANSI B11/TR1	Ergonomic Guidelines for the Design, Installation and Use of Machine Tools (not an American national standard)
ANSI B11/TR3 ANSI B11.0 / ANSI B11.19 / B11.TR3	Risk Assessment and Safeguarding of Machinery Package
MIL-STD-882D	U.S. DOD System Safety Program (Risk Assessment)
OSHA 3071	Job Hazard Analysis

Safety standards for specific machine applications

Standards	Description
Machine tools	
OSHA 29CFR1910.217	Mechanical Power Presses
ANSI B11.1	Safety requirements for Mechanical Power Presses
ANSI B11.2	Safety requirements for Hydraulic and Pneumatic Presses
ANSI B11.3	Safety requirements for Power Press Brakes
ANSI B11.4	Safety requirements for Shears
ANSI B11.5	Machines - Ironworkers - Safety requirements for Construction, Care and Use
ANSI B11.6 (R2012)	Safety requirements for Manual Turning Machines with or without Auto Control
ANSI B11.7 (R2015)	Cold Headers & Cold Formers Safety requirements for Construction, Care and Use
ANSI B11.8 (R2012)	Safety requirements for Manual Milling, Drilling & Boring Machines with or without Automatic Control
ANSI B11.9	Safety requirements for Grinding Machines
ANSI B11.10	Safety requirements for Metal Sawing Machines
ANSI B11.11	Gear and Spline Cutting Machines
ANSI B11.12	Safety requirements for Roll Forming and Roll Bending Machines
ANSI B11.13 (R2012)	Single and Multiple Spindle Automatic Bar; and Chucking Machines - Safety requirements for Construction, Care and Use
ANSI B11.14	Coil Slitting Machines - Safety requirements for Construction, Care and Use
ANSI B11.15	Safety requirements for Pipe, Tube and Shape Bending Machines
ANSI B11.16	Safety requirements for Powder/Metal Presses Compacting Presses
ANSI B11.17	Safety requirements for Horizontal Hydraulic Extrusion Presses
ANSI B11.18	Safety requirements for Machines Processing or Slitting Coiled or Non-coiled Metal
ANSI B11.20 (2017)	Safety requirements for the Integration of Machinery into a System
ANSI B11.22 (R2012)	Safety requirements for Turning Centers and Automatic Numerically Controlled Turning Machines
ANSI B11.23	Safety Requirements for Machining Centers and Automatic Numerically Controlled Drilling, Milling and Boring Machines
ANSI B11.24	Safety requirements for Transfer Machines
Conveyors	
ANSI / ASME B20.1	Safety Standard for Conveyors and Related Equipment
Industrial Robots	
ANSI / RIA R15.06	Industrial Robots and Robot Systems
Injection Molding	
ANSI B151.1	Safety requirements for Injection Molding Machines
ANSI B151.21	Injection Blow Molding Machines - Safety
ANSI B151.26	Dynamic Reaction - Injection Molding Machines
ANSI B151.27-2013	Plastics Machinery - Robots Used with HIM Machines - Safety; Safety Requirements for The Integration of Robots with Injection Molding Machines
ANSI / SPI B151.29	Vertical Clamp Injection Molding Machines

4.3 Standards

Standards	Description
Injection Molding	
ANSI B151.1	Horizontal Injection Molding Machines
ANSI B151.21	Injection Blow Molding Machines - Safety
ANSI B151.26	Plastics Machinery - Dynamic Reaction Injection Molding Machines - Safety Requirements for the Manufacture, Care and Use
ANSI B151.27-2013	Plastics Machinery - Robots Used with HIM Machines - Safety; Safety Requirements for The Integration of Robots with Injection Molding Machines
ANSI / SPI B151.29	Vertical Clamp Injection Molding Machines
Mills and Calenders	
OSHA 29CFR1910.261	Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills
OSHA 29CFR1910.216	Mills and Calenders in the Rubber and Plastics Industries
ANSI B28.1	Safety Specifications for Mills and Calenders in the Rubber Industry
Packaging	
ANSI / PMMI B155.1	Packaging and Packaging-Related Converting Machinery - Safety
Cranes	
OSHA 29CFR1910.179	Overhead and Gantry Cranes
ANSI / ASME B30.5	Mobile and Locomotive Cranes
Printing	
ANSI / B65.1	Graphic Technology - Safety Standard - Printing Press Systems
ANSI / B65.2	Graphic Technology - Safety requirements for Binding and Finishing Systems and Equipment
ANSI / B65.5	Stand Alone Platen Presses
Semiconductor	
SEMI S1	Safety Guideline for Equipment Safety Labels
SEMI S2	Environmental Health and Safety Guideline for Semiconductor Manufacturing Equipment
SEMI S3	Safety Guidelines for Process Liquid Heating Systems
SEMI S7	Safety Guideline for Evaluation Personnel and Evaluating Company Qualification
SEMI S8	Safety Guidelines for Ergonomics Engineering of Semiconductor Manufacturing Equipment
SEMI S9	Guide to Electrical Design Verification Tests for Semiconductor Manufacturing Equipment that have been moved to SEMI S22
SEMI S10	Safety Guideline for Risk Assessment and Risk Evaluation Process
SEMI S13	Enironmental, Health and Safety Guideline for Documents provided to the Equipment User for Use with Semiconductor Manufacturing Equipment
SEMI S17	Safety Guideline for Unmanned Transport Vehicle Systems (UTV)
SEMI S19	Safety Guideline for Training of Semiconductor Manufacturing Equipment, Installation, Maintenance and Service Personnel
Woodworking, Lumber and Logging	
OSHA 29CFR1910.213	Woodworking Machinery Requirements
OSHA 29CFR1910.261	Pulp, Paper and Paperboard Mills
OSHA 29CFR1910.265	Sawmills
OSHA 29CFR1910.266	Logging Operations
ANSI O1.1	Woodworking Machinery - Safety Requirements

4.4 Peculiarities

Adoption of the NEC (NFPA 70) within the US federal states

The NEC is the recognized set of comprehensive regulations for low-voltage installations in the USA. However, the NEC does not become legally valid and applicable until it has been accepted into state law and by the regional AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction).

The time scale for this varies from one state to another. Furthermore, some states adopt the NEC with additional supplements and/or amendments. This can even vary between the individual towns and cities of a state (as is the case in Texas, Arizona, and Nevada, for example).

NEMA provides regular online updates on this subject on the Internet (<http://www.nema.org>).

Example showing how the NEC has been adopted in different ways

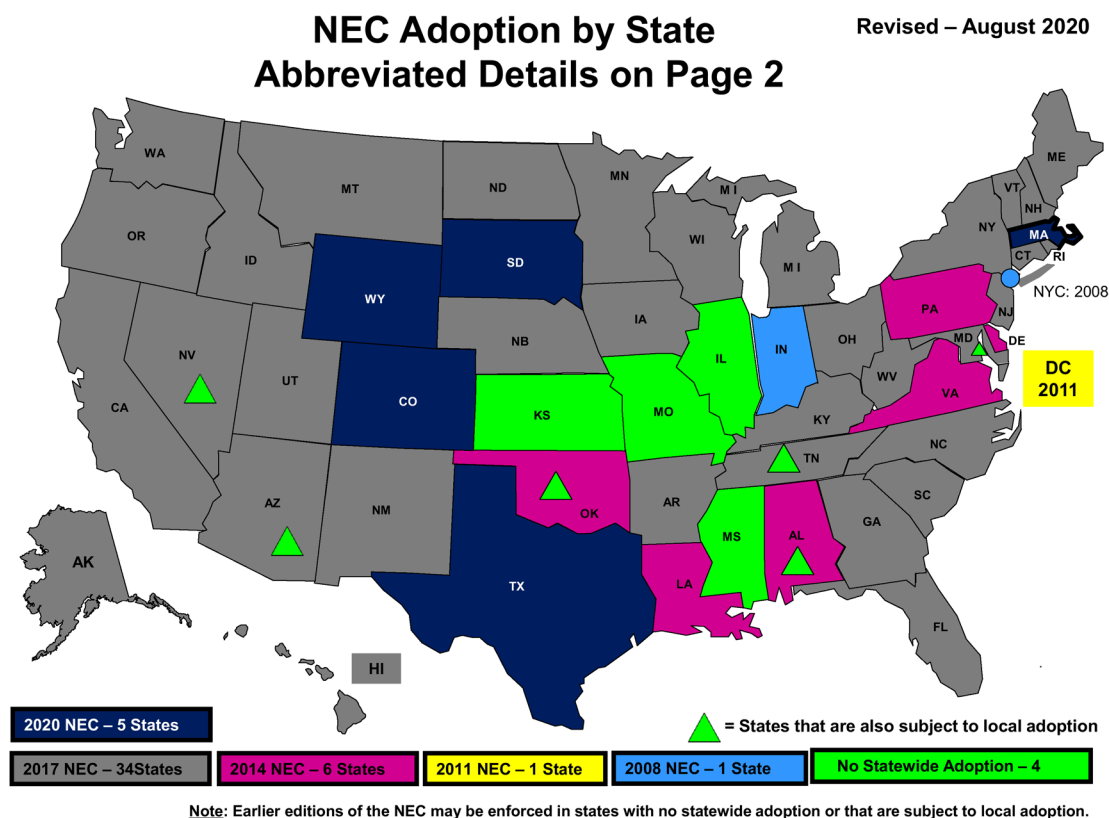


Figure 4-2 NEC acceptance

4.4 Peculiarities

Differences between NFPA 79 and UL 508A

In various chapters, the NEC refers to additional standards that outline further specifications on certain subjects in detail.

For example, UL 508A is referred to in Article 409 of the NEC as a leading standard for Industrial Control Panels. Article 670 of the NEC discusses the subject of Industrial Machinery and makes reference to NFPA 79.

These two standards overlap in many of the technical topics they cover, and are even identical in several cases. There are topics, however, that have different requirements as far as the standards are concerned.

This includes the area of application in the case of each standard (see Chapter Standards (Page 33)):

In this respect, UL 508A only covers industrial control panels and, in the additional requirements of Chapter 65 ... 67 "Industrial Machinery", machine control panels too.

However, the area of application as far as NFPA 79 is concerned is applicable to all electrical equipment for machines and therefore covers not only the requirements for industrial control panels, but also all the electrical equipment in the machinery field.

Both standards are explained and interpreted in equal measure in this guide. Nevertheless, it is strongly recommended that the standard(s) to be applied in each case are agreed with the users and operators in advance.

The machine diagram below is provided as an example to illustrate the application of various standards and regulations for electrical safety.

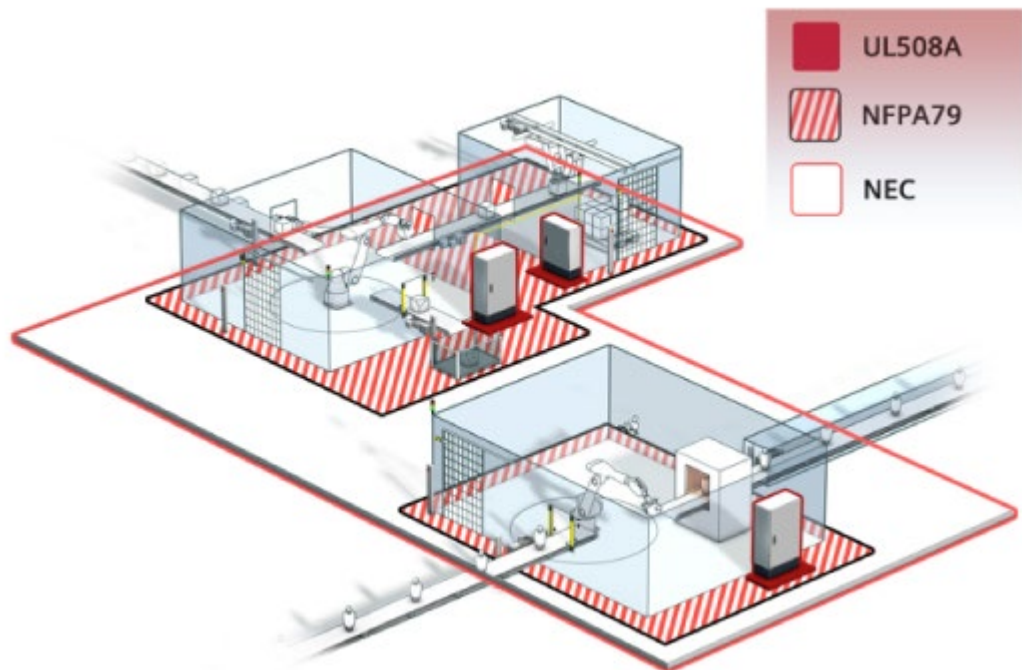


Figure 4-3 Overview diagram showing the use of different standards

Peculiarities about acceptance and commissioning in the USA

Every electrical machine or system in the USA is checked by an inspector known as the AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction) before it can be commissioned.

Acceptance is based on the NEC (National Electrical Code, NFPA 70), the relevant application-specific standards such as NFPA 79 and UL 508A, as well as any local standards or specifications.

Acceptance is required by law in the USA. Operators failing to have their machines or systems inspected by an AHJ risk loss of both insurance and electrical power supply.

For successful field acceptance, a correct configuration according to the applicable standards is essential. The diagram shown below outlines four possible ways of achieving successful acceptance.

Manufacturing an industrial control panel that meets the requirements of UL 508A is more than a question of simply using UL-approved products. The interaction of devices in accordance with the relevant application standard, as well as the acceptance of the industrial control panel in its actual application environment, are critical too.

1st option: Approval without NRTLs, only through the AHJ

The industrial control panel or also machine manufacturer always has the option, if the customer agrees, to have the electrical equipment of their plant accepted without preliminary examination by an NRTL, only by the AHJ on site in the US.

In this case the operator, before connecting the new system in their company, asks the associated AHJ to perform the statutory acceptance at the unlisted industrial control panel. Since the AHJ does not find an NRTL test symbol on the industrial control panel, they will as a rule perform the acceptance in more detail. Possible complaints then have to be remedied on site. This can often result in additional costs and delays in commissioning. However, the costs of the NRTL preliminary examination do not arise (Third-Party Certification). This could be of benefit when installing individual systems.

2nd option: Preliminary acceptance by an NRTL inspector at the factory site of the OEM

If the industrial control panel or industrial machine manufacturer regards acceptance solely by the AHJ as too risky, they can have the plant examined by a recognized NRTL at their production before delivery according to NEC, Art. 90.7. In this case the NRTL inspector will inspect the system and examine it under consideration of the recognized standards and their perceptions.

As a rule, any required changes can be performed easily and quickly.

If the NRTL inspector is content with the electrical installation, they attach their NRTL label. The installation is then considered "listed" and labeled.

This does not mean that final acceptance and assessment by the AHJ is not required in the USA, but there is some scope for simplifying this process since a listed industrial control panel finds a high level of acceptance among inspectors (AHJ) and because of this, time-consuming inspection is no longer required.

3rd option: The industrial control panel is accepted by the NRTL as a series cabinet

If a plant is manufactured in large quantities identically in series, it may be desirable to have the plant listed by an NRTL as a series product. By contracting a suitable NRTL who is approved for the respective application, the system or parts of it can undergo a series preliminary inspection at the manufacturer's factory site.

If the first system has been pre-examined as a "prototype" of the series, the OEM may manufacture further identical systems and label them themselves in coordination with the NRTL inspector. Under certain circumstances, the NRTL can also approve deviations from the standard and certify these in what is known as a "„Deviation Note"". This does not mean that acceptance by the AHJ is not required in the USA. However, acceptance by the AHJ can be significantly simplified since these acceptance reports enjoy a high level of acceptance among the local inspectors (AHJ).

4th option: Certified manufacturer of an ICP

Design and manufacturing by certified manufacturers for industrial control panels

Panel builders who produce a range of different systems for the various areas of application according to UL 508A can obtain certification from an NRTL offering this service. Listed industrial control panels can thus be manufactured and also marked with a panel listing mark on the manufacturer's own responsibility.

The certified control panel manufacturer needs to comply with various conditions to this purpose. The manufacturing site is then visited several times a year by an NRTL inspector and checked in accordance with UL 508A. Some of these visits will be announced, but others will not. The certified panel manufacturer pays an annual fee plus the charges for the inspector's visits.

See also the section "Label Service (Type L)" in Chapter UL-listed (Page 47).

Manufacturer certification is offered by different NRTLs. Examples are:

- UL (listed Panel Shop)
- Intertek (Panel Shop listing)

Here too, acceptance testing by the AHJ is necessary in the USA. However, acceptance by the AHJ can be significantly simplified since a labeled control panel (see glossary entry "Labeled") finds a high level of acceptance among inspectors (AHJ), and consequently, a detailed inspection is no longer required.

5th option: Field inspection (in accordance with NEC manual Section 100 ("Approved" definition) by NRTL at OEM and on site in the USA

If unlisted components or non-inspected components have to be used in the main circuit, the industrial control panel manufacturer can apply for a Field evaluation with a specially certified NRTL (NFPA790 Standard for Competency of Third-Party Field Evaluation Bodies). In this case the NRTL will first examine the electrical equipment of the machine incl. the industrial control panels (in accordance with NFPA791 Recommended Practice and Procedures for Unlabeled Electrical Equipment Evaluation) in the production of the industrial control panel manufacturer and also perform tests, as required. These results are then evaluated and communicated to the AHJ as so called Evaluation.

If the evaluation is accepted by the AHJ, the system is then set up at the operator supervised by the NRTL.

Finally the NRTL applies for the required operating permit to the AHJ on site at the operator. Now the field evaluation is completed and the plant can be put into operation.

Note

The decisions of the individual AHJs can be disputed. For this to take place, an appeal shall be submitted in writing to the relevant Electrical Board within 15 days of the negative decision being received. NEC 2020 Annex G, 80.15 (G). However, we recommend taking into consideration that a good relationship to the AHJ should have topmost priority and should not be squandered through an unqualified appeal.

Note

The NRTL inspectors are not authorized to negotiate with the manufacturer on deviations from the standard. The AHJs are permitted to apply a certain leeway in making technical decisions. See also NEC 2020, Art. 90.4.

Important definitions (extracts from the NEC)**Mandatory rules**

Mandatory rules of this Code are those that identify operations that are specifically required or prohibited and are characterized by the use of the terms "shall" or "shall not".

Permission standard

Permissive rules of this Code are those that identify operations that are permitted but not required, are normally used to describe options or alternative methods, and are characterized by the use of the terms "shall be permitted" or "shall not be required".

Explanatory notes

Explanatory material, such as references to other standards, references to related sections of this Code, or information related to a Code rule, is included in this Code in the form of fine print notes (FPN).

4.4 Peculiarities

Informational notes are used for information only and are not enforceable as requirements of this Code.

Note

The format and language used in this Code follow guidelines established by NFPA and published in the NEC Style Manual. Copies of this manual may be obtained from NFPA.

Approval

The conductors and equipment required or permitted by this Code shall be acceptable only if approved.

Note

See Section 90-7 of the "Examination of Equipment for Safety", and Section 110-3 of "Examination, Identification, Installation, and Use of Equipment".

Identified

Identification attached to equipment

Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, etc., where described in a particular Code requirement.

Note

Suitability of equipment for a specific purpose, environment, or application may be determined by a qualified testing laboratory, inspection agency, or other organization concerned with product evaluation. Such identification may include labeling or listing (see definitions of "Labeled" and "Listed").

Labeled

Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

Listed

Equipment, materials, or services included in a list, published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services.

Such listing states that either the equipment, material, or services meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

Note

The means for identifying listed equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation, some of which do not recognize equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. Use of the system employed by the listing organization allows the authority having jurisdiction to identify a listed product.

Useful extracts from the Electrical Inspection Manual*

* Manual for the acceptance of electrotechnical installations, based on the NEC (NFPA 70)

Approved

"Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction."

Note

Approval is a primary responsibility of an electrical inspector. Investigations by a third-party and the listing and labeling that result are a great aid to inspectors in this responsibility (see "Labeled" and "Listed").

Meaning: The inspector decides what is accepted and what is not. The UL approvals provide a valuable point of reference and assistance for the inspector.

AHJ function

Note

The key to a successful and correct electrical inspection lies in applying the rules of the Code, not the personal preferences of the inspector. To reiterate, if the installation meets the Code requirements (including any local amendments) and is safe, the installation should pass inspection.

Meaning: The application of standards helps the inspector to reach a decision concerning acceptance.

4.5 UL-specific definitions and identification

4.5 UL-specific definitions and identification

The following chapter deals with definitions, peculiarities, and the identification that are generally specified and accepted by UL.

4.5.1 Marks

UL has introduced a variety of different marks. The most important of these, along with their meanings, are listed and explained below. For the marking of UL-certified products, a general distinction is made between Listed Devices and Recognized Components. Further variants exist for the Canadian market.

Table 4- 1 UL marks

Mark	Applications
	UL Listing Mark: This is one of the most common UL Marks. Products carrying this mark (e.g. washing machines, computers, electrical control panels, fire extinguishers, life belts, etc.) meet all UL safety requirements and can be installed universally, without further instructions, and without restrictions on the relevant applicability. The Siemens portfolio, for example, offers contactors in accordance with UL 508 or circuit breakers in accordance with UL 489.
	C-UL Listing approval mark: Products with this approval mark were inspected for the Canadian UL safety requirements. The products with this type of mark have been evaluated to Canadian safety requirements, which may be somewhat different from U.S. safety requirements. You will see this type of Mark on appliances and computer equipment, vending machines, household burglar alarm systems, lighting fixtures, and many other types of products.
	C-UL-US Listing approval mark: This approval mark was introduced early 1998. It indicates that the devices comply with both the CSA regulations and the UL regulations for the US. The Canada/US UL Mark is optional. UL encourages those manufacturers with products certified for both countries to use this new, combined Mark, but they may continue using separate UL Marks for the United States and Canada.
	Recognized Component approval mark: This mark is used on components or devices used in machinery, systems or products, such as washing machines. These components may have restrictions on their performance or may be incomplete in construction. The Recognized Component Mark is found on a wide range of products, including switches, power supplies, printed circuit boards, some kinds of industrial control equipment, and many other products. They shall only be installed by experts, as the "Conditions of Acceptability" (CoA) apply to these devices. The UR Mark is carried, for example, by Siemens miniature circuit breakers according to UL 1077, Siemens time switches according to UL 917, and SITOP fuses.
	Canadian Recognized Component Mark: Similar as the Recognized Component mark - see above): Products intended for Canada carry the Recognized Component mark "C".
	Recognized Component Mark for Canada and the United States: This new UL Recognized Components Mark, which became effective in 1998, may be used on components certified by UL to both Canadian and U.S. requirements. Although UL had not originally planned to introduce a combined Recognized Component Mark, the popularity of the Canada/US Listing and Classification Marks among clients has led to the new Mark.
Certifications such as  and  are issued by the NRTLs (Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratories) after successful testing. OSHA has accredited UL as an NRTL.	

Note

UL and CSA are authorized to grant approval certificates in accordance with Canadian and North American regulations. This option of mutual recognition is based on the "Memorandum of Understanding" between these two organizations.

4.5.1.1 UL-listed

General rule



Devices which are considered to be "complete assemblies" feature this mark. They are labeled with the company name, all specified and approved data and the UL mark. Such devices can be installed and used in accordance with the approval by a technician without any special tools and without further instructions. (Examples: magnetic motor controller, circuit breaker)

UL-listed variations

There are various versions:

- **Reexamination Service (Type R):** One or more devices are tested by UL, inspected and described in detail in a report. UL inspectors visit the production facilities periodically and check that the product is being produced in accordance with the description. (Examples: magnetic controller, coffee maker)
- **Label Service (Type L):** A special UL-Label that is placed on a product once it has passed a specified check.

Examples:

- All circuit breakers (UL 489) shall pass a specified test during production (such as Type R + Reassessment Tests).
- Industrial Control Panels, UL 508A are tested and accepted by a UL inspector.

These labels are bought directly from UL, or via one of the UL-registered printers. They are administered by the manufacturer, but checked by the UL inspector in accordance with production.

4.5 UL-specific definitions and identification

Application example

An "Industrial Control Panel" with this form of label will have been manufactured according to UL regulations by an approved, UL-listed ICP manufacturer (Listed Panelbuilder).



Figure 4-4 Example: Label for a panel including devices and wiring

4.5.1.2 UL-recognized

General rule



This mark is used for components, in other words devices which are assembled in a factory together with other parts and components and which gain UL approval in the form of an end product.

UL-Recognized handling

UL-Recognized components only need to feature a type and manufacturer's identification mark. Their design and application are not therefore complete.

The user must pay attention to additional information and operating conditions which are specified in detail in the UL certificate (known as **Conditions of Acceptability, CoA**).

Note

Use of UL-approved devices:

Devices which are UL-approved (listed or recognized) cannot be automatically installed in "Industrial Control Panels" unless their intended use (approval) is known. A 3LD25 LISTED MAN MTR CNTR type switch (according to UL 508) cannot, for example, be used as a disconnecting means. A switch with the label RECOGNIZED OPEN SWITCH, on the other hand, would comply with this requirement. Particular attention should be paid to the "Type Listings"; a listed plastic conduit (nonmetallic conduit) is not also automatically listed as "Liquidtight" – even if it is classified as IP65 according to IEC.

You can find more detailed explanations of this in Chapter Categorization using the Category Code Number (CCN) (Page 49).

Note

UL-approved devices shall always be approved by one of the NRTLs. The NRTLs are approved by OSHA. In this case, approval only applies to specific products/applications. You are therefore recommended to note the purpose for which the respective NRTL is approved.

4.5.1.3 Practical use of "Listed" and "Recognized"

Use of the marks

In some categories, you have the choice of approving a device as "Listed" or "Recognized".

Application examples for "Recognized" components

A magnetic controller for a special application without any rated data, but which features manufacturer identification and order number, can be UR approved.

Some devices can only be approved as components, i.e. with "UR", e.g.:

- Instantaneous trip circuit breakers see NEC 430.52 (C) (3).
- Terminal blocks according to UL 1059
- Miniature circuit breakers according to UL 1077:
These devices can only be supplied as "Supplementary protector" to protect control circuits when they were branched after an overcurrent protection device (see NEC, 430.72 (A)).

4.5.2 Categorization using the Category Code Number (CCN)

UL provides a number of approvals. However, "Listing" and "Recognized" are the most common of these.

A product category cannot, however, necessarily be determined uniquely by means of a label. Added to this is the fact that many UL standards cover a host of products. To enable differentiation and classification, UL has introduced the "Category Code Number" (CCN). With the help of the CCN, inspectors can check the proper use of a component.

UL classifications contain 4 letters; they may also contain a digit in some cases. The 4 letters are used fairly randomly. The additional digit, however, is always used in a consistent way.

A list of all UL-approved products can be found in the UL database, The database can be viewed on the Internet (<http://www.ul.com/database>).

Different search parameters can be specified in the database, such as company name, UL File No., CCN, address, postcode/zip code, country, keyword.

Table 4- 2 Significance of the additional digit (in fifth position)

No digit 4 letters only		Listed Product for the USA Inspection/acceptance is performed by an approved NRTL according to the relevant standards.
4 letters plus the number 7		Listed Product for Canada Inspection/acceptance is performed by an approved NRTL according to the relevant UL standards for Canada (these are different from the USA).
4 letters plus the number 2		Recognized Product for the USA Inspection/acceptance is performed by an approved NRTL according to the relevant standards.
4 letters plus the number 8		Recognized Product for Canada Inspection/acceptance is performed by an approved NRTL according to the relevant UL standards for Canada (these are different from the USA).

4.5 UL-specific definitions and identification

Some **CCNs** are listed below to indicate how these products can be found under particular classifications.

Table 4- 3 Examples of product classifications (Category Code Numbers - CCN)

Classification – Extract	UL-listed	UL-recognized
UL Industrial Control Panels ("Panel Builder Program" UL 508A)	NITW	
UL "Industrial Control Components" (UL 508)	e.g. NLDX	e.g. NLDX 2
Circuit breakers UL 489	DIVQ	
"Miniature Circuit Breakers" UL 489	DIVQ	
Motor starter ("Combination motor controller" UL 508A)	NKJH	----
Switch units	----	WHTY2
Terminal blocks	----	XCFR2
Contactors ("Magnetic motor controllers")	NLDX	NLDX2
"Supplementary protector" UL 1077	----	QVNU2
Overcurrent relay, auxiliary contactor, etc. ("Auxiliary Devices")	NKCR	NKCR2
Classification – Extract	c-UL-listed	c-UL-recognized
UL Industrial Control Panels ("Panel Builder Program" UL 508A)	NITW 7	
UL Industrial Control Components (UL 508)	e.g. NLDX 7	e.g. NLDX 8
"Circuit breakers" UL 489	DIVQ 7	
"Miniature Circuit Breakers" UL 489	DIVQ 7	
Motor starter ("Combination motor controller" UL 508A)	NKJH 7	----
"Switch unit"	----	WHTY 8
Terminal blocks	----	XCFR 8
Contactors ("Magnetic motor controller")	NLDX 7	NLDX 8
"Supplementary protector" UL 1077	----	QVNU 8
Overcurrent relay, auxiliary contactor, etc. ("Auxiliary devices")	NKCR 7	NKCR 8

Note

Devices which are installed in a UL listed (CCN: NITW / NITW7) industrial control panel in accordance with UL 508A must be listed in this available List (<https://www.ul.com/resources/ul-508a-supplement-sa-specific-component-requirements>). Most of Siemens' low-voltage controls and distribution devices are UL-approved.

4.5.3 Further UL marking "Enhanced Certification Marks and Badges"

In 2013, UL presented and introduced new marks. The "Enhanced UL-Marks" will replace the previous UL listed and UL classified marks in the medium to long term, without the previous marks losing their validity in the meantime. Manufacturers are not obliged to introduce these future, new marks immediately for their respective products and device.

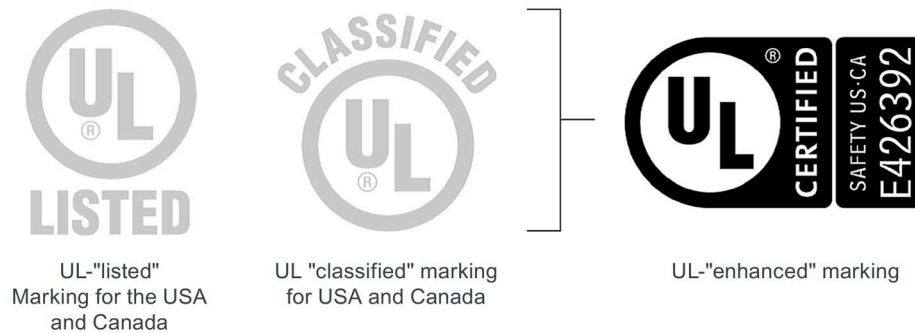


Figure 4-5 Future transition of the previous marking to the UL "enhanced" marking (source: <http://www.ul.com>)

Example of a UL "enhanced" marking and explanation



- ① E-file number for manufacturer reference
- ② Property
- ③ Country code

Figure 4-6 Example of UL enhanced marking

4.5 UL-specific definitions and identification

Electrical equipment for machines and their associated industrial control panels

5

5.1 General information

According to the **NEC**, **NFPA 79**, and **UL 508A**, electrical components for machines and their associated industrial control panels shall be approved and suitable for their intended use. This means there are various criteria that have a say in which components are the right ones to choose. See Chapter UL-specific definitions and identification (Page 46).

Examples

- Is the component approved for the intended use?
- Are further accessories required in order to use the component in a way that conforms to standards?
- Does the component meet the required ratings (e.g. SCCR-Rating, rated current and voltage)?

To enable the correct components to be selected, it is absolutely crucial that the basic and ambient conditions are clearly defined in advance.

Annex B of NFPA 79 contains an inquiry form in which many necessary and helpful basic conditions are examined. Manufacturers and operators are recommended to reach agreements in advance, and to make these agreements an integral part of the contract award process.

The detailed inquiry form is based on NFPA 79 and can be found in the Annex B under Checklists (Page 372).

Table 5- 1 Inquiry form (extract)

INQUIRY FORM FOR THE ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT OF MACHINES			
Name of manufacturer / supplier			
Name of end user			
Tender/Order No.		Date	
Type of Machine/Serial Number			
1.	Are there to be modifications as allowed for within this standard?	☐ Yes	☐ No
Operating Conditions – Special requirements (see Section 4.4)			
2.	Ambient temperature range		
3.	Humidity range		
4.	Altitude		
5.	Environmental (e.g., corrosive atmospheres, particulate matter, EMC)		

Source: NFPA 79, Annex B

5.1 General information

5.1.1 Through air and over surface spacings

The **NEC**, **NFPA 79**, and **UL 508A** generally differentiate between the following two circuits in the power circuit:

- Feeder Circuit
- "Branch Circuit"

Note

In control circuits, there is a distinction between a Feeder and a Branch Circuit .

Definitions

Definition according to the NEC and NFPA 79

- Feeder Circuit All conductors between the incoming supply and the "Branch circuit protective device".
- Branch Circuit: The conductors between the Branch Circuit Protective Device and the outlets.

Definition according to UL 508A

- Feeder Circuit The conductors and circuitry on the supply side of the Branch Circuit Protective Device.
- Branch Circuit: The conductors and components following the last Branch Circuit Protective Device protecting a load.

A simpler way of defining the boundary between the feeder circuit and the branch circuit is to take the reverse approach:

- Feeder Circuit Starting from the load, all products above the first Branch Circuit Protective Device.
- Branch Circuit: Starting from the load, all products up to the first Branch Circuit Protective Device.

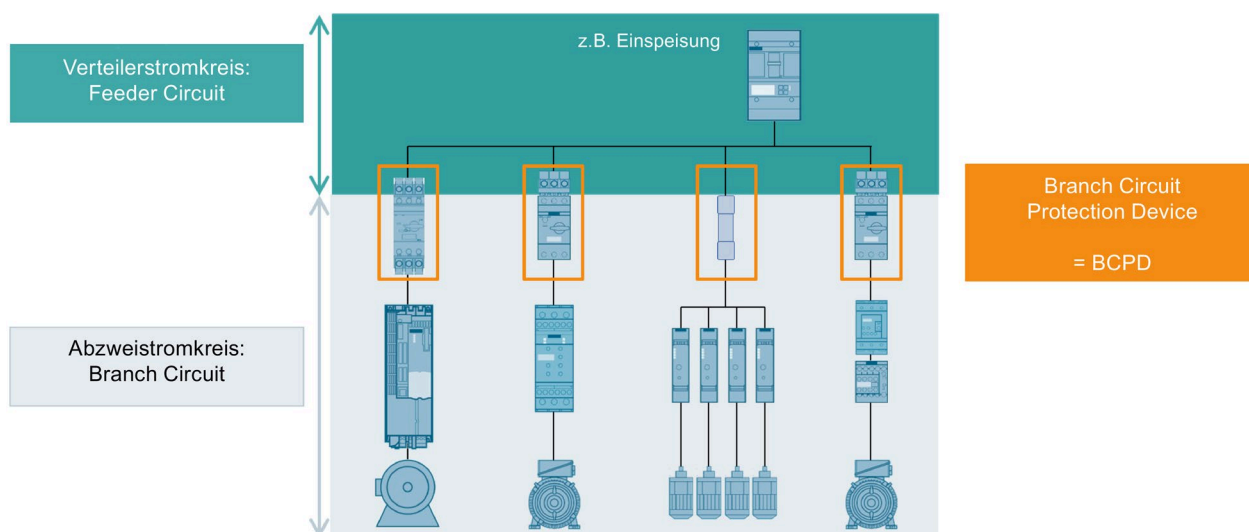


Figure 5-1 Illustration Feeder Circuit – Branch Circuit

The supply terminal of the Branch Circuit Protective Device forms the exact boundary. The supply terminal belongs to the feeder circuit. All conductors and components downstream of the supply terminal belong to the branch circuit.

Minimum through air and over surface spacings

a) Minimum spacings for feeder circuits

In Chapter 409 "Industrial Control Panels" for Feeder Circuits, the NEC requires increased air clearances and creepage distances for uninsulated live components.

The minimum air clearances and creepage distances between the phases and against grounded metal parts for feeder circuits are specified in the NEC, Table 430.97 (D) and UL 508A, Table 10.2. The spacings in NEC, Table 430.97 (D) correspond to those in UL 508A, Table 10.2.

In Chapter 11 the standard NFPA 79 also references Table 430.97 (D) in the NEC for busbar systems (feeder circuits) with regard to the minimum spacings of air clearances and creepage distances.

Note

Since the 2011 edition an exception has been inserted in NEC Chapter 409.106, which allows for lower air clearances and creepage distances within the industrial control panel for listed components. The original text is attached.

Spacings shall be permitted to be less than those specified in Table 430.97(D) at circuit breakers and switches and in listed components installed in industrial control panels.

5.1 General information

Table 5-2 Extract from UL 508A, Table 10.2: Feeder circuits

	125 V or less		126 - 250 V		251 - 1000 V	
	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
Air clearance between live parts of different polarity	1/2	12.7	3/4	19.1	1	25.4
Creepage distance between live parts of different polarity	3/4	19.1	1-1/4	31.8	2	50.8
Between live conductors and grounded metal parts	1/2	12.7	1/2	12.7	1*)	25.4*)

*) For details and exceptions, see UL 508A, Table 10.2

In some devices, the necessary air clearances and creepage distances for feeder circuits must be ensured by using appropriate accessories. Example: Some "Manual self-protected combination motor controller" frame sizes based on UL 508 Type E, which can be used as motor protective devices according to UL 508A, must be equipped with additional supply terminals or phase barriers on the supply side.

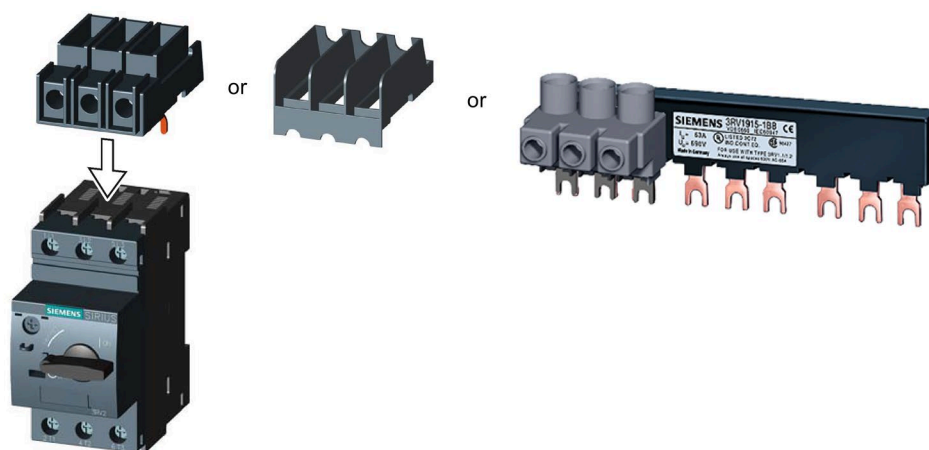


Figure 5-2 Example of "Manual self-protected combination motor controller" according to UL 508 Type E

On the other hand, other devices such as a Circuit Breaker in accordance with UL 489, comply with the required through air and over surface spacings depending on design.

Note

According to UL 508A, Section 10.8, the air clearances and creepage distances for branch circuits in Table 10.1 always apply to fuse holders, regardless of whether these involve feeder circuits or branch circuits.

b) Minimum spacings for branch circuits

The minimum required spacings for Branch Circuits are defined in UL 508A, Table 10.1 .
There are no minimum required spacings for branch circuits defined in the NEC.

Table 5- 3 Extract from UL 508A, Table 10.1 for branch circuits branch circuits and electric circuits
max. 600 V

	51 - 150 V		151 - 300 V		301 - 600 V	
	inch	mm	inch	mm	inch	mm
Air clearance between live parts of different polarity and ground	1/8	3.2	1/4	6.4	3/8	9.5
Creepage distance between live parts of different polarity and ground	1/4	6.4	3/8	9.5	1/2	12.7
Shortest distance between live conductors and enclosure parts	1/2	12.7	1/2	12.7	1/2	12.7

For details and exceptions, see UL 508A, Table 10.1

The required air clearances and creepage distances for branch circuits are met by all approved components (e.g. industrial control equipment, terminal blocks) depending on design.

c) Minimum distances for branch circuits 601 to 1000 V

The minimum required spacings for Branch Circuits are defined in UL 508A, Table 10.1A.

	601 - 100 V	
	Inch	mm
Air clearance between live parts of different polarity and ground	0.55	0.85
Creepage distance between live parts of different polarity and ground	0.85	21.6
Air clearance between live conductors and enclosure parts	0.80	20.3
Creepage distance between live conductors and enclosure parts	1.00	25.4

5.1.2 Plastic materials

Approvals

According to the NEC, UL 508A, and NFPA 79, any plastic materials used (such as insulating material, cable ducts, and barriers) shall always possess specific technical properties (e.g. flame resistance).

Plastic components, or components that include plastic materials, which are approved for a particular application (e.g. machine tool wire according to UL 1063 or cable ducts according to UL 870) must demonstrate that they meet the requirements for their intended use by means of the available approval.

Plastics that are not approved for a specific purpose must provide other kinds of evidence that they possess the required technical properties. Examples of these include self-built plastic covers for uninsulated live components (e.g. bus bars).

One possible way of demonstrating this is the "Plastic Recognition Yellow Card".

Plastic Recognition Yellow Card

Each plastic inspected and approved by UL is issued with a "Plastic Recognition Yellow Card". This lists not only the "Category Control Number" and the "UL File Number", but also technical properties that have been tested; for example:

- Flame class (according to UL 94)
- HWI (hot-wire ignition)
- HAI (high amp arc ignition)
- RTI (relative temperature index)

You can find additional information on the UL website at Plastics and components (<http://www.ul.com/plastics>).

Polycarbonate (PC), furnished as pellets							
	Min Thk	Flame			RTI	RTI	RTI
Color	(mm)	Class	HWI	HAI	Elec	Imp	Str
ALL	0.75	V-1	0	0	80	80	80
	1.0	V-0	0	0	120	120	120
	3.0	V-0	0	0	140	140	140
Comparative Tracking Index (CTI):			0	Inclined Plane Tracking (IPT):			60 min at 1kV
Dielectric Strength (kV/mm):			32	Volume Resistivity (10x ohm-cm):			14
High-Voltage Arc Tracking Rate (HVTR):			0	High Volt, Low Current Arc Resis (D495):			5
Dimensional Stability (%):			0.0				
	(f1) - Suitable for outdoor use with respect to exposure to Ultraviolet Light, Water Exposure and Immersion in accordance with UL 746C						
	(f3) - Suitable for use with respect to exposure to detergents, bleach and solutions typically used in fluid containing parts of laundry equipment, in accordance with UL 2157						
	RoHS 2011/65/EU Compliant Material (color: ALL) UL 746H Non-Halogenated Material (color: ALL)						
ANSI/UL 94 small-scale test data does not pertain to building materials, furnishings and related contents. ANSI/UL 94 small-scale test data is intended solely for determining the flammability of plastic materials used in the components and parts of end-product devices and appliances, where the acceptability of the combination is determined by UL.							
Report Date: 2014-07-15							
Last Revised: 2016-07-20							
© 2016 UL LLC							
							

Figure 5-3 Example Plastic Recognition Yellow Card

Source: UL - Plastic Recognition Yellow Card (<https://industries.ul.com/plastics-and-components/plastics/plastic-recognition-yellow-card>)

Insulating barriers and insulating material

UL 508A provides details regarding material and minimum dimensions for the case of required "insulating barriers" and "insulating materials".

Insulating barriers, UL 508A, Section 12

One of the reasons insulating barriers are constructed is to increase the over surface or through air spacings between phases. See Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54).

The insulating material shall comply with all the following requirements:

- The insulating material shall either be a material included in the table "Generic materials for use as barriers" below, or it shall comply with one of the following requirements:
 - Electrical sleeving according to UL 1441
 - Insulating tubing according to UL 224
 - Wrapping consisting of at least two layers of insulating tape according to UL 510
- The rated values of the insulating material are suitable for direct contact with the relevant live parts.
- The insulating material itself is only used for insulation purposes and not as a load-bearing design part.

5.1 General information

Exception: Material that does not comply with the above conditions must be tested in accordance with UL 508 (Industrial Control Equipment).

Table 5- 4 Generic materials for use as barriers

Generic material	Minimum thickness	
	inches	(mm)
Aramid paper	0.010	(0.25)
Electrical grade paper	0.028	(0.71)
Epoxy	0.028	(0.71)
Mica	0.006	(0.15)
Mylar (PETP)	0.007	(0.18)
RTV	0.028	(0.71)
Silicone rubber	0.028	(0.71)
Vulcanized fiber	0.028	(0.71)

Source: UL 508A, Table 12.1

Insulating material, UL 508A, Section 13

In many applications it may be necessary to support exposed, uninsulated live parts structurally. Examples of such applications include spacer bolts or insulating bases for bus bars or terminals.

The materials used for this shall be listed in the table "Generic materials for direct support of uninsulated live parts" below.

Exception: Material that does not comply with the above conditions must be tested in accordance with UL 508 (Industrial Control Equipment).

In the case of such self-produced structural parts, the through air and over surface spacings as specified in the Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54) shall still be complied with.

Table 5- 5 Generic materials for direct support of uninsulated live parts

Generic material	Minimum thickness	
	inches	(mm)
Diallyl phthalate	0.028	(0.71)
Epoxy	0.028	(0.71)
Melamine	0.028	(0.71)
Melamine-phenolic	0.028	(0.71)
Phenolic	0.028	(0.71)
Unfilled nylon	0.028	(0.71)
Unfilled polycarbonate	0.028	(0.71)
Urea formaldehyde	0.028	(0.71)
Ceramic, porcelain and slate	no limit	no limit
Beryllium oxide	no limit	no limit

Source: UL 508A, Table 13.1

5.2 Operating conditions and ambient conditions

5.2.1 General information

The operating conditions and ambient conditions are crucial for planning and configuring industrial control panels and the electrical equipment of machines.

Implementation and configuring are substantially influenced by the operating conditions and ambient conditions:

- Which standards have to be observed?
- Which power supply system configuration is available?
- What is the maximum short circuit at the infeed (SCCR value)?
- What enclosure types shall be complied with?
- etc.

Operating conditions

The operating conditions (e.g. required short circuit current rating (SCCR), power supply system configuration, rated current, etc.) are comprehensively regulated and described in the NEC, and in NFPA 79 and UL 508A.

Ambient conditions

Specifications for the ambient conditions can be found to varying degrees in the NEC, and in NFPA 79 and UL 508A. Ambient conditions are described in detail in NFPA 79, Chapter 4. By contrast, UL 508A only describes the voltage and the maximum ambient temperature of 40 °C. No ambient conditions are defined in the NEC.

Non-hazardous locations

UL 508A and NFPA 79 are standards for non-hazardous locations and cover the voltage range up to 1000 V.

Hazardous locations

Industrial control panels and machines for hazardous locations are described in the NEC, Article 500 ff. and Article 505 ff. and also in UL 698A with the additional requirements.

Applicability of the specified ambient conditions and operating conditions

Unless otherwise agreed between the manufacturer and the operator of the machine, the specified conditions from NFPA 79 Chapter 4 apply.

The inquiry form in the Annex (see Checklists (Page 372)) supports users in defining the existing ambient conditions at the later location of operation.

Some examples from Chapter 4 of NFPA 79 are listed below:

- **AC voltage for distributions and DC voltage for power supplies/transformers:**
Continuous operating voltage: 0.9 to 1.1 of the nominal voltage
- **Frequency:**
 - 0.99 to 1.01 of the continuous nominal voltage
 - 0.98 to 1.02 short-time
- **Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC):**
 - This shall be taken into consideration in the event of disturbances.
 - Possible measures from NFPA 79, Chapter A.4.5.2 (for information): Filtering, shielding, RF suppression techniques, etc.
- **Ambient temperature:** For operation +5 to +40 °C (41 °F and 104 °F)
- **Air humidity:** For operation: 20 % to 95 %
- **Altitude:** up to 1,000 m (3,300 ft) above sea level
- **Transport and storage:** -25 °C to +55 °C (-13 °F to 131 °F), short-time, max. 24 h, up to 70 °C (158 °F)

5.2.2 Power supply system configurations

Different power supply system configurations occur in US industry. These must be observed when selecting components. Power supply system configurations in the USA are described in ANSI C 84.1.

An important input variable for panel builders and machine manufacturers is not only the rated voltage, but also the specification of the electric power supply system. In the relevant US standards, NEC, NFPA 79 and UL 508A, 3-phase industrial networks are designated as follows:

- Solidly grounded wye
- Corner-grounded delta
- Ungrounded
- Mid-point grounded delta

The power supply system for which the control panel or machine is to be configured shall be agreed in advance between the panel builder / machine manufacturer and the operator.

Note

The inserted switching and protection devices are labeled by the manufacturer for the available network and the suitable voltages. The industrial control panel itself must also be identified by the industrial control panel manufacturer on its type plate with the line system configuration and the voltages of the infeed to be connected. If components are installed or if line system configurations are specified which do not correspond to the connection conditions of the infeed, the system cannot be connected and thus not be commissioned.

Line system configuration: "Solidly grounded wye"

The most frequent line system configuration and voltages specified by operators in North America is 480Y/277 V. In this case it is specified unmistakably clear that the infeed transfer which supplies the industrial control panel is connected in the "Solidly grounded wye".

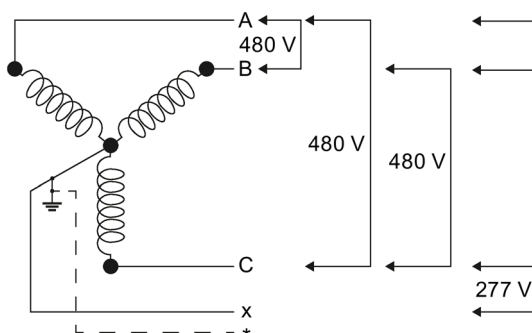


Figure 5-4 Line system configuration: Solidly grounded wye 480Y/277 V 3-phase, 4-wire

The term "Solid grounded wye" is used for a neutral network whose neutral point is directly grounded. The term "star" is unusual in the US. Instead a star connection is designated as "Y" or wye. As commonly known, the following two voltages occur in such a network:

- "Phase-to-phase" and
- "Phase-to-ground".

With this line system configuration both voltages must always be specified as follows, even if 1-phase loads are not used.

A "Y" is inserted after the phase-to-phase voltage, followed by a slash character "/" and subsequently the value of the phase-to-ground voltage.

The following voltages occur frequently:

- 208 Y / 120 V
- 480 Y / 277 V
- 600 Y / 347 V

Line system configuration: Corner grounded DELTA

Apart from the grounded star the "Corner grounded DELTA" also occurs. This means a grounded network whose infeed windings are connected in the delta connector. Since there is no own physical grounding point as with a grounded star, one of the three-phase conductors is grounded.

Only "phase-to-phase voltages" occur in such a network. Correspondingly only one voltage is specified. For example:

- 240 V
- 480 V
- 600 V

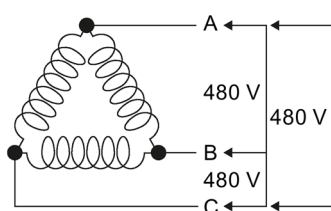
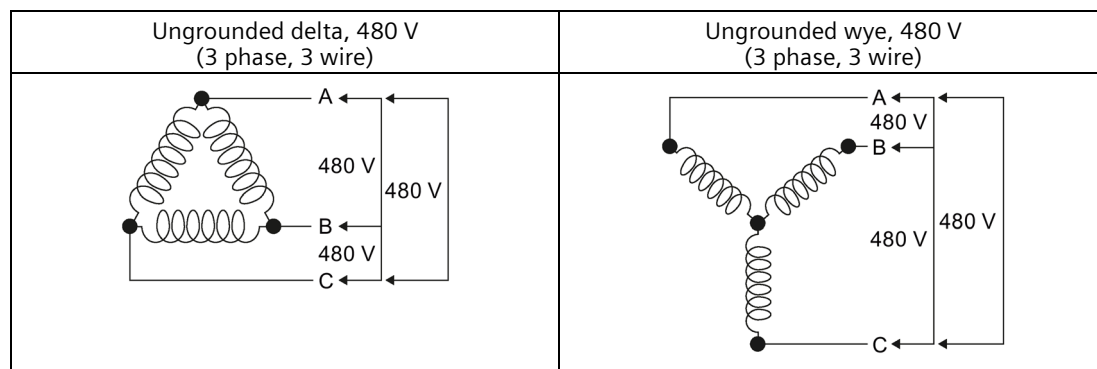


Figure 5-5 Grounded delta system, 480 V, 3-phase, 3-wire

Line system configuration: Ungrounded

More and more isolated networks are used in North America to increase the availability of large manufacturing. They are generally designated as "ungrounded". The three phases of the infeed windings can either be switched in the star or in the delta connector. This is not differentiated in the Ungrounded designation and does not have to be agreed upon between the industrial control panel / machine manufacturer and operator. An isolation monitoring has to be included in such networks.



Since no phase-to-ground connection voltage exists with "Ungrounded wye" as with "ungrounded Delta", ungrounded networks are only designated with their phase-to-phase voltage.

Thus, the following ungrounded networks occur for the greater part:

- 600 V
- 480 V

Line system configuration: Midpoint grounded delta

The "midpoint grounded delta" is found more rarely.

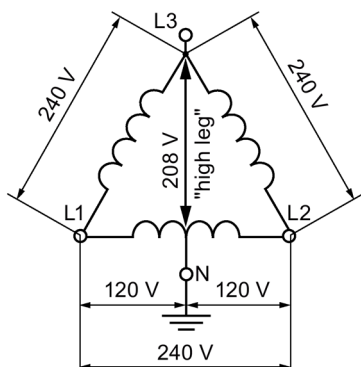


Figure 5-6 Midpoint grounded delta 240/10 V 3-phase 4 wire

In contrast to "Corner grounded DELTA" a phase connector is not grounded here, but rather the middle of its winding (e.g. between L1-L2). Since the phase-to-phase voltage for this special network is 240 Volt, the inductive voltage divider results in a phase-to-ground voltage of 120 V. This 1-phase 120 V AC voltage which is available twice in this network, is often used in the USA for control circuits and many 1-phase main circuit loads, among other, also for socket outlets.

The 208 V "high leg" of the phase L3 to ground is hardly ever used for the load feeders. It is important here that they are not used accidentally for 120 V AC power circuits.

Note

In the US the voltage specification 240 /120 V shows that it is not a "Solidly grounded wye" network since the following two points are missing:

- Missing "Y" after the phase-to-phase voltage specification
 - The ratio of phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground is 2 and not $\sqrt{3}$.
-

5.2.3 Selection of the industrial control panel components depending on the existing line system configuration

If the line system configuration to which the industrial control panel is connected is known, two points have to be observed.

1. Selection of the correct components
2. Correct marking of the voltage on the industrial control panel and the documentation

If errors occurred here for these points, the final consequence could be that the connection of the industrial control panel at the operator on site in the US is prevented by the AHJ.

To select the permissible components the product data include voltage specifications which correspond to the line system configuration:

- 240 V
- 480 Y / 277 V
- 480 V
- 600 Y / 347 V
- 600 V

The voltages 480 Y / 277V or 600 Y / 347V on components are officially designated as SLASH ratings.

Unofficially the voltages 600 V and 480 V on the components are often designated as DELTA or STRAIGHT ratings.

Note:

The following has to be generally observed for the use of components.

With a DELTA or STRAIGHT rating of a component the voltage must be at least as high as the highest phase-to-phase voltage of the network.

However, if the component has a SLASH rating, it must be ensured that its lowest voltage is at least as high as the highest phase-to-ground voltage of the network.

The result of these two rules is that, for example, a motor circuit breaker with a SLASH rating voltage 480 Y / 277 V can also be used in a network 240 V: "Corner grounded Delta".

However, these circuit breakers must not be used in an industrial control panel which is connected to a network which is specified with 480 V.

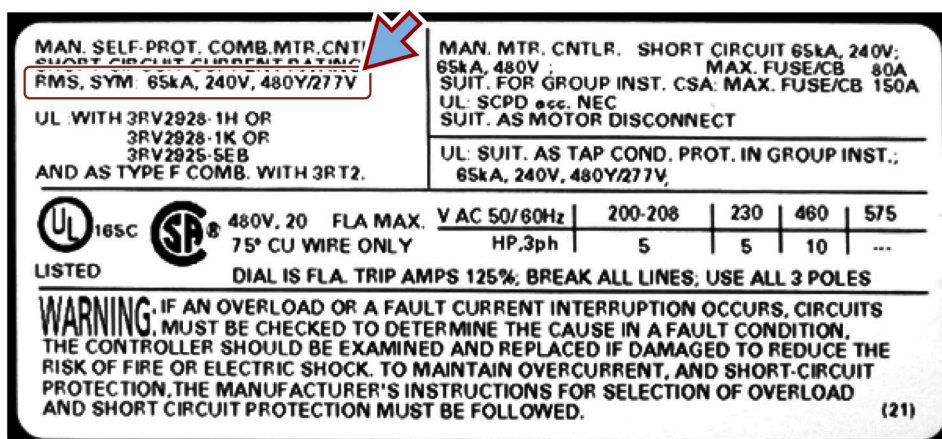


Figure 5-7 Sample nameplate of a motor circuit breaker approved for 65 kA at 240 V and 480Y / 277 V

In summary, it should be said here that the power supply system configuration has a very considerable influence on the design of the installation and therefore also on the space requirements in the control panel and the costs. Devices approved for a "DELTA network" are usually larger and more expensive than devices that only have a "SLASH rating".

Fuses in accordance with UL 248-4...12, -15 have a delta rating and can thus be used simultaneously for "straight and slash networks". The corresponding approved rating must be observed for industrial control equipment.

5.3 Incoming supply circuit and disconnecting means

5.3.1 Incoming supply circuit conductor and power terminals

The relevant standards (UL 508A, NFPA 79, and NEC) describe the connections between the system's incoming supply terminal(s) and power terminals in very different ways. UL 508A and the NEC do not offer much information at all on this matter, but NFPA 79 deals with it more comprehensively.

UL 508A just stipulates that a Machine supply circuit disconnecting means shall be provided for each incoming supply source. NFPA 79 describes this topic in great detail.

Requirements of NFPA 79

- Where practicable, the electrical equipment of a machine shall be connected to a single power supply circuit.
- Where it is necessary to use another supply circuit for certain parts of the equipment (e.g., electronic circuits, electromagnetic clutches), that supply circuit shall, as far as practicable, be derived from devices (e.g., transformers, converters) forming part of the electrical equipment of the machine.
- The incoming supply circuit conductors shall be terminated at the main control switch, where practicable. Connections to terminals ahead of the disconnecting means shall be permitted only for excepted circuits (lighting, maintenance, etc.) or for other incoming supply circuit conductors.

Note

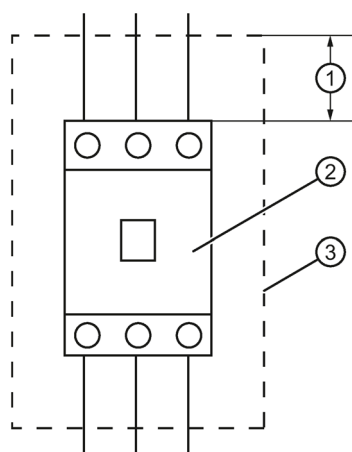
The required air clearances and creepage distances shall be observed, since a feeder circuit is present.

- Terminals suitable for more than one conductor shall be so identified.
- Grounded conductors shall be marked and connected to a separate, isolated terminal.
- Terminals for each incoming supply circuit shall be clearly marked and correspond with markings in the technical documentation.
- The wire-bending space provided between the terminals of the supply terminal and the wall of the enclosure shall be observed in accordance with NEC.

Table 5- 6 Wire-bending space

Size of wire (AWG or kcmil)	Wires per terminal			
	1		2	
	mm	inches	mm	inches
14 ... 10	Not specified		–	–
8 ... 6	38	1 1/2	–	–
4 ... 3	50	2	–	–
2	65	2 1/2	–	–
1	75	3	–	–

Extract from the NEC, "Minimum Wire-Bending Space at the Terminals of Enclosed Motor Controllers"



- ① Wire-bending space according to NEC, Table 430.10 (B)
- ② Main control switch
- ③ Industrial control panel enclosure

Figure 5-8 Wire-bending space

- Each set of incoming supply circuit conductors on the line side of the disconnecting means shall be separated from all other internal conductors, including conductors of other supply circuits.

To achieve this, one of the following two measures shall be applied:

- Mounting the main control switch as near as practicable to the top of the enclosure.
 - Separating by the use of barriers.
- All live parts on the line side of the main control switch shall be protected from unintentional direct contact (that is, they must be safe to touch) when the disconnecting means is in the "Off" position and the enclosure door is open.
 - A grounding terminal shall be provided for each incoming supply circuit.

5.3 Incoming supply circuit and disconnecting means

Example photo for connecting the incoming supply circuit conductor to the disconnecting means:



Figure 5-9 Connection of the supply conductor to the disconnecting means

5.3.2 Disconnecting means

According to NFPA 79 and UL 508A each incoming supply circuit shall be provided with its own disconnecting means. This main network disconnecting means shall be designated as "Machine Supply Circuit Disconnect" if further disconnecting devices are located on the load side.

The line disconnecting device shall switch off all electric circuits, including the control circuits. Circuits that are excepted from this are described in Chapter "Excepted circuits (Page 76)".

Conditions

The disconnecting means for the incoming supply circuit(s) shall be fitted with an external handle and meet the following conditions:

- When operated vertically, the "up" position of the handle shall be the "on" position.
- The "on" and "off" positions shall be clearly marked.
- Where two or more main control switch are provided, they shall be grouped in one location where practicable.

Also according to UL508A each main control switch shall be identified to indicate which part of the plant is switched off. If the main control switches cannot be grouped in proximity to each other, the location of all other main control switches shall be additionally described clearly at each main control switch.

- The operating handle shall be capable of being locked in the "off" position.
- An operating mechanism (handle) shall be readily accessible (and operable) with the door in the open or closed position.
- The disconnecting means shall be operable and lockable independent of the door position.

Exception

The disconnecting means does not have to be provided with an external operating handle if actuation of the disconnecting means is guaranteed by another function, such as a motorized operating mechanism for circuit breakers.

Installation conditions

To an equal extent, UL 508A allows the disconnecting means to be installed in the industrial control panel, or for the panel to be marked to indicate that a disconnecting means shall be provided during the installation.

NFPA 79 provides that the incoming supply circuit disconnecting means shall be mounted either in the panel or immediately adjacent to it.

This disconnecter unit main control switch shall be located in the industrial control panel itself or in direct proximity.

Externally mounted main control switches:

You may use external main control switches as exceptions, if:

- They are no more than 6 m (20 ft) away from the industrial control panel
- Are directly accessible from the industrial control panel
- Can be reached easily
- Are identified in such a way that you can see which industrial control panel you disconnect from the infeed cable.

On top of that, the industrial control panel itself shall be identified with the position of the main control switch.

The installation height is specified in UL 508A at a max. 79 inch (201 cm) and in NFPA 79 at a max. 6 feet 7 inch (2.0 m).

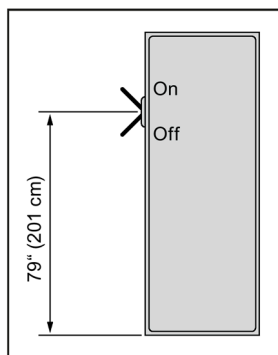


Figure 5-10 Installation height of main control switch

5.3 Incoming supply circuit and disconnecting means

5.3.2.1 Devices

In UL 508A and NFPA 79 the following devices are permitted for use as the supply circuit disconnecting means:

- Molded case circuit breakers ("Inverse-time circuit breaker") to UL 489
- Molded case switches ("Molded case switch") to UL 489
(without overload trip unit)
- Manual motor controllers to UL 508 (Type E)
(only when no more than 1 motor is operated)
- Disconnect switches ("Disconnect switch" or "Switch unit") to UL 98
- Disconnect switches ("Disconnect switch") to UL 977
- Power circuit breakers ("Power circuit breaker") to UL 1066

UL 508A also acknowledges "Pull out switches" in accordance with UL 1429; these are not yet commonly used in Europe.

NFPA 79 also permits plug connections for supply cords with the suitable approval and disconnection properties. Special requirements of this „Attachment plug" and "Receptacle" are listed in the Dimensioning (Page 72) chapter.

5.3.2.2 Sizing

Although NFPA 79 does not make the dimensioning rules dependent on the type of disconnecting means, UL 508A makes a distinction between the types.

Sizing according to NFPA 79

In accordance with NFPA 79, the disconnecting means shall be sized in accordance with the following rules:

1. At least 115% of the total rated currents for all loads that can be operated simultaneously.
2. If rated values in hp are available for the disconnecting means:
 - At least the sum of the "Locked rotor current" values according to NEC, for all motors that can be started simultaneously.
 - Plus the rated currents for the remaining motors and non-motor-operated loads that can be operated at the same time.
3. The rated voltage shall at least correspond to the supply voltage.

Sizing according to UL 508A

The **UL 508A** regulations depend on the type of main control switch being used.

a) Inverse time circuit breakers to UL 489

("Inverse-time circuit breaker")

Sizing

Standard circuit breakers should only be loaded with 80 % of their rated current. Thus a 125 A circuit breaker, for example, is only permitted to be rated at max. 100 A.

Exception

Circuit breakers approved for 100 % continuous rated current. However, this shall be marked on the circuit breaker itself, and specified in the UL certificate of the breaker.

b) Molded case switches according to UL 489

("Molded case switch")

Sizing

- I) One or more non-motor loads
 - 100 % for switches with no integrated fuse
 - 80 % for switches with an integrated fuse
- II) A single motor load
 - hp-rating not less than that of the motor
 - Not less than 115 % of the motor full-load current rating in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Not less than the input current rating of a variable speed drive
- III) For one or more motors or for one motor and any other loads (motor-operated and non-motor-operated)
 - Not less than 115 % of the full-load current ratings of all motors in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Input current rating of a variable speed drive plus the rated currents of all other non-motor loads
 - The permissible LRC (Locked rotor current $\triangleq$ Motor nominal current) of the switch shall not be less than the sum of the locked rotor currents of all motors, plus the rated currents of all other loads.
 - For single-phase motors: $LRC = 6 \times \text{full-load current}$ in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - For three-phase motors, the LRC applies according to UL 508A, Table 50.3

c) Type E manual motor controllers

"Manual self-protected combination motor controller" may be used in accordance with UL 508A as the main control switch if only one motor is being operated via the associated control panel (including associated control circuits).

Sizing

A Type E motor controller may be dimensioned at 100 % of the motor full-load current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100).

d) Disconnect switches according to UL 98

("Disconnect switch" or "Switch unit")

Sizing

- I) One or more non-motor loads
 - 100 % for switches with no integrated fuse
 - 80 % for switches with an integrated fuse
- II) A single motor load
 - hp-rating not less than that of the motor
 - Not less than 115 % of the motor full-load current rating in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Not less than the input current rating of a variable speed drive
- III) For one or more motors or for one motor and any other loads (motor-operated and non-motor-operated)
 - Not less than 115 % of the full-load current ratings of all motors in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Input current rating of a variable speed drive plus the rated currents of all other non-motor loads
 - The permissible LRC (Locked rotor current $\triangleq$ Motor nominal current) of the switch shall not be less than the sum of the locked rotor currents of all motors, plus the rated currents of all other loads.
 - For single-phase motors: $LRC = 6 \times \text{full-load current}$ in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - For three-phase motors, the LRC applies according to UL 508A, Table 50.3

e) Disconnect switches according to UL 977

("Disconnect switch")

For currents above 600 A

Sizing

- I) One or more non-motor loads
 - 100 % for switches with no integrated fuse
 - 80 % for switches with an integrated fuse
- II) A single motor load
 - hp-rating not less than that of the motor
 - Not less than 115 % of the motor full-load current rating in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Not less than the input current rating of a variable speed drive
- III) For one or more motors or for one motor and any other loads (motor-operated and non-motor-operated)
 - Not less than 115 % of the full-load current ratings of all motors in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Input current rating of a variable speed drive plus the rated currents of all other non-motor loads
 - The permissible LRC (Locked rotor current $\triangleq$ Motor nominal current) of the switch shall not be less than the sum of the locked rotor currents of all motors, plus the rated currents of all other loads.
 - For single-phase motors: $LRC = 6 \times$ full-load current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - For three-phase motors, the LRC applies according to UL 508A, Table 50.3

f) Power circuit breakers according to UL 1066

("Power circuit breaker")

5.3 Incoming supply circuit and disconnecting means

Sizing

- I) One or more non-motor loads
 - 100 % for switches with no integrated fuse
 - 80 % for switches with an integrated fuse
- II) A single motor load
 - hp-rating not less than that of the motor
 - Not less than 115 % of the motor full-load current rating in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Not less than the input current rating of a variable speed drive
- III) For one or more motors or for one motor and any other loads (motor-operated and non-motor-operated)
 - Not less than 115 % of the full-load current ratings of all motors in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - Input current rating of a variable speed drive plus the rated currents of all other non-motor loads
 - The permissible LRC (Locked rotor current $\triangleq$ Motor nominal current) of the switch shall not be less than the sum of the locked rotor currents of all motors, plus the rated currents of all other loads.
 - For single-phase motors: $LRC = 6 \times \text{full-load current}$ in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)
 - For three-phase motors, the LRC applies according to UL 508A, Table 50.3

5.3.2.3 Excepted circuits

In the application area of industrial control panels and electrical equipment of machinery, it is sometimes a requirement that not all circuits are to be disconnected by the actual disconnecting means. With service and maintenance work in particular, or also with process-related procedures, it may be necessary to prevent shutdown of certain applications.

UL 508A and NFPA 79 meet this fact in very similar ways. The component requirements and the configuration are described separately below.

Excepted circuits according to NFPA 79

Circuits that are not required to be disconnected by the main supply circuit disconnecting means are listed in NFPA 79, "Excepted circuits".

The following circuits are excepted:

- Lighting circuits for lighting needed during maintenance or repair
- Attachment plugs and receptacles (plugs and socket outlets) for the exclusive connection of repair and maintenance tools and equipment
- Undervoltage protection circuits that are only used for automatic tripping in the event of a supply circuit failure
- Circuits supplying equipment that are required to remain energized for satisfactory operation (e.g. temperature-control measuring devices, program storage devices, product (work in progress) heaters). The NFPA 79 details the use of inputs, outputs for activation of non-moveable parts, displays and safety interlocks).

Configuration

Excepted circuits shall be provided with the following:

- Dedicated disconnecting means, isolation transformer, overcurrent protection
Integration into the door interlocking is not required for this disconnecting means.
- Installation of the components takes place either in a separate enclosure or in the actual control panel adjacent to the actual disconnecting means.
- Incoming supply circuit conductors shall be routed separately inside the enclosure. If the conductor length is ≥ 460 mm (18 in.), an own cable duct shall (additionally) be used.

It shall be possible to disconnect the door interlocking circuit in the industrial control panel from which it is sourced.

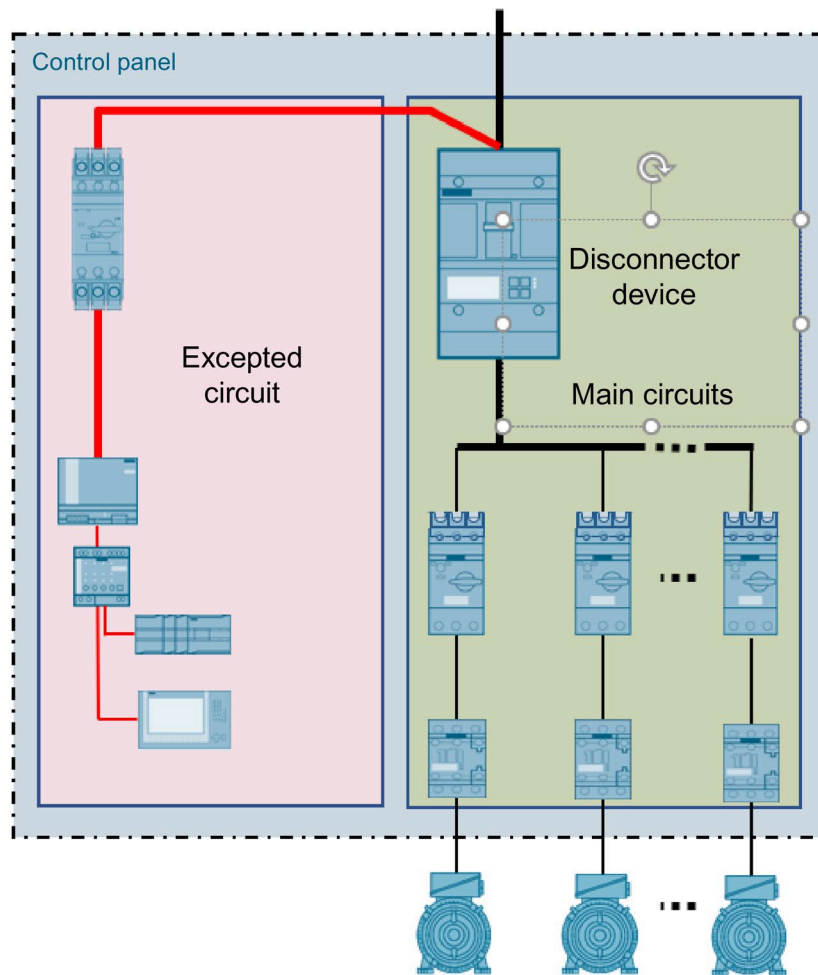


Figure 5-11 Example of the configuration of an excepted circuit

Conditions

The following conditions apply in the case of circuits that are not disconnected by the actual disconnecting means:

- Permanent safety sign, placed adjacent to the operating handle for the disconnecter unit, indicating that not all circuits are de-energized by the main control switch.
- A statement about affected circuits shall be included in the machine documentation.
- Identification of the affected circuits inside the industrial control panel in the form of a safety sign or color coding (orange).
- All components with an operating voltage $\geq 50 \text{ V}_{\text{eff}}$ AC or 60 DC shall be protected against unintentional contact so that a contact in an area of $\leq 50 \text{ mm}$ is not possible.

This can be ensured by one of the following measures:

- Through the technical design of the components themselves or through additional protective covers and protective barriers.

 **WARNING**

- Risk of Fire or Electric Shock -

Excepted circuits inside the control panel

The machine supply circuit disconnect does not deenergize all exposed live parts in open (OFF) Position

Figure 5-12 Example for the safety information: "Excepted Circuit" (NFPA 79)

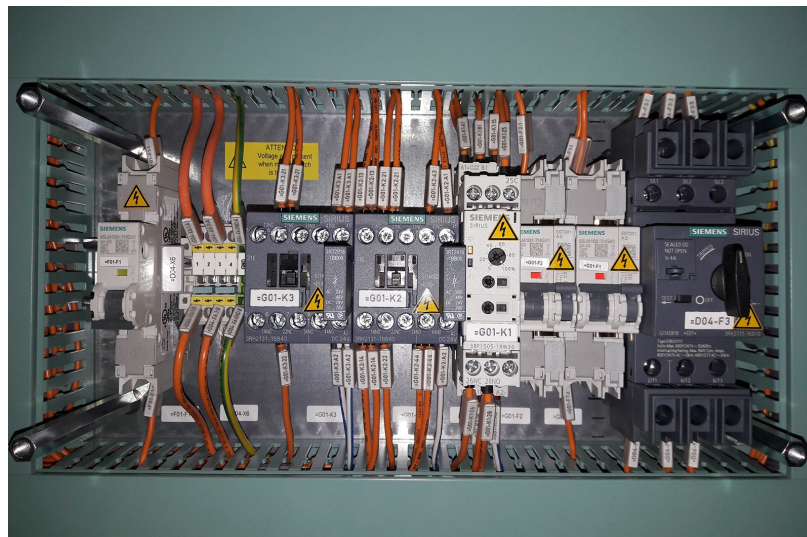


Figure 5-13 Example of the configuration of an excepted circuit

Excepted circuits according to UL 508A

UL 508A addresses "excepted circuits" as circuits which may even be connected to terminals before the main control switch.

The following circuits may be tapped upstream of the disconnecting means:

- Electric circuits for lighting and receptacles for maintenance and repair
- Applications which shall remain live after switching off the machine to guarantee a satisfactory operation.
- Undervoltage protection circuits for automatic shutdown in case of faults
- External control circuit supplies
- Measuring transformer and measuring equipment
- Type 1 Surge protection devices "Surge Protection Device (SPD) Type 1"
- Ground fault protection systems
- Power control units with overload protection
- Feeders for power control to standby main circuit infeeds
- Supply of fire extinguishing pumps

Designation of the excepted circuits

Either designated with the safety symbol "Warning against a hazardous electric voltage", or with orange conductor colors.



Figure 5-14 IEC 417, symbol 5036, Warning against a hazardous electric voltage

In addition, the following warning label shall be attached visibly at the outside of the panel

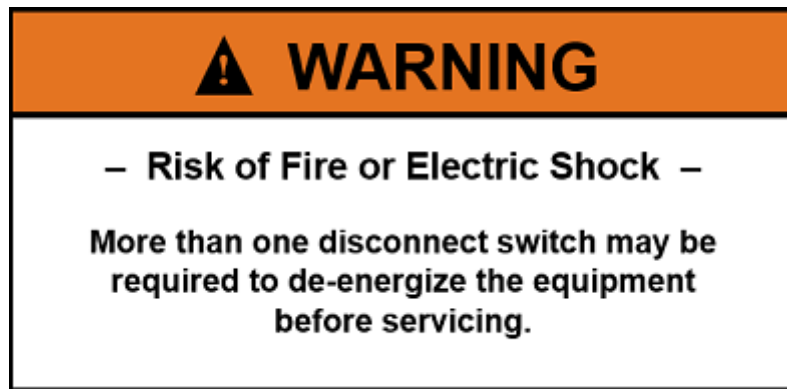


Figure 5-15 Warning label excepted circuit (UL 508A)

Externally supplied control circuits that are tapped upstream of the disconnecting means shall possess their own disconnecting means in accordance with UL 508A.

Lighting circuits to the purpose of maintenance have to be set up as follows:

- Max. voltage 150 V
- Protection for max. 15 A
- When tapped upstream of the main control switch, one of the following conditions should be met:
 - Supplied by the secondary side of an isolation transformer, tapped on the incoming supply circuit side of the main control switch, used only to supply lighting circuits inside the industrial control panel.
 - Supplied by the secondary side of an isolation transformer, tapped on the incoming supply circuit side of the main control switch where the transformer has a separate disconnect switch. The disconnect switch shall be installed near the main control switch in the industrial control panel.

5.4 Protective measures

5.4.1 General information

An important and central issue in the application of standards for industrial equipment and machinery relates to accident prevention and, therefore, providing protection for people.

The relevant standards distinguish between "electrical safety" and "machine safety". The NEC, NFPA 79, and UL 508A primarily regulate topics regarding "electrical safety".

When it comes to "machine safety", they make reference to other standards. In the context of risk analysis, for example, Annex A of NFPA 79 refers to IEC 62061, ISO 13849-1 and 2, and also to ANSI, B11-TR3, and TR4.

Different hazards can arise when handling electrically operated equipment. To avoid these hazards or even to eliminate them completely, the appropriate measures must be taken.

The following chapter deals with the topic of "protection against electrical hazards" and addresses the requirements of the standards referred to above.

5.4.2 Protection against electrical hazards

"Electrical hazards" is taken to mean events of an electrical nature that pose a hazard to people. The essential ones to list here are electric shock and arcing faults.

Chapter 6 "Protection from Electric Hazard" was extended to cover the subject of an Arc flash hazard.

NFPA 79, Chapter 6.1, requires electrical equipment to protect people from the following hazards:

- Electric shock due to direct or indirect contact

The previous terminology: "Protection against direct Contact" was also replaced by the term "Basic Protection" in the relevant NFPA standard

The designation: "Protection against indirect contact" is also not used anymore, instead only "Fault Protection".

- Arc flashing

The options that the standards permit or prescribe, and the safety measures to be implemented, are described both in this chapter and in chapter Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing) (Page 95).

5.4.2.1 Basic protection (protection against direct touching)

The general rule for voltages that present a contact hazard ($\geq 50 V_{\text{eff}}$ AC or $\geq 60 V$ DC) is that protection against direct contact shall be ensured.

Protection against direct contact means that under normal operating conditions of the electrical equipment, no live parts that present a contact hazard can be touched.

UL 508A only deals with the industrial control panel and is therefore limited exclusively to its enclosure. An enclosure with a door shall be locked, as described in point 3 below, "Door locking protection".

According to Chapter 18.4, a **door is required** in the following circumstances:

- If the industrial control panel contains fuses in main circuit.
- If "Circuit Breaker" that cannot be reset from the outside are located in the main circuit.
- If the industrial control panel contains motor overload protection devices that cannot be reset from the outside.
- If the industrial control panel contains measuring and recording devices that shall be reset or serviced.

Exception

In the following cases a **door can be replaced by a cover ("Cover")**:

- Opening the industrial control panel is only required to replace defective components (e.g. after a short-circuit).
- If the industrial control panel only contains a control circuit fuse and the load for the control circuit can be found in the same enclosure.
- If all overload relays can be reset from the outside.
- If the cover is flanged and interlocked with the external operating handle of the main control switch. This ensures that the power is removed before the cover can be removed in order to replace fuses or reset overload relays.

This means that when these exceptions according to UL508A apply, it is possible to install a cover instead of a door on a control panel and thus do away with the need for interlocking with defeating (opening a door in switched on state) and deliberate action (switching on the main control switch with open door). According to UL 508A a cover shall not be hinged.

The logic behind this requirement is to allow the doors to be handled much more easily. As a general rule, a tool is required to remove a cover, whereas a door can be opened and closed with ease when the industrial control panel is de-energized. In the context of the requirements referred to above, a cover would not be practical during maintenance or regular component replacement work, for example. A cover would also make it less likely that users would lock the industrial control panel safely if maintenance and service work is being carried out on it frequently.

For smaller enclosures, a cover may be an entirely sensible solution. Generally speaking, however, it is not a practical option for larger enclosures (e.g. for reasons of weight and manageability).

5.4 Protective measures

According to NFPA79 the main control switch of a cabinet shall also be controllable independently of the positions of doors or covers

1. Lockable in off position,
2. And without tools (for a qualified person).

UL 508A describes the minimum distances to live parts in the case of enclosure openings.

The table "Minimum distance from an opening to a part involving risk of electric shock or personal injury" below describes the following minimum distances:

- To uninsulated live parts > 30 V AC or 42.4 V DC
- To moving parts of components inside the enclosure, such as a fan blade

The shortest distance from the edge of the opening to the relevant part shall be measured.

Exception

This requirement does not apply to enclosures with the following properties:

1. Enclosure that is floor-mounted
2. The lower edge of the enclosure is at least 6 in. (152 mm) away from the floor (e.g. mounted on open base)
3. Exposed live parts in the enclosure are at least 6 in. (152 mm) above the highest portion of the lower edge of the enclosure

Table 5-7 Minimum distance from an opening to a part involving risk of electric shock or personal injury

Minor dimension of opening ^a		Minimum distance from opening to uninsulated live part or moving part	
inches	(mm)	inches	(mm)
Less than 1/8	(Less than 3.18)	1/2	(12.7)
1/2	(12.7)	4	(101.6)
1 ^b	(25.4)	6 ... 1/2 ^b	(165.0)
1 ... 1/2 ^b	(38.1)	8 ... 3/8 ^b	(212.7)
2 ^b	(50.8)	11 ... 5/8 ^b	(295.3)
over 2 and not more than 3 ^b	(over 50.8 and not more than 76.2)	30 ^b	(762.0)

^a The minor dimension of an opening is the diameter of the largest cylindrical probe having a hemispherical tip that is able to be inserted through the opening. The opening is evaluated without removable filters.

^b Interpolation shall be used to determine intermediate distances between the table requirement and the previous entry specified in this table. Where: the intermediate distance = (distance for previous entry) + (difference between intermediate minor dimension and minor dimension of previous entry) x (difference between required distance and distance of previous entry) / (difference between required minor dimension and minor dimension of previous entry).

Example: To find required distance for 3/4 inch opening (minor dimension) between 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) and 1 inch (25.4 mm) table values

Required distance = 4 inch + (3/4 - 1/2) x (6-1/2 - 4) / (1 - 1/2) = 5.25 inches

Source: UL 508A, Table 20.1

NFPA 79, meanwhile, not only deals with the industrial control panel itself, but also encompasses all the electrical equipment for machines, including components such as cables and devices used in the field. Chapter 6.2 lists a number of possible measures for providing protection against direct contact (Basic Protection):

1. Insulation of live parts
2. Protection by the enclosure
3. Protection by door interlocking
4. Restricting access to the enclosure

1. Insulation of live parts

If this measure for protection against direct contact is applied, live parts shall be completely covered by insulation material. Removing the insulation shall only be possible through destruction, and it must be resistant to mechanical, chemical, electrical and thermal influences.



Figure 5-16 Insulated cables

Note

Paints, varnishes, lacquers, or similar products are not normally considered to provide protection against contact.

2. Protection by enclosures

Protection against direct contact from outside an enclosure

All electrically operated parts and devices are located within the enclosure. The aim is to make it impossible to touch live parts in the industrial control panel from the outside. To ensure this, the enclosure and enclosure openings shall comply with the one of the following standard requirements, and they shall be appropriately tested.

- ANSI / UL 508
- ANSI / UL 508A
- ANSI / UL 50
- NEMA 250

Exception

Non-approved enclosures can be tested using a test finger: it can be applied in every opening of the enclosure after removal of all parts of the enclosure that are capable of being removed without the use of a tool. It should not be possible to touch the live parts with the test finger.

In practice, this means that each of the empty panels shall be designed and configured in accordance with the rules of UL 508A Chapters: "PART - SPECIFIC USE INDUSTRIAL CONTROL PANEL TYPES" shall be checked at the latest before the commissioning by the AHJ with a test finger to at least ensure protection against direct contact.

The figure below shows an example of such a test finger.

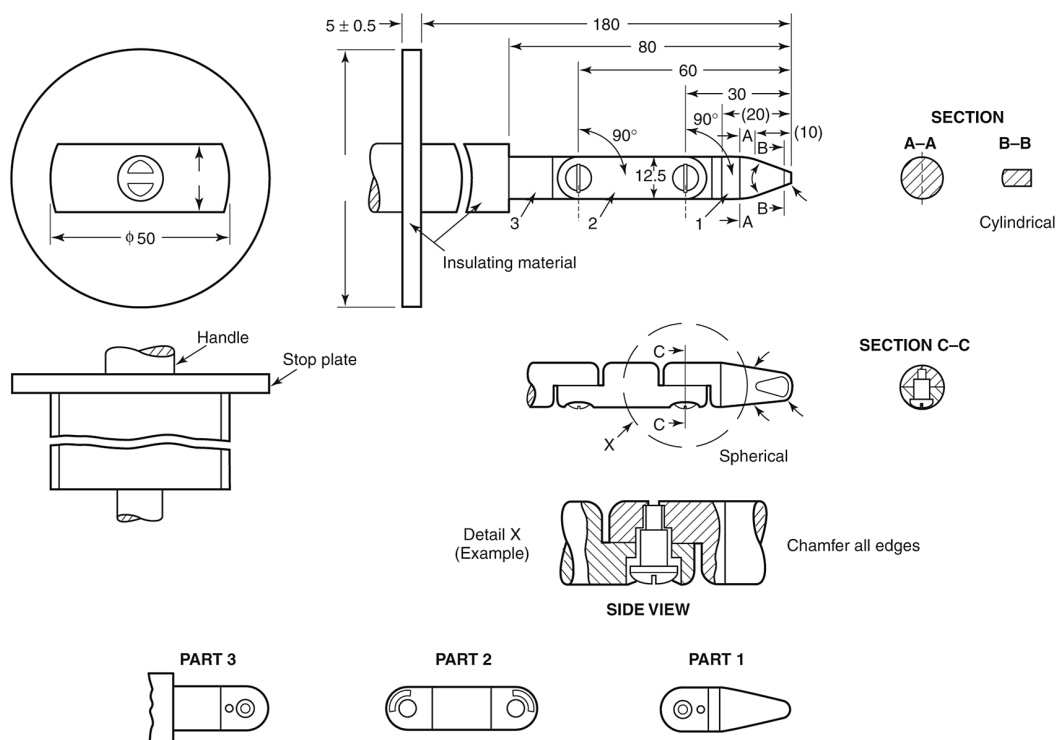


Figure 5-17 Test finger in accordance with NFPA 79, Fig. 6.2.3

Example: Sirius M200D motor starter with high enclosure type for field use, approved according to ANSI/UL 508



Figure 5-18 SIRIUS M200D distributed motor starter

Example: Industrial control panel enclosure, certified by UL according to ANSI/UL 50



Figure 5-19 Label for a UL-tested empty industrial control panel enclosure

3. Protection by door interlocking according to UL508A:

For industrial control panels with an operating voltage of $\geq 50 V_{eff}$ AC or ≥ 60 VDC, the isolating equipment (e.g. main control switch) shall be interlocked with the industrial control panel door mechanically, electrically, or using a combination of the two.

The following disconnecting means do not have to be interlocked with the door:

- Disconnecting means for industrial control panel lighting
- Disconnecting means for memory elements to prevent loss of data
- Excepted Circuits
- The use of an industrial control panel door lock (key or tool) in connection with a "dead front cover" behind the door for operability by untrained persons.
- Total power of the industrial control panel lower than 2 hp and the doors can only be opened with a tool or key
- Disconnecter unit via a plug connection and the doors can only be opened with a tool or key

Conditions

According to UL 508A, Chapter 66.1.3, and NFPA 79, Chapter 6.2.3.2, the door interlocking shall meet the following requirements:

1. It shall be possible for qualified persons to defeat the interlocking so that the industrial control panel doors can also be opened for servicing and maintenance work when the main control switch is in the "ON" position. A tool (for example a small, flat screwdriver) or also a key shall be used to this purpose.



Figure 5-20 Example: Defeating with a screwdriver

2. The interlocking shall be automatically activated on closing the industrial control panel door without the need for any additional measures.
3. When the industrial control panel door is open, interlocking shall be used to prevent the disconnecting means from closing. However, according to NFPA 79 a qualified person shall be capable of switching the cabinet on by means of a deliberate action. A tool is not necessarily required for this.



Figure 5-21 Example: Switching on the main control switch with open door with deliberate action without tools by actuating a lever on the reverse side of the door with the left hand.

A wiring diagram example of an electrical door interlocking can be found in the Annex.

With voltages of $\geq 50 V_{eff}$ AC or 60 V DC, devices mounted on the inside of industrial control panel doors shall also be protected against unintentional contact according to NFPA 79. This protection can be provided by the inherent design of the devices themselves, or by the application of barriers at a distance of 50 mm (2 in.) from the live parts.

This requirement is based on the IEC standards. The distance of 50 mm corresponds to the IEC test for back-of-hand safety with IP protection class IP1. Since the IP protection classes are not generally accepted in the USA, this has been described using distance specifications. The purpose of this requirement is to prevent unintentional contact with live parts while working on an open panel.

The logic behind the requirement for interlocking disconnection means and doors is the protection against direct contact already mentioned.



Figure 5-22 Equipment for door mounting

According to the US standards, contact with a voltage of 50 V_{eff} AC or 60 V DC or higher results in impermissibly high bodily currents for people. For this reason, the aim of the regulations listed above is to ensure that lay persons do not have access to industrial control panels, and to prevent unintentional closing of the disconnecting means when the door is open. Qualified personnel shall, however, be able to defeat the interlock by means of a tool (tool) so that they can still open the enclosure under voltage or energize it with the door open. Qualified personnel possess the know-how, experience and training to carry this operation out properly and intentionally.

4. Restricted access to the enclosure

UL 508A describes the industrial control panel from the supply terminal to the outgoing terminals into the field (field wiring terminals). Areas outside the industrial control panel are no longer described in UL 508A.

On the other hand, NFPA 79 describes the entire machine. This includes possible subdistribution boards that may be supplied by a main panel with a disconnecting means.

The "Enclosure Access" chapter of NFPA 79 regulates this topic under one or more of the following three conditions:

1. All doors can only be opened by qualified persons using tools or keys.
2. All doors can only be opened with tools or keys and are additionally locked with the disconnecter unit, including all requirements of defeating already described. This door interlock shall only be operated by qualified persons during operation.
3. All cabinets are equipped with a cover behind the door with the purpose of operability by untrained persons (contact with live parts shall not be possible). In this case the doors shall be accessible by everyone during operation without the use of tools or keys.

Note

A safety note has to be attached on the outside in case of points 1 and 3 to show that unlocking or opening the door does not lead directly to a de-energized status of all components.

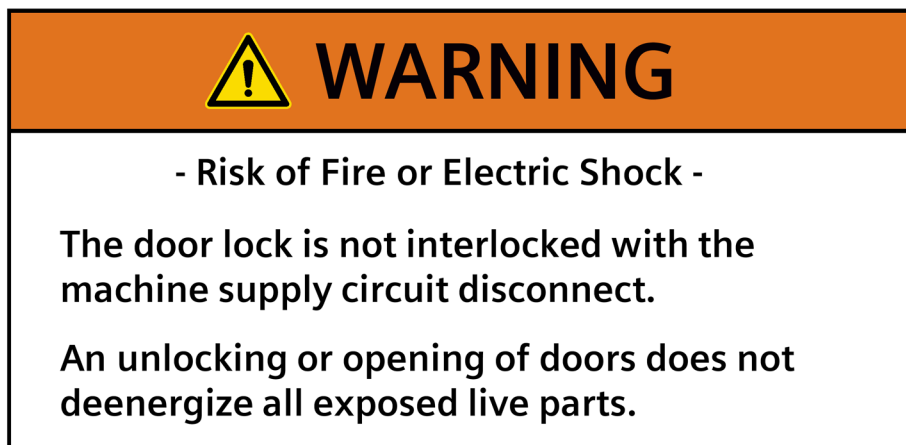


Figure 5-23 "Key or tool, dead front cover" warning label (NFPA79)

Note

Each operating means of the isolation devices (for example the handle for the main control switch) shall have the following characteristics according to NFPA 79:

- Accessible at all times
 - Identified appropriately
 - Lockable in the "OFF" position
 - In sight of the part of the machine or system requiring disconnection
-

5.4.2.2 Fault protection (protection against indirect touching)

As well as protection against direct contact, attention shall also be given to the hazardous situations that can result from faults, and suitable measures shall be taken. Indirect contact with live parts can only arise in the event of a fault. The most frequent fault condition is the insulation failure between live and exposed conductive parts. The resulting potentially hazardous contact voltage shall be prevented by means of suitable protective measures.

NFPA 79 describes two protective measures in Chapter 6.3.2:

1. Protection by double insulation

Double or reinforced insulation is intended to prevent the occurrence of hazardous touch voltages on the accessible parts through a failure in the basic insulation.

Equipment shall be listed accordingly or checked and distinctively marked.

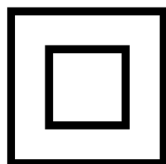


Figure 5-24 "Double Insulation" symbol (protection class 2)

2. Protection by automatic disconnection of supply

Exposed parts shall be grounded (see Chapter Grounding (Page 199)), and corresponding short-circuit protective devices that disconnect immediately and independently in the event of a fault shall be used. This ensures that the duration of potential contact with voltages that present a contact hazard is kept to a minimum. The disconnection time is generally in the millisecond range (see tripping characteristics for fuses, circuit breakers, etc.). Verification of this protective measure is described in Chapter Testing and verification (Page 349).

UL 508A describes protection against indirect contact through automatic disconnection of the supply in the relevant chapters ("Grounding and overcurrent protection"). It does not refer to protective measures explicitly, but these are covered by the structural requirements it sets out in any case.

5.4 Protective measures

5.4.2.3 Protection by the use of protective extra low voltage (PELV) or NEC Class 2 electric circuits

A PELV is described in **NFPA 79, Chapter 6.4**. A PELV is used to protect persons against electric shock from indirect contact and it also protects against limited area direct contact.

Here the safe Class 2 electric circuit is also referenced which, like the PELV, protects against electric dangers to Chap. 13.1.1 of the NFPA 79 and also to Article 750 of the NEC.

Conditions

A PELV circuit shall satisfy the following conditions:

1. The rated voltage shall not exceed the following values:
 - a) 30 V AC (effective) or 60 V DC (ripple-free) when the equipment is used in normally dry locations, and when large area contact of live parts with the human body is not present.
 - b) For all other cases than described under a): (large area contact under voltage under wet conditions), the voltage may be max. 6 V AC (effective) or 15 V DC (ripple-free).
2. One side of the circuit or one point of the supply shall be grounded.
3. Live parts of PELV circuits shall be electrically separated from other live parts of circuits. The distance shall be $\geq$ the distance between the primary and secondary side of the safety transformer.
4. Conductors shall be physically separated from the conductors of any other circuits. Should this not be practicable, the electric strength of the conductors shall be dimensioned for the highest voltage occurring in the cable duct.

Devices used

The following devices may be used for supplying a PELV:

1. Safety transformer (isolation transformer!)
2. Current source providing a degree of safety equivalent to that of a safety transformer (e.g. motor generator with insulated windings).
3. Electrochemical sources (e.g. batteries) or another source independent of a higher-voltage circuit (e.g. diesel-driven generators).
4. Electronic power supply with fused outputs. An internal fault is not permitted to result in excess voltage in accordance with the PELV standard voltages.

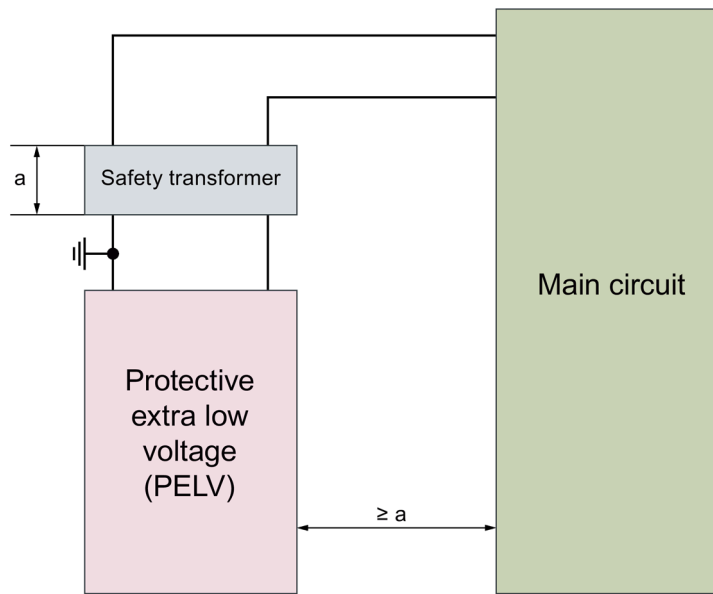


Figure 5-25 Example configuration of a protective extra low voltage (PELV) circuit

5.4.2.4 Protection against residual voltages

NFPA 79 regulates the handling of stored energy.

1. After disconnection of the source voltage the residual voltages above 60 V have to be discharged below 60 V within 5 seconds.

Exceptions

- Components with a stored charge of $Q \leq 60 \mu\text{C}$
- If the functioning of the equipment is interrupted through the discharge, it is permitted to attach a durable safety sign drawing attention to the hazard of electric shock and stating the delay required before entry to the enclosure is allowed. This sign shall be displayed at an easily visible location on or immediately adjacent to the enclosure containing the capacitance.

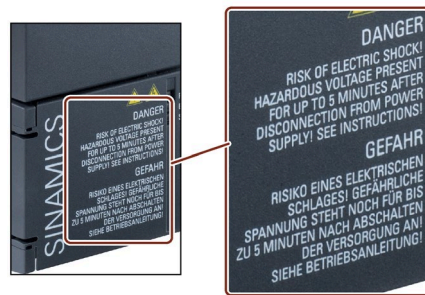


Figure 5-26 SINAMICS frequency converters with warning sign

2. The withdrawal of plugs which results in the exposure of conductors (e.g. pins) shall have a discharge time $t \leq 1 \text{ sec}$.

Exceptions

- Components with a stored charge of $Q \leq 60 \mu\text{C}$
- Conductors protected against direct contact

The following regulations on capacitors are described both in NEC and in NFPA 79.

Capacitors shall:

Be capable of discharging stored energy. (Discharge resistors) which reduce the voltage to $\leq 50 \text{ V}$ within one minute of the energy being disconnected.

Exception: If it is nevertheless not possible to adhere to these discharge times for functional and technical reasons, you can now attach a clearly visible safety label to the control panel. The specialist who shall gain access to these capacitive loads for maintenance can then adhere to the necessary discharge times (for safe work).

The discharge circuit shall meet one of the following two requirements:

- It must be permanently connected to the capacitor or the capacitor bank.
- It must be automatically switched on when the voltage is switched off. Manual means of switch-on is not permitted.

Exception: A manual discharge device is accepted when the following conditions are met:

- Direct contact protection in the main circuit
- Use of the capacitive loads according to manufacturer descriptions and documentation.

5.4.3 Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing)

5.4.3.1 Background, objective, and purpose

Arc Flash and their consequences are major causes of injuries in the electrical industry. The topic of "arc flash hazards" has an important role in the USA and is dealt with and promoted accordingly. Awareness of such hazards is significantly more pronounced than in Europe, for example. The relevant standards place emphasis on the subject of Arc Flash protection and its associated hazards, and specify requirements relating to it. This particularly applies to NEC (NFPA 70), NFPA 79 (for Industrial Machinery) and NFPA 70E (relating to electrical safety in the workplace).



Figure 5-27 NFPA 70E Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

NEC

The best protection against an arc flash is to work on the system when it is in a de-energized state. For troubleshooting, maintenance or testing purposes, however, work must occasionally be carried out on live parts. For this reason, the National Electric Code (NEC) in the USA, and the NFPA 79, for example, stipulate that a warning shall be given about the dangers of an arc flash in an industrial control panel.

The following requirement concerning Arc Flash Hazards can be found in the NEC, the US statutory Code for the electrical sector:

NEC 110.16, protection against arc flashes

Electrical equipment such as switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, meter socket enclosures, and motor control centers that are in other than dwelling occupancies and are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized shall be field marked

to warn qualified persons of potential electric arc flashes. The marking shall be located so as to be clearly visible to qualified persons before examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance of the equipment.

5.4 Protective measures

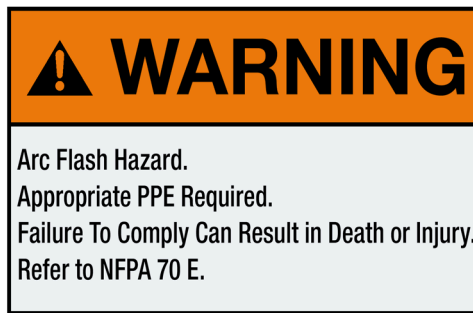


Figure 5-28 Label warning against arcing faults

However, this general warning from the NEC does not ensure safe working with energized equipment, as the details of the necessary protective measures have not yet been determined.

5.4.3.2 Necessary data and identification by the manufacturer

The responsibility for safe execution of all live work in accordance with OSHA legislation lies with the employer of the employee and thus as a rule with the operator of the system.

However, the responsibility for the calculation, evaluation, marking and determination of protective clothing is increasingly being delegated to the suppliers of industrial control panels and machines.

Collection of necessary data

In this context, the process of collecting the necessary data to complete an Arc Flash study is the most time-consuming one. In most cases, manufacturers and suppliers of industrial control panels and mechanical equipment cannot provide much of this data and must therefore be inquired by the operator before the arc flash analysis.

IEEE 1584, 2018 edition, is a guide on how to evaluate Arc Flash Hazards. In this guide, the following 10 steps are recommended for completing the evaluation:

- Step 1: Collect all system and installation data
- Step 2: Determine the system modes of system
- Step 3: Determine the dead short-circuit current
- Step 4: Determine the mechanical phase distances from busbars and conductor distances as well as the size of the control panel in relation to system voltage.
- Step 5: Determine the dominant conductor configuration
- Step 6: Select the working distances
- Step 7: Determine the arc flash current
- Step 8: Determine the arc flash duration
- Step 9: Calculate the max. occurring arc flash energy density [cal/cm^2]
- Step 10: Define the protective boundaries for arc flashes for all the equipment

Certified software is used for the complex calculation and execution of these 10 steps based on the requirements of IEEE 1584-2018. The result is presented in a comprehensive technical report and as a warning sign with detailed information on safe working according to NFPA 70E. In this way, the requirements of the NEC and the operator's responsibility are fulfilled.

Identification

Therefore, it is recommended that manufacturers and suppliers of equipment that shall be identified with an Arc Flash Hazard label according to the NEC and NFPA 79 provide a general safety mark for this equipment (see figure below) after all work on energized equipment has been safely performed and simultaneously corresponds to the demands of NFPA79E.

 WARNING 	
Arc Flash and Shock Hazard Appropriate PPE Required	
Arc Flash Boundary	30 in
Incident Energy	2.7 cal/cm ²
Working Distance	18 in
PPE based on latest edition of NFPA 70E	
Limited Approach Boundary	42 in
Restricted Approach Boundary	12 in
Bus: D01+C1-Q1, Rated Voltage: 0.48 kV	

Figure 5-29 Warning sign relating to the arc flash hazard that specifies the safety limits and the occurring arc energy in cal/cm²

The thorough safety label, however, does provide details relating to safety limits, arc flashing energy in the event of a malfunction, and so on.

Specifications on the selection of the correct protective clothing can be found in the current NFPA70E. These details are usually attached by the operator on-site after carrying out the arc-flash calculation and defining the necessary personal protective equipment.

Service

To perform this arcing fault analysis and assessment, Siemens offers a full service including the documentation and the required warning label.

You can find more information here (<https://new.siemens.com/global/en/markets/panel-building/control-cabinet/north-america.html>).

5.4 Protective measures

Overcurrent protection and sizing of the power circuit

6

6.1 General information

In accordance with NEC, UL 508A and NFPA 79, industrial control panels and the electrical equipment of machinery and systems shall be correspondingly sized and protected against overcurrent. The devices used shall be certified for the respective operating range. Furthermore, UL uses unique device identification and its operating range product categories (See also Chapter Categorization using the Category Code Number (CCN) (Page 49)).

The coming chapters explain the relevant rules and the respective procedure.

Note

The conductor dimensioning of main circuits in industrial control panels for industrial machines is based on the explanations of the Chapter 11.3.1. (Page 253).

For the standard-compliant component selection under consideration of all project-relevant parameters, including internal and external conductor sizing according to UL 508A or NFPA 79, the electrical engineer has the software tool: "Control Panel Designer" available.

This allows configuring the following practical configuration examples quickly, easily and in automated manner. In addition all electric circuits are documented in a clear "single line" circuit diagram and all components with rated data and their current certificate links are documented in a PDF file.

Download links, installation notes and step-by-step introduction via the application example can be found in Appendix B (see also B.2 examples: Software and tools for electrical planning according to North American standards / for the North American market (Page 368).

6.2 Feeder circuit

In accordance with NEC, NFPA 79 and UL 508A, all conductors and components upstream of the load branch circuit are designated as a Feeder Circuit (see Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54) for the definition).

The electrical load is distributed in the feeder (feeder circuit) after the disconnecter unit to the load feeders. Therefore as a rule cable cross-section reductions may occur. So that the line protection is compiled with these cross-section-reduced conductors, the standards describe in more detail the short-circuit proof routing of "Feeder tap conductor".

The following terms from the UL508A are explained using the following figure:

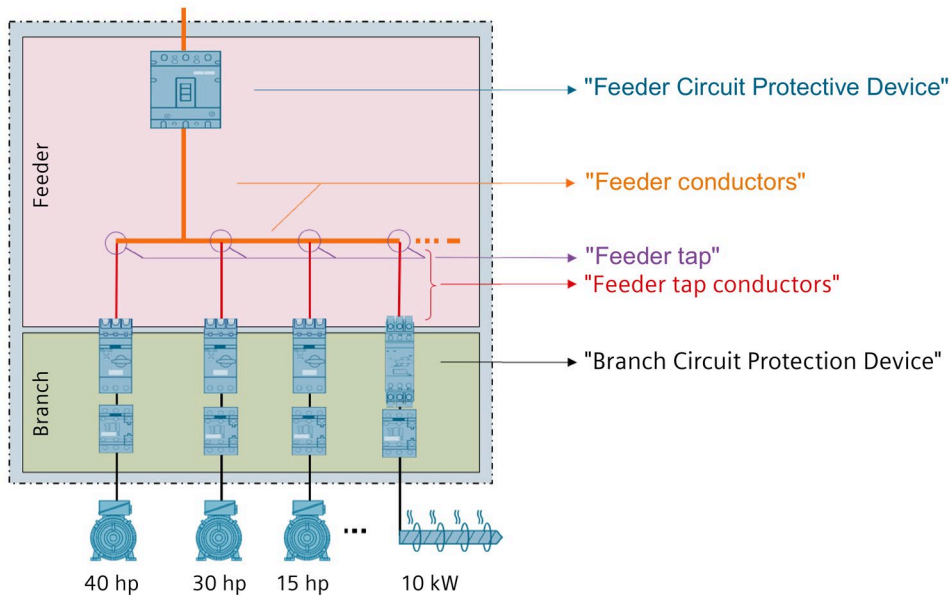


Figure 6-1 Overview of feeder and branch circuit of main circuits

See also the Chapters Single installation (Page 112), Dimensioning (Page 264) and Marking of industrial control panel and machinery (Page 305).

6.2.1 Feeder Circuit Protective Device

To protect conductors and components in the feeder circuit appropriately against short-circuit, the following devices shall be used according to UL 508A, Chapter 32:

- Circuit breakers "Inverse-time circuit breaker" in accordance with UL 489 **or**
- Fuses "Fuses" in accordance with UL 248-4 to 12 and -15

These devices meet the through air clearances and creepage distances in the Feeder Circuit without any other accessories (see also Chapter Air clearances and creepage distances (Page 54)).

Overcurrent protection shall be provided in each ungrounded conductor, usually in the phase conductors.

Exception: Protective devices are provided outside the industrial control panel and are not part of the electrical equipment of the manufacturer. In this case, a clear label shall be attached specifying the type of protective device required and how it is to be rated. See the Chapter Marking the control panel and the machine (Page 305) in this respect.

6.2.2 Feeder conductor

All cables upstream of the BCPD of the load feeders are "Feeder conductors" by definition. Feeder electric circuits are characterized by leading electric currents of multiple loads. All these conductors shall at least be designed according to the following dimensioning rule, dependent on the rated currents of all loads which are activated simultaneously.

- $1.25 * \Sigma \text{ FLC of all heater loads, plus}$
- $1.25 * \text{ FLC motor with the largest power, plus}$
- $1.00 * \text{ FLC of all remaining and motorized and non-motor loads which are activated simultaneously.}$

Loads which are not activated simultaneously with other loads shall not be considered here.

6.2.3 FLC - Full load current (standard current rating)

FLC - Full load current (standard current rating)

- Rated currents for motor loads
 - **AC motors:** From the following table 6-1 "Motor full-load currents in ampere dependent on motor outputs AC voltages and number of the phases"
 - **DC motors:** From the following table 6-2 "Motor full-load currents in ampere dependent on motor outputs and DC voltage"
- Rated currents for heaters and non-motor loads calculated from power:
 - Single-phase: $I = P / U$
 - Three-phase: $I = P / (U \cdot \sqrt{3})$

Note

All cable designs in the feeder and in the branch as well as all protection and switchgears are selected according to the FLC.

Only the motor overload protection is not selected and set according to the FLC but according to the type plate current and the service factor.

For all motors above 500 hp and an operating voltage greater than 600 V, the voltage, current and anchor stalling current shall be specified.

Table 6- 1 FLC, motor standard currents in ampere, dependent on AC motor outputs, voltages and number of phases

Horse power	110 ... 120 V		200 V		208 V		220 ... 240 V ^a		380 ... 415 V		440 ... 480 V		550 ... 600 V	
	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase	1-phase	3-phase
1/10	3.0	–	–	–	–	–	1.5	–	1.0	–	–	–	–	–
1/8	3.8	–	–	–	–	–	1.9	–	1.2	–	–	–	–	–
1/6	4.4	–	2.5	–	2.4	–	2.2	–	1.4	–	–	–	–	–
1/4	5.8	–	3.3	–	3.2	–	2.9	–	1.8	–	–	–	–	–
1/3	7.2	–	4.1	–	4.0	–	3.6	–	2.3	–	–	–	–	–
1/2	9.8	4.4	5.6	2.5	5.4	2.4	4.9	2.2	3.2	1.3	2.5	1.1	2.0	0.9
3/4	13.8	6.4	7.9	3.7	7.6	3.5	6.9	3.2	4.5	1.8	3.5	1.6	2.8	1.3
1	16.0	8.4	9.2	4.8	8.8	4.6	8.0	4.2	5.1	2.3	4.0	2.1	3.2	1.7
1-1/2	20.0	12.0	11.5	6.9	11.0	6.6	10.0	6.0	6.4	3.3	5.0	3.0	4.0	2.4
2	24.0	13.6	13.8	7.8	13.2	7.5	12.0	6.8	7.7	4.3	6.0	3.4	4.8	2.7
3	34.0	19.2	19.6	11.0	18.7	10.6	17.0	9.6	10.9	6.1	8.5	4.8	6.8	3.9
5	56.0	30.4	32.2	17.5	30.8	16.7	28.0	15.2	17.9	9.7	14.0	7.6	11.2	6.1
7-1/2	80.0	44.0	46.0	25.3	44.0	24.2	40.0	22.0	27.0	14.0	21.0	11.0	16.0	9.0
10	100.0	56.0	57.5	32.2	55.0	30.8	50.0	28.0	33.0	18.0	26.0	14.0	20.0	11.0
15	135.0	84.0	–	48.3	–	46.2	68.0	42.0	44.0	27.0	34.0	21.0	27.0	17.0
20	–	108.0	–	62.1	–	59.4	88.0	54.0	56.0	34.0	44.0	27.0	35.0	22.0
25	–	136.0	–	78.2	–	74.8	110.0	68.0	70.0	44.0	55.0	34.0	44.0	27.0
30	–	160.0	–	92	–	88	136.0	80.0	87.0	51.0	68.0	40.0	54.0	32.0
40	–	208.0	–	120	–	114	176.0	104.0	112.0	66.0	88.0	52.0	70.0	41.0
50	–	260.0	–	150	–	143	216.0	130.0	139.0	83.0	108.0	65.0	86.0	52.0
60	–	–	–	177	–	169	–	154.0	–	103.0	–	77.0	–	62.0
75	–	–	–	221	–	211	–	192.0	–	128.0	–	96.0	–	77.0
1000	–	–	–	285	–	273	–	248.0	–	165.0	–	124.	–	99.0
125	–	–	–	359	–	343	–	312.0	–	208.0	–	0	–	125.0
150	–	–	–	414	–	396	–	360.0	–	240.0	–	156.	–	144.0
200	–	–	–	552	–	528	–	480.0	–	320.0	–	0	–	192.0
250	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	604	–	403.0	–	180.	–	242.0
300	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	722	–	482.0	–	0	–	289.0
350	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	828	–	560.0	–	240.	–	336.0
400	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	954	–	636.0	–	0	–	382.0
450	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1030	–	–	–	302.	–	412
500	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	1180	–	786.0	–	0	–	472.0
												361.		
												0		
												414.		
												0		
												477.		
												0		
												515.		
												0		
												590.		
												0		

^a To obtain full-load currents for 265 and 270 volt motors, decrease corresponding 220 – 240 volt ratings by 13 and 17 percent respectively.

Source: UL 508A, Table 50.1

Table 6- 2 FLC, motor standard currents in ampere, dependent on DC motor outputs and the voltage

Horse power	90 V	110 ... 120 V	180 V	220 ... 240 V ^a	500 V	550 ... 600 V
1/10	-	2.0	–	1.0	–	–
1/8	-	2.2	–	1.1	–	–
1/6	-	2.4	–	1.2	–	–
1/4 ^a	4.0	3.1	2.0	1.6	–	–
1/3	5.2	4.1	2.6	2.0	–	–
1/2	6.8	5.4	3.4	2.7	–	–
3/4	9.6	7.6	4.8	3.8	–	1.6
1	12.2	9.5	6.1	4.7	–	2.0
1-1/2	–	13.2	8.3	6.6	–	2.7
2	–	17	10.8	8.5	–	3.6
3	–	25	16	12.2	–	5.2
5	–	40	27	20	–	8.3
7-1/2	–	58	–	29	13.6	12.2
10	–	76	–	38	18	16
15	–	110	–	55	27	24
20	–	148	–	72	34	31
25	–	184	–	89	43	38
30	–	220	–	106	51	46
40	–	292	–	140	67	61
50	–	360	–	173	83	75
60	–	–	–	206	99	90
75	–	–	–	255	123	111
100	–	–	–	341	164	148
125	–	–	–	425	205	185
150	–	–	–	506	246	222
200	–	–	–	675	330	294

^a The full-load current for a motor with ¼ HP and 32 V DC is 8.6 A. Source: UL 508A, Table 50.2

6.2.4 Feeder tap conductor UL508A

Feeder tap conductor UL508A

Cables with low cross-section may be tapped at the "Feeder conductor". Each of these cables shall be connected at the subsequent BCPD of the respective load feeder and are therefore fully located in the "Feeder circuit". For this reason these feeder points are designated as „Feeder tap“ and the cross-section reduced cables to the BCPD as „Feeder tap conductor“.

They are sized like individual load feeders (see in Chapter Single installation (Page 112) "Step 4 - Examples of sizing rules" (Page 118) and "Step 5 - Cable dimensioning (Page 120)"). However, depending on their cable length they have to fulfill the following requirements additionally:

Example for motor feeders:

- a) $L \leq 3.0 \text{ m (10ft)}$ - Current carrying capacity of the Feeder tap conductor $\geq 1/10$ "Feeder protection device"
- b) $3 \text{ m} < L \leq 7.5 \text{ m (25ft)}$ - Current carrying capacity of the Feeder tap conductor $\geq 1/3$ "Feeder protection device"
- c) $L > 7.5 \text{ m (25ft)}$ - Current carrying capacity of the Feeder tap conductor = current carrying capacity of the upstream "Feeder conductor"

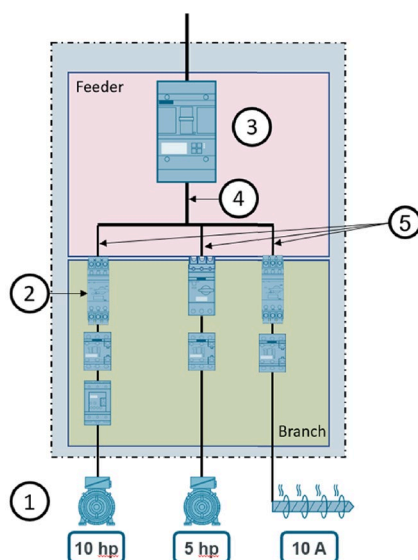
Note

If tested busbar adapters are used on busbars, the manufacturer documentation with regard to rated current capacity and short-circuit load capacity with protection from the certificates have to be used as a priority. When connecting the "Feeder tap conductor" to components it is important to observe the air clearances and creepage distances (see also chapter Air clearances and creepage distances (Page 54)).

6.2.5 Dimensioning of the short-circuit protection device for the feeder circuit

Protection devices in the Feeder Circuit shall not be designed larger than the following two conditions:

1. The rated current of the largest feeder protection device (BCPD) in the electric circuit plus the summation of the rated currents of all other loads after the feeder protection device. The loads of the standard currents "FLC" have to be used for the calculation of the summation of these rated currents. See the figure "Example of sizing the protective device in the Feeder Circuit" below)
2. The current carrying capacity of the feeder conductor and busbar systems on the outgoing terminal of the protection device (see also Chapter Sizing (Page 72)).

Example: Spring design

- ① Determining the rated currents of the loads:
 - Motor 10 HP, 3-phase, 480 V → FLC according to Table 6-1: → 14 A
 - Motor 5 HP, 3-phase, 480 V → FLC according to Table 6-1: → 7.6 A
 - Heater rated current in accordance with nameplate: → 10 A
- ② Determining the largest branch circuit protective device in accordance with Chapter 6.3.1.1. Inverse time circuit breaker max. 35 A permissible → selected: 20 A
- ③ Maximum feeder protection device:
Largest BCPD (②) + Σ FLC of all other loads $20\text{ A} + 7.6\text{ A} + 10\text{ A} = 37.6\text{ A}$
"Feeder protection device" → selected rating: 30 A
- ④ Dimensioning feeder conductor:
 $1.25 * 14\text{ A}$ (largest motor) = 17.5
 $1.25 * 10\text{ A}$ (all heaters) = 12.5 A
 $1.00 * 7.6\text{ A}$ other loads which run simultaneously.
Total FLC = 37.6 A
 8 AWG current-carrying capacity: Max. 50 A $\geq$ 20 A feeder protection device → OK
- ⑤ Dimensioning feeder tap conductor, for motor loads, max length $\leq 3\text{ m}$ → in accordance with UL508A 32.5.1 a):
 1. Condition: Motor feeder tap as individual feeder (see example of the cable dimensioning: Fig. 6-7 Dimensioning of the cable) → Current carrying capacity at least $\text{FLC} * 1.25$ and smallest cable in the main circuit at least 14 AWG
 2. Condition: The rated current of the protection device shall not exceed the 10-fold current carrying capacity of the feeder tap conductor.

Figure 6-2 Example of sizing the feeder circuit

Feeder tap conductor to 10 hp motor

1. $14 \text{ A} * 1.25 = 17.5 \text{ A} \rightarrow 12 \text{ AWG}$ with 20 A current carrying capacity.
2. Current carrying capacity Feeder tap $\geq 1/10$ rated current of the Feeder protection device.
 $20 \text{ A} \geq 30 \text{ A}/10 \rightarrow 12 \text{ AWG} = \text{OK}$.

Feeder tap conductor to 5 hp motor

1. $7.6 \text{ A} * 1.25 = 9.5 \text{ A} \rightarrow 14 \text{ AWG}$ with 15 A current carrying capacity
2. Current carrying capacity Feeder tap $\geq 1/10$ rated current of the Feeder protection device.
 $15 \text{ A} \geq 30 \text{ A}/10 \rightarrow 14 \text{ AWG} = \text{OK}$.

Feeder tap conductor to 10 A heating:

Dimensioning feeder tap conductor, for non-motor loads, max. length $\leq 3 \text{ m} \rightarrow$ Rule: UL 508A:

Motor and heaters such as single feeder $\rightarrow$ current carrying capacity with at least $\text{FLC} * 1.25$ and smallest cable in main circuit 14 AWG.

Note

The minimum current carrying capacity of the feeder tap conductor $L \leq 3 \text{ m}$ is independent of the rated current of the feeder protection device, if the feeder tap conductor does not leave the industrial control panel.

$\text{FLC} * 1.25 \rightarrow 10 \text{ A} * 1.25 = 12.5 \text{ A} \rightarrow 14 \text{ AWG}$ with 15 A current carrying capacity

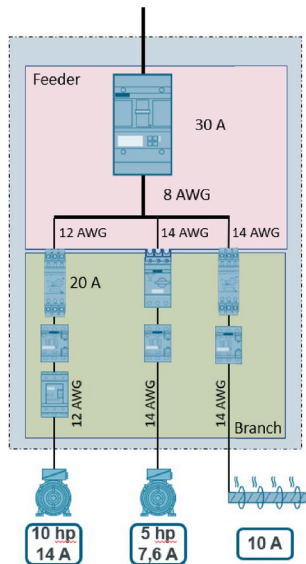


Figure 6-3 Result of the example for the dimensioning of the protection device in the Feeder Circuit

6.3 Branch Circuit

The outgoing loads, from the last feeder protection device before the load, the "Branch Circuit Protection Device" (see image overview of feeder and branch circuit of main circuits). The abbreviation "BCPD" for "Branch Circuit Protective Device" is often used colloquially.

All downstream components and conductors are designated as a "Branch Protective Circuit" (definition see Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54) and Example for dimensioning of the protection device in the feeder circuit (Page 100)).

The correct protection and sizing of the Branch Circuits depends on the load involved. This topic is described in UL 508A, and is explained in the coming chapters of this guide.

6.3.1 Motor loads

A motor feeder is designated in accordance with UL 508A as a Motor Branch.

In accordance with the definition chapter "COMBINATION MOTOR CONTROLLER", a motor branch shall perform the following four safety functions:

- Disconnecting means
- Branch circuit protection
- Motor control
- Overload protection

These four functions can be implemented by means of different device combinations. Due to the different product categories, this results in a host of different Construction Types for a motor branch circuit.

For this reason, UL 508 (product standard for Industrial Control Equipment) defines six different standard motor feeder types described as follows in Table 94.1, column A-F:

6.3 Branch Circuit

Table 6- 3 Different construction types of "standard motor feeder types Type A to F"

Feeder type	Component ^a	Component standard	Component function			
			Disconnect	Branch circuit protection	Motor control	Motor overload
A	Manual disconnect	UL 98, UL98A or UL 489	●			
	Fuse	UL 248 series		●		
	Magnetic or solid state motor controller	UL 508			●	
	Overload relay	UL 508				●
B	Manual disconnect	UL 98, UL98A or UL 489	●			
	Motor Short-Circuit Protector	UL 508		●		
	Magnetic or solid state motor controller	UL 508			●	
	Overload relay	UL 508				●
C	Inverse-Time Circuit Breaker	UL 489	●	●		
	Magnetic or solid state motor controller	UL 508			●	
	Overload relay	UL 508				●
D	Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breaker	UL 489	●	●		
	Magnetic or solid state motor controller	UL 508			●	
	Overload relay	UL 508				●
E	Manual Self-Protected Combination Motor Controller	UL 508	●	●	●	●
F	Manual Self-Protected Combination Motor Controller	UL 508	●	●		●
	Magnetic or solid state motor controller	UL 508			●	

^a Tests are concluded on the individual components per the applicable requirements from the UL Standards in the table

Source: UL 508 2018, Table 94.1

Designations

A circuit breaker itself which takes on all 4 safety functions is designated as a "Manual-self protected Combination Motor Controller Type E".

The combination of a motor circuit breaker and a contactor is a Self-Protected Combination Motor Controller Type F.

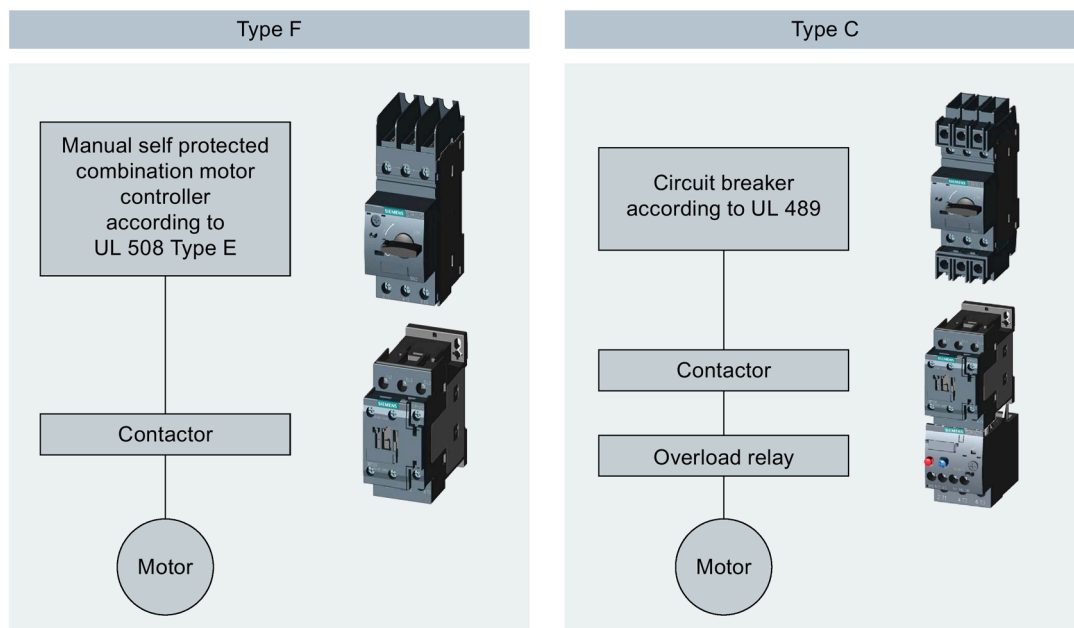
Examples:

Figure 6-4 Examples of Type F and Type C

Construction types

UL 508A differentiates between single installation and group installation.

The logic behind these two construction types is explained in the coming Chapters Single Installation (Page 112) and Group Installation (Page 140).

6.3.1.1 Single Installation

"Single Installation" means each load branch circuit is protected with its own short-circuit protective device.

This chapter is limited to only those rules in accordance with UL 508A that describe this topic in detail. NFPA 79 does not contradict UL 508A.

Selection of the device for motor control in accordance with UL 508A

A motor controller (e.g. contactor or manual switch) shall meet the following requirements:

- Approved in compliance with product standard UL 508.
- Approved for at least the rated voltage of the circuit.
- Tested at least for the rated current in accordance with feeder circuit (Page 103) (for AC motors) or feeder circuit (Page 104) (for DC motors). See Chapter Feeder circuit (Page 100).
- Approved for the load type in accordance with the following table "Required controller ratings for various load types".

Table 6- 4 Required controller ratings for various load types

Controller rating		Usable load types
Type	Units	
AC heater or resistive	AC amperes	AC heater loads
DC heater or resistive	DC amperes	DC heater loads
AC amperes, general-purpose or general-use	AC amperes	AC non-motor-operated appliance or AC heater loads, AC power transformer for non-motor loads
DC amperes, general-purpose or general use	DC amperes	DC non-motor-operated appliances or DC heater loads
AC tungsten	AC amperes or watts	AC lighting load, AC heater load
DC tungsten	DC amperes or watts	DC lighting load, DC heater load
AC definite-purpose motor	FLA and LRA	AC hermetic refrigerant compressor motor, AC non-motor-operated appliance, or AC heater loads
DC definite-purpose motor	FLA and LRA	DC hermetic refrigerant compressor motor, DC non-motor-operated appliance, or DC heater loads
AC motor, design B, C or D	Horsepower	AC motor ^a , ac motor-operated appliance, non-motor-operated appliance, AC heater loads, AC fluorescent ballast load, AC power transformer for motor loads
DC motor	Horsepower	DC motor, DC motor-operated appliance, non-motor-operated appliance or DC heater loads

Source: UL 508A, Table 33.1

Selection and setting of overload protection in accordance with UL 508A

An overload relay, including a thermal or solid-state relay as a stand-alone device, or also integrated into a Manual self-protected combination motor controller, shall be approved in accordance with UL 508.

If motors are already equipped with integral overload protection, the control panel shall be marked to indicate how this protective function is intended to be integrated into the motor control circuit. Furthermore, there shall be a provision for the overload protection to be connected to the ungrounded conductors of the motor control circuit.

If the motors are impedance-protected or temperature-protected (I.P. or T.P.) and they do not require a connection to a motor control circuit, this shall be marked on the control panel. An additional overload relay is no longer required in this.

In contrast to conductor sizing or the selection of a short-circuit protective device, the rated current on the nameplate of the motor shall be applied when setting the overload relay.

Since the overload trip unit is usually adjusted to 125 % of the rated current in the case of overload relays, the service factor of the motor plays a decisive role in the correct setting of the overload relay. The service factor states the maximum full-load motor current with which the motor can be loaded without incurring damage. Thus, a motor with SF 1.15, for example, can be loaded continuously with 115 % of its rated current. A motor with SF 1.00 can only be loaded with 100 %.

NEC states that motors shall be protected against overload as follows:

- | | |
|--|--|
| • Motors with service factor ≥ 1.15 | ⇒ Overload protection 125 % of the rated current |
| • Motors which are designated with a max. temperature increase of 40 °C. | ⇒ Overload protection 125 % of the rated current |
| • All other motors | ⇒ Overload protection 115 % of the rated current |

This means:

- An overload relay that trips at 125% of the rated current is thus set to 1 x the type plate current for a motor with SF 1.15. The same setting also applies for motors which are designated by the manufacturer with: Max temperature increase of 40 °C"
- For a motor with SF <1.15, the overload relay shall be set to 0.92 x the type plate current.
⇒ $0.92 \times 125 \% = 115 \%$. If no SF specification is contained in the motor data, a SF = 1.0 has to be assumed.

For this reason, the motor overload protective device shall be selected in such a way that it is always possible to set it to 115% of the nameplate current.

Selection of the short-circuit protection according to UL 508A

The rated current of a short-circuit protective device shall be selected according to the **lower value** of the conditions under Point 1 and 2.

1. In accordance with motor current and percentage values

a) Motor rated current according to feeder circuit (Page 103) (for AC motors) or feeder circuit (Page 104) (for DC motors).

6.3 Branch Circuit

b) Determined according to the percentage specifications in accordance with the Table "6.5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes" below, or lower (the values are maximum values)

c) The values from a) and b) shall be multiplied

Table 6- 5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes

Type of branch circuit protective device	Rated amperes	Nominal rating of motor branch circuit protective device, percent of full load amperes	Notes
Nontime delay fuse	0 ... 600	300	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(a)
Nontime delay fuse	Over 600	300	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(b)
Dual element fuse (time delay) except Class CC	All	175	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(c)
Dual element fuse Class CC (time delay)	0 ... 30	300	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(a)
Inverse-time circuit breaker	0 ... 100	250	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(d)
Inverse-time circuit breaker	Over 100	250	See 31.3.7, 31.3.8, 31.3.9(e)
Instantaneous-trip circuit breaker	All	800	See 31.3.4, 31.3.9(f)
Circuit breaker Type F (Self-protected combination motor controller)	All	100	See 31.3.3
Manual self-protected combination motor controller type E	All	100	See 31.3.3

Source: UL 508A, Table 31.1

2. In accordance with manufacturer specifications

If the device manufacturer provides explicit specifications regarding protection, such as labels on the devices themselves, the temperature table of an overload relay, or manufacturer specifications supplied with the device (e.g. UL Certificate of Compliance), the short-circuit protection device shall be selected and sized to suit the components in the branch circuit.

a) Correspond to the rating specified by the manufacturer for the components to be protected.

a) Correspond to the type specified by the manufacturer for the components to be protected.

If the manufacturer specifications only contains the terms "fuse" and "circuit breaker", this refers to fuses in accordance with UL 248-4 to -12 or -15 and "Inverse-time circuit breaker" which are checked in accordance with UL 489.

See also

FLC - Full load current (standard current rating) (Page 102)



Power rating: 100 HP
 Voltage: 460 V
 Full-Load Amps FLA: 8.8 A
 Service factor: 1.15

Figure 6-5 Siemens motor

Step 1 – Determining the motor current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100) full-load motor-running currents in amperes corresponding to various AC horsepower ratings

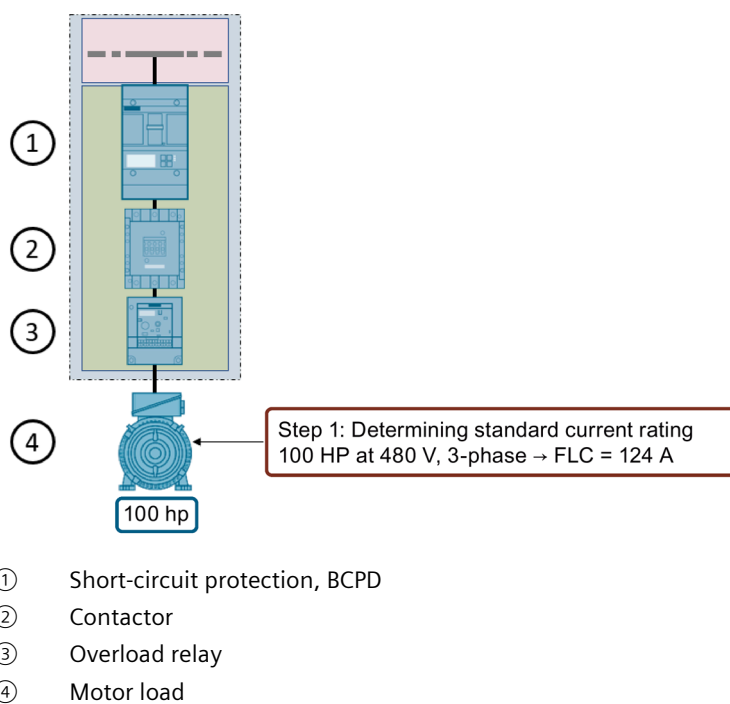


Figure 6-6 Determining the motor standard current

Step 2 – Selection of the motor controller

A contactor is intended to be used for motor control. Rated values shall be taken from the Certificate of Compliance.

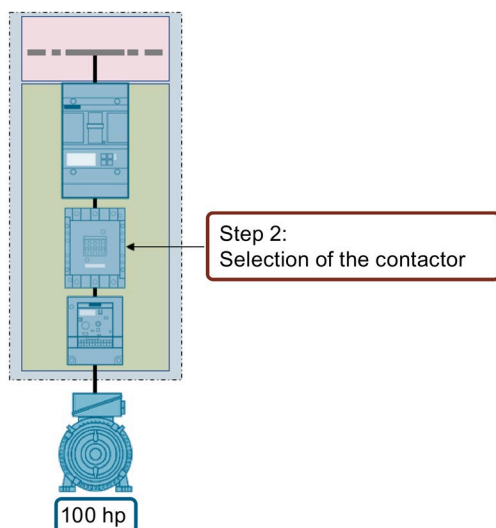


Figure 6-7 Selection of the motor controller

Table 6- 6 Horse power for Types 3RT1054

Voltage	1-ph	3-ph	FLC
200 / 208 V	25 hp	40 hp	120 A
230 / 240 V	25 hp	50 hp	130 A
460 / 480 V	50 hp	100 hp	124 A
575 / 600 V	50 hp	125 hp	125 A

→ Result: Siemens contactor: 3RT1054

Step 3 – Selection of the overload protective device

A thermal overload relay is to be used as overload protection.

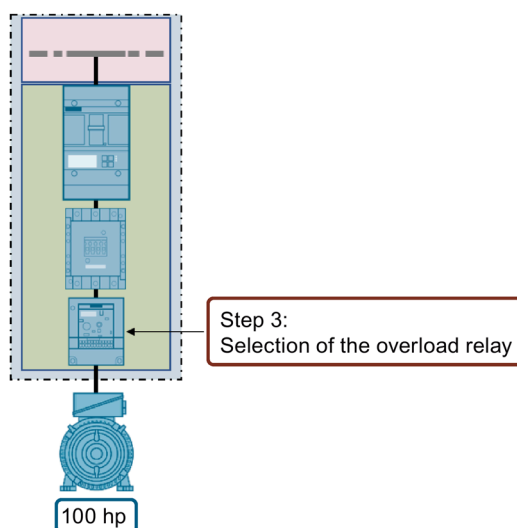


Figure 6-8 Selection of the overload protective device

Extract from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the 3RU2126 ... thermal overload relays from Siemens

"These devices are open type 3-pole thermal overload relays. They are adjusted over a small range as indicated in the setting range table. They are provided with integral ambient compensated, non-replaceable thermal trip features and are suitable for providing overload protection. The trip current is 125 percent of the FLA shown on dial."

Tripping current = 125 % FLA*, service factor of the motor = 1.15 $\Rightarrow$ **Set value = FLA = 94.0 A** (see Chapter Single Installation (Page 112))

Overload relay	Setting range: Overload protection	
3RU2146-	from	up to
-4D	18	25
-4E	22	32
-4F	28	40
-4H	36	50
-4J	45	63
-4K	57	75
-4L	70	90
-4M	80	100

$\rightarrow$ Result: Siemens overload relay: 3RU2146-4M.. (setting range 80 to 100 A)

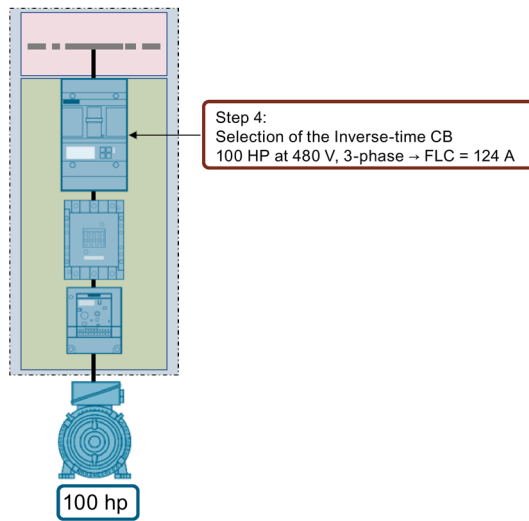
Step 4 – Selection of the short-circuit protective device

Figure 6-9 Selection of the short-circuit protective device

The short-circuit protective device shall be adapted to the devices of the motor branch circuit, and shall be restricted in accordance with Table 6-5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes (Page 114) according to the motor current (Feeder circuit (Page 100)).

Largest short-circuit protection device:

An "Inverse-time circuit breaker" may be restricted in accordance with Table 6-5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes (Page 114) with up to 250 % of the standard motor current Feeder circuit (Page 100). ⇒ Rating: "Inverse-time Circuit Breaker" with maximum rated current: $124 \text{ A} \times 2.5 = 310 \text{ A}$.

Note

If the calculation of the max. permissible "inverse-time circuit breaker" does not correspond to the following standard values (15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 125, 150, 175, 200, 225, 250, 300, 350, 400, 450, 500, 600, 601, 700, 800, 1000, 1200, 1600, 2000, 2500, 3000, 4000, 5000 and 6000 amps), the next highest standard value shall not be used.

Because of this only a 3VA with 350 A may be selected as the maximum CB. To obtain a high short-circuit rating for the entire motor feeder with the selection of the inverse-time circuit, it is advisable to fulfill the specifications of the short-circuit protection devices in the UL certificate of compliance of the manufacturer.

Smallest short-circuit protection device:

It shall also be ensured that the "inverse-time circuit breaker" is not selected too small. The rule is that all circuit breakers shall only use a capacity of 80 %, if they were not tested for "100 % continuous rating" in an individual case.

If a conventional circuit breaker is specified as the motor protection device, one can select it in the range of $124 \text{ A} / 0.8 = 155 \text{ A}$ and 350 A.

In this example you now select the 3VA5217-5ED31-0AA0 with 175 A rated current.

Result: Motor load feeder 100 HP

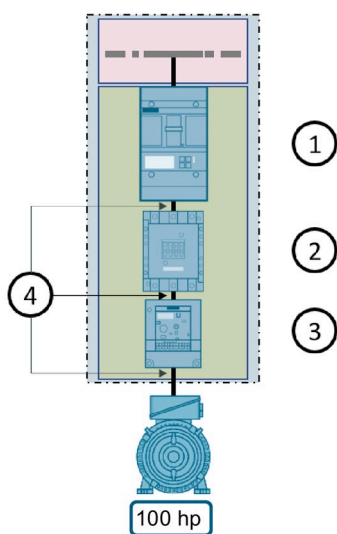


Figure 6-10 Fully dimensioned branch circuit

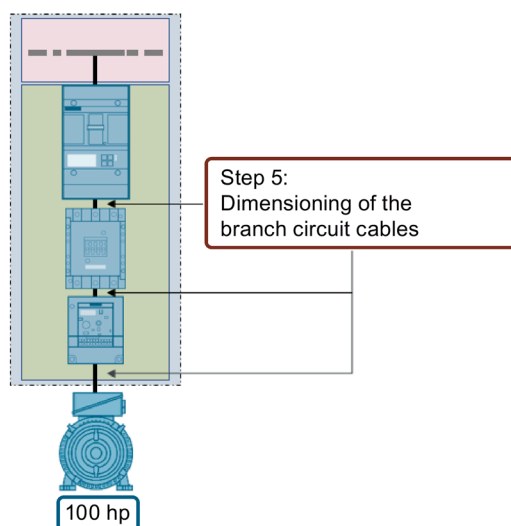
Step 5 – Sizing of the wiring

Figure 6-11 Sizing of the wiring

The procedure for sizing of the wiring is described in Chapter Sizing (Page 264).

⇒ $125\% \times \text{FLC motor standard current (see step 1)} \Rightarrow 11 \text{ A} \times 1.25 = 155.13 \text{ A}$

In accordance with Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266) the minimum conductor cross-section in main circuits 2/0 AWG with 175 A current carrying capacity.

Note

After the cable sizing, you still have to check from the manufacturer data whether the terminals of all components are approved for this 2/0 AWG cross-section.

The technical data of the contactor, for example, documents that the terminal blocks were approved from 4 AWG to 250 kcmil. The cross-section 2/0 AWG is thus included.

Type of connectable conductor cross-sections	
• at AWG conductors for main contacts	4 ... 250 kcmil

Step 6 - Determination of the high SCCRs of the feeder circuit on the basis of high SCCR checked device combinations

For detailed information on this chapter, see also Chapter Short-circuit current considerations on the basis of high SCCR checked device combinations (Page 156).

Already during the component selection via the certificate it is recommended to inform yourself about the maximum possible attainable high SCCR from the corresponding table. With a short-circuit protection device it is the own short-circuit breaking capacity tested according to the corresponding UL product standard. UL circuit breakers 3VA5 as well as the 3VA6 series are available with different breaking capacities.

Table 6- 7 Short-circuit breaking capacity Excerpt from the catalog LV18 circuit breaker 3VA5..by Siemens

Breaking capacity "Inverse-time circuit breaker" 3VA for 480 V						
-	Standard "S"	Medium "M"	High "M"	Very high "C"	Extremely high "L"	Extremely high "E"
3VA51	25 kA	35 kA	65 kA	-	-	-
3VA52..54	-	35 kA	65 kA	100 kA	-	-
-	-	-	-	-	-	-
3VA6x	-	35 kA	65 kA	100 kA	150 kA	200 kA

For a component without short-circuit protection function (overload relay, soft starter, motor starter, etc.) this High SCC of a checked device combination depends on the protection device individually checked together. Additional factors which influence this high SCCR are voltage and line system configuration. The attained high SCCR is displayed and documented clearly in the tables within certificates. Therefore the overload relay 3RU2146-4M selected for the 3rd step of this example results in a high SCCR of 100 A, at 480 V if it is protected 3VA52 with a max. rated current of 250 A.

Überlastrelais 3RU2146	[A]		max. CB 3VA52	High SCCR	Voltage
	von	bis			
-4D	18 ... 25		100 A	100 kA	480 V
-4E	22 ... 32		125 A	100 kA	480 V
-4F	28 ... 40		150 A	100 kA	480 V
-4H	36 ... 50		200 A	100 kA	480 V
-4J	45 ... 63		250 A	100 kA	480 V
-4K	57 ... 75		250 A	100 kA	480 V
-4L	70 ... 90		250 A	100 kA	480 V
-4M	80... 100		250 A	100 kA	480 V

Figure 6-12 Excerpt High SCCR Combination test from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the overload relays 3RU2146...by Siemens

For all Siemens contactors 3RT105 of the frame size S6 the result is a high SCCR value of 65 kA if it is protected with a 3VA52 with a high breaking capacity "M" or higher for 480 V.

6.3 Branch Circuit

High SCCR Schütz 3RT S6, mit 3VA52				
	Max. CB 3VA52		High-SCCR	Voltage
	Mittel "M"	Hoch "M"		
3RT105	250 A	-	18 kA	600 V
	-	250 A	25 kA	600 V
	250 A	-	35 kA	480 V
	-	250 A	65 kA	480 V

Figure 6-13 Excerpt High SCCR Combination test from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT105... by Siemens

The two high SCCR combination tests, on the one hand 3VA52.. together with the contactor 3RT1054 = 65 kA and on the other hand 3VA52.. together with the overload relay 3RU2146-4M = 100 kA, result for all components in the entire motor feeder in an combined SCCR of 65 A. See also Chapter "Feeder Circuit (Page 100)" on this.

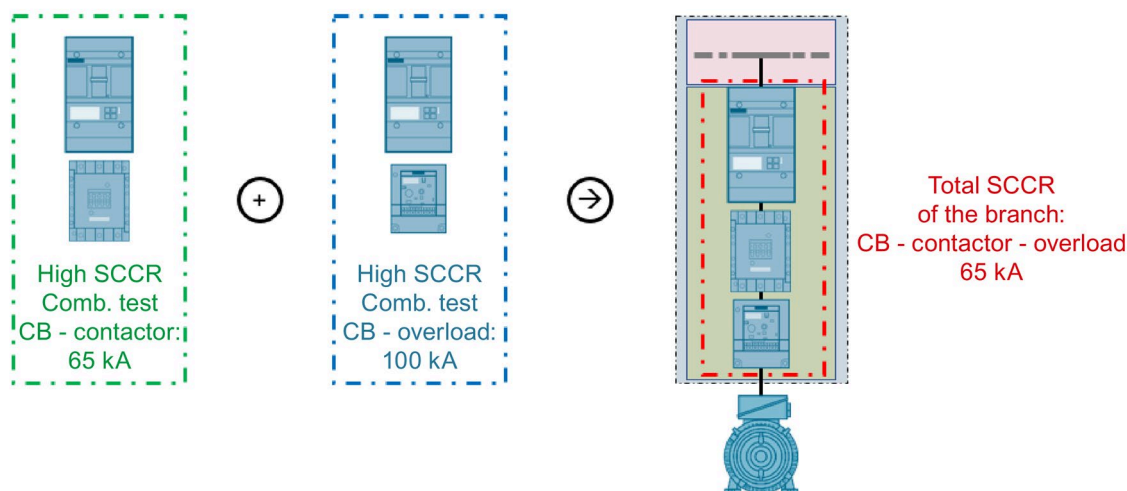


Figure 6-14 Combined SCCR of all components in the feeder

Examples of sizing rules motor feeder with soft starter RW52/55

For motor outputs 10 to 1000 HP, it is advantageous to configure a feeder via soft starter. It is advisable to use the corresponding engineering tool "SIRIUS-ST5" to select the suitable soft starter with regard to mechanical startup behavior and desired special functions. There you can consider the requirements of the US market under the function button "UL".

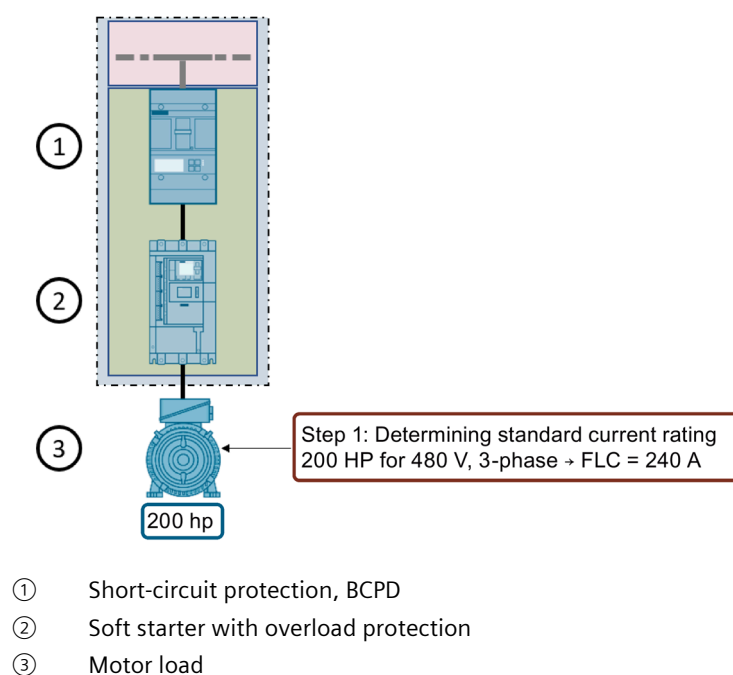
With the certificate of the 3RW52 and 3RW55 the configuration of a 200 hp motor feeder is documented analog to the previous standard motor feeder type: "C".



Power rating: 200 HP
 Voltage: 460 V
 FLA nameplate current rating: 227 A
 Service factor: 1.15

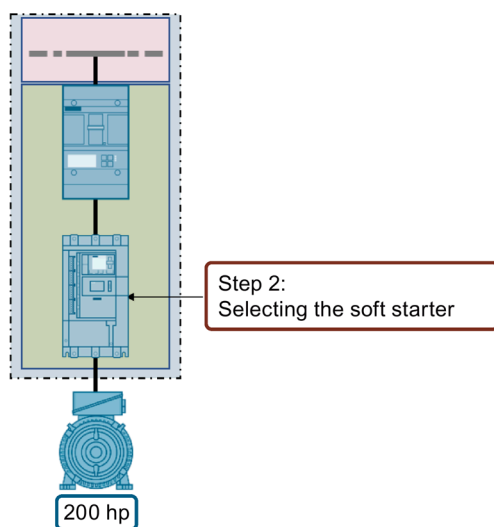
Figure 6-15 200 HP Siemens motor: 1LE23214DC512AA3

Step 1 – Determining the motor current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100)



Step 2.1 – Selection of the soft starter 3RW52

A soft starter is to be used for motor control. The HP rating is specified in the Certificate of Compliance.



Horsepower-tabelle für Sanftstarter 3RW52 und 3RV55					
	200-208 V	220-240 V	380-415 V	440-480 V	550-600 V
	[hp]	[hp]	[hp]	[hp]	[hp]
3RW52/55 43	60	75	125	150	200
3RW52/55 44	75	100	150	200	250
3RW52/55 45	100	125	150	250	300
3RW52/55 46	125	150	200	300	350
3RW52/55 47	150	150	250	350	450
3RW52/55 48	200	200	350	450	600

Figure 6-16 Excerpt of the horse power table from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the soft starter 3RW 52 / 55 by Siemens. Selection of the 3RW5244 or 3RW5544 for 200 HP for 480 V

Step 2.2 – Selection of the overload protective device

From the certificate in the section: The "General" section specified that the soft starter contains a checked overload protection. Type plate current is set as the triggering current in the corresponding parameter of the soft starter.

Extract from soft starter certificate

"General:

These devices are open type three phase solid-state motor controllers for use in industrial applications with setting classes of 5, 10, 15, 20, 30, and selectable.. These devices allow smooth, step less starting with the option of soft stopping. Due to different bus modules e.g. ProfiBus, ProfiNet or Ethernet IP the soft starter can be implemented in all modern industrial bus structures. The soft starter supports also energy saving and energy management. These devices are provided with an integrated solid-state overload relay. All types can be operated conveniently over the Human Machine Interface"

Therefore, not only the required function "Motor control" is fulfilled with the selection of the soft starter but simultaneously also the motorized overload protection. An additional overload relay as in motor feeder Type "C" is thus not necessary.

Step 3 – Determination of the possible protection of the soft starter for the determination of the max. High SCCR Combination test.

Because the selection of the suitable soft starter current was made in step 2 by means of the UL Certificate of Compliance, it is recommended to also look up the requirements for the High SCCR Combination test in the same place. The standard SCCR ratings with lower SCCR values therefore do not have to be used anymore. "High Available Fault Short Circuit Ratings for Circuit Breaker" for all 3RW52 / 55 have been summarized in the UL Certificate of Compliance in the following table:

High SCCR Sanftstarter 3RW52/55 mit 3VA53/54					
	[kA]	3VA51	3VA52	3VA53	3VA54
3RW52/55 43	65 kA	-	-	400 A	600 A
3RW52/55 44	65 kA	-	-	400 A	600 A
3RW52/55 45	65 kA	-	-	400 A	600 A

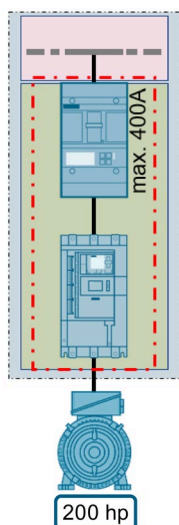
Figure 6-17 High SCCR Combination test from UL Certificate of Compliance of the soft starter 3RW 52 / 55 by Siemens

6.3 Branch Circuit

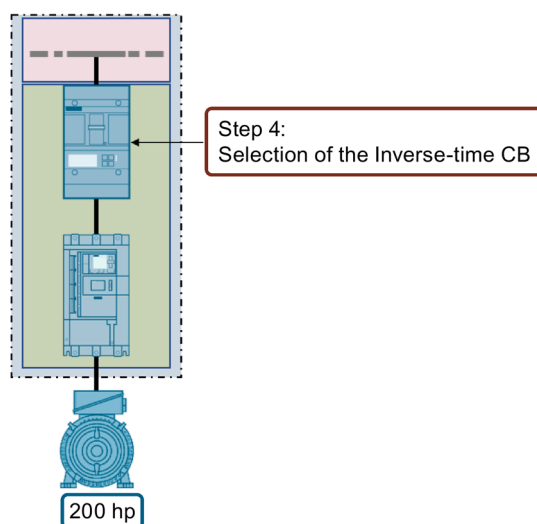
The following can be said for the next step 4 of the specification of the short-circuit protection device:

Result: Selection of the soft starter considering the high SCCR with 3VA53 max. 400 A:

→ 65 kA for 480 V



Total SCCR
of the branch:
3VA - Soft starters
65 kA

Step 4 – Selection of the short-circuit protective device

As explained at the motor feeder Type "C" on Page 123, we can select the soft starter with an Inverse-time-Circuit breaker with a rated current of between 125 % and 250 % of the FLC (motor standard current).

This results in the following 3VA as protection according to the specification of the UL508A:

Smallest Circuit breaker → $1.25 * 240 \text{ A} = 300 \text{ A}$

Largest Circuit breaker → $2.50 * 240 \text{ A} = 600 \text{ A}$

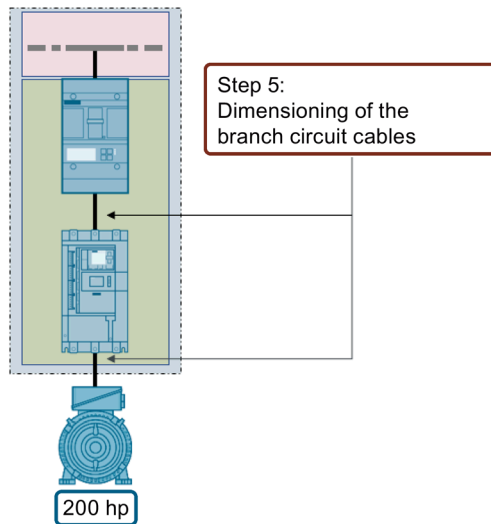
However, to reach a high SCCR in combination with the 3VA53., the rated current of the circuit breaker shall not exceed 400 A. Obviously the 3VA53 shall have at least have a high breaking capacity of 65 kA. The following circuit breakers can thus be used equivalently.

300 A → 3VA5330-6EF31-0AA0

350 A → 3VA5335-6EF31-0AA0

400 A → 3VA5340-6EF31-0AA0

Step 5 – Sizing of the wiring



The procedure for sizing of the wiring is described in Chapter Sizing (Page 72).

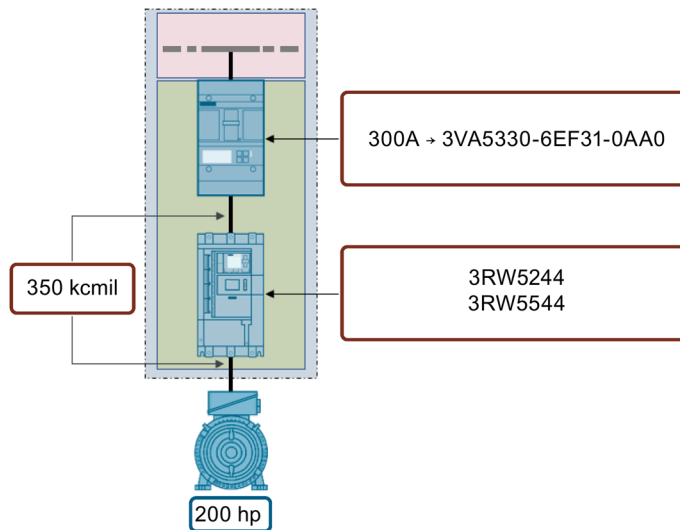
The ampacity of the motor feeder conductors shall be sized at least with 125 % of the motor standard current.

⇒ 125 % * FLC of the (motor standard current rating) (see step 1)

⇒ $1.25 \times 240 \text{ A} = 300 \text{ A}$

In accordance with Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266) the minimum conductor cross-section in main circuits amounts to 350 kcmil with 310 A current carrying capacity.

Result: This results in the following configuration for this feeder application unfused with soft starter for 200 HP and 480 V:



Examples of sizing rules motor feeder with motor protecting switch 3RV20.. approved as standard motor feeder Types E and F

As explained in Table 6-3 Different construction types of "standard motor feeder types Type A to F" (Page 110), the product standard UL508 knows protection devices which can only be used for the protection of individual motor feeders. All circuit breakers of the 3RV20 series are certified as motor feeder Type E, which assume the four required safety functions mentioned:

- Disconnecting means
- Short-circuit protection
- Motor control
- Overload protection

inside a component.

These practical "all in one" circuit breakers are designated in all North American standards as "Manual self-protected combination motor controller". Often also abbreviated with Combination motor controller . A special feature of this protection device is that this switching function of this standard motor feeder Type E can only take place manually via its mechanical handling. Switching of the motor of from superordinate control system is not possible for a Type E motor feeder.

If a remote activation (Remote control) is desired in the application, this feeder Type E is used together with a contactor. This combination is then designated as a "Self-protected combination motor controller" feeder type.

The following advantages:

- Low number of components in motor feeder
- The compact design
- The various integration possibilities within the SIRIUS kit system
- Can be used for all individual horse powers up to max. 75 HP in networks 480 Y / 277 V and 600 Y / 357 V
- 65 kA to 100 kA high SCCR in combination with the associated contactor

These "Combination motor controller" Type E are preferably used for the majority of all individual motor feeders. The selection and dimensioning of a Type E or Type F motor feeder is therefore also carried out quickly and easily in a few steps.

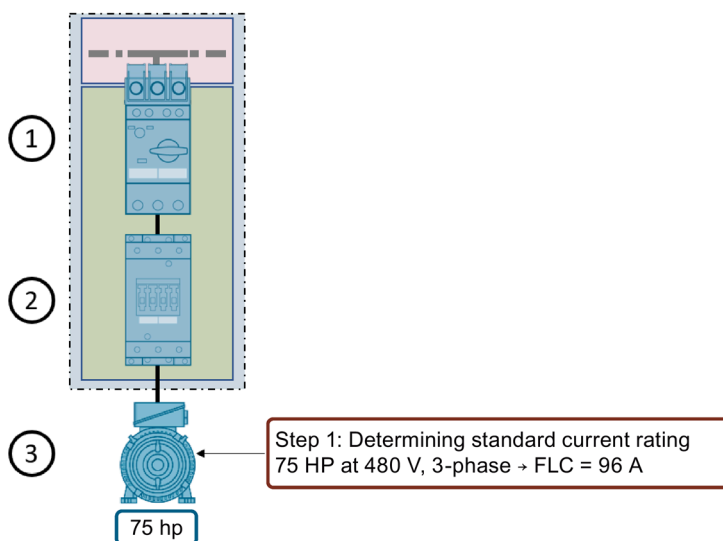
6.3 Branch Circuit



Power rating: 75 HP
Voltage: 460 V
FLA nameplate current rating: 86 A
Service factor: 1.15

Figure 6-18 Siemens motor: 1LE23213DA212AA3

Step 1 – As with the two previous motor feeders Type C and the motor control with soft starter, the motor standard current is first determined in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100).



Step 2 – Selection of the motor controller

A contactor is to be used for motor control. Rated values are to be taken from the Certificate of Compliance

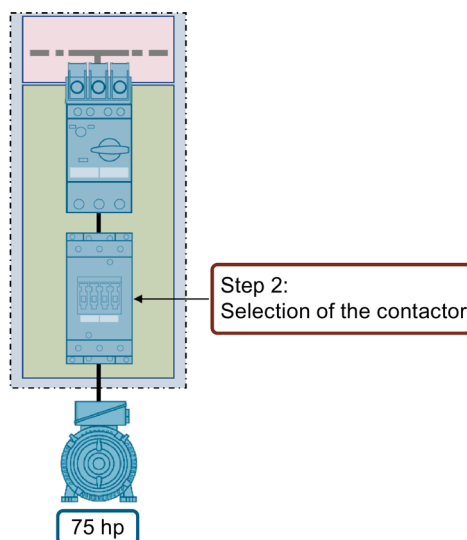


Figure 6-19 Selection of the motor controller

As with the other two motor feeders, it is advantageous to first start with the selection of the switchgear. From the corresponding horse power table in the Certificate of Compliance you very easily select the 3RT2046 to switch 3-phase 75 HP motors. Contactors with a higher HP rating can also be used.

Horsepower-tabelle für Schütz 3RT2046		
Voltage	1-ph	3-ph
115 V	10 hp	-
200/208 V	10 hp	30 hp
230/240 V	20 hp	30 hp
460/480 V	-	75 hp
575/600 V	-	75 hp

Figure 6-20 Horse power tables from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT204.. frame size S3 from Siemens

Step 3 – Determination of the maximum motor starter protectors (Combination Motor Controller) for the determination of the max. High SCCR Combination test.

By selecting the correct contactor you can now effectively find the requirements of the "Combination motor controller", Type E in the present CoC of the contactor in the section: "High Capacity Short Circuit Ratings" which increases the Standard SCCR of the contactor from 10 kA to 65 kA.

High-SCCR Schütz 3RT204.. mit CMC 3RV204..			
Schütz:	Max. 3RV204	SCCR	Voltage
3RT204	100A	65 kA	480 V
3RT204	75 A	30 kA	600 V

Figure 6-21 Extract from the UL Certificate of Compliance of the contactors 3RT204.. frame size S3 from Siemens

From the header you can also see that the high SCCR values of this table only apply in combination with the aspired combination motor controller 3RV20. The combination with the contactor is also correctly designated as standard feeder Type F.

The 3RT204 specification is a placeholder for all contactors of the frame size S3 in this certificate. Therefore the SCCR value of 65 kA / 480 V applies for all contactors, when they are protected with a 3RV20, S3 with a maximum rated current of 100 A. With this background information the most suitable 3RV204.. can be determined in step 4, which also realizes the high SCCR of the contactor.

Step 4 – Selection of the short-circuit protective device: Combination Motor Controller Type „E”

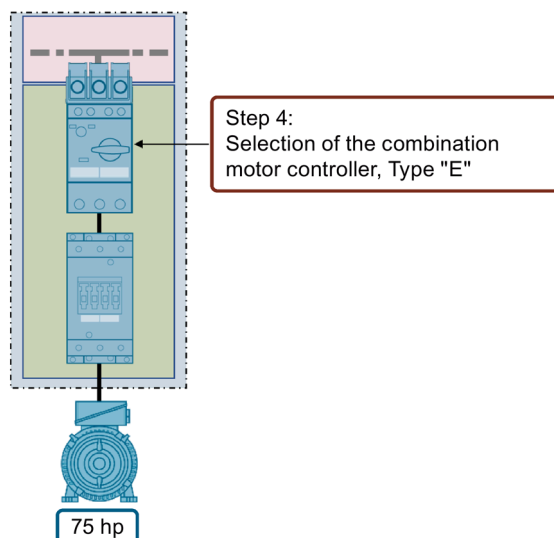


Figure 6-22 Selection of the protection device

Apart from the short-circuit protection function the Combination Motor Controller also assumes the protection of the motor overload case. To this purpose the type plate current of the motor has to be set like an overload relay dependent on the SF. Therefore the suitable 3RV204.. is to be primarily selected via the setting range depending on the type plate current of the motor. Through the setting the type plate current, the specification of UL508 is also simultaneously fulfilled for the largest applicable combination motor controller, with max 100 % of the motor controller current from Table 6-5, Page 107.

If you configured the motor feeder without a contactor as Type "E", the horse power ratings of the relevant 3RV20.. would have to be considered with the performance of the motor. In this example of standard feeder Type "F" the required HP switching power was define in step 2 by selecting the contactor. Therefore the selection of 3RV204.., analog to the selection of the overload protection device, is restricted to the standard feeder Type "C" in accordance with the following rule:

Service factor of the motor = 1.15 $\Rightarrow$ Setting value = type shield current, = FLA = 86 A (see Single Installation (Page 112)).

Horsepower-tabelle für Comb. Motor. Contr. mit 75-93A (-4Y)		
Voltage	Horsepower 1-ph	Horsepower 3-ph
115-120 V	-	15
200 V	15	30
208 V	20	30
230-240 V	20	40
460/480 V	-	75
575/600 V	-	100

Figure 6-23 Certificate of Compliance: Setting range and horse power rating of the 3RV2041 - 4Y..

With the 3RV2041-4Y a Combination Motor Controller was found in the certificate where you not only can set the type plate current but which simultaneously also fulfills the horse power rating of 75 HP of the motor output. This 3RV2041 is thus also suitable to switch the motor without contactor via the manual lever.

At the same time with a rated current $I_n = 93 \text{ A}$ it fulfills the requirement of the High SCCR Combination test for the contactor from step 3: $I_n \leq 100 \text{ A}$.

Test: SCCR short-time withstand current

After specifying the combination motor controller with the suitable setting range, its breaking capacity is checked in the certificate.

Ausschaltvermögen 3RV2041-4Y, -4M, -4R	
Voltage	SCCR, RMS Symmetrical Amperes
460/480 V	65 kA
240 V V	65 kA

Figure 6-24 Certificate of Compliance: Short-circuit breaking capacity of the 3RV2041 - 4Y

With this table it becomes clear immediately that the selected 3RV2041 - 4Y.. is capable of disconnecting a max. of 65 kA short-circuit current.

Note

This interrupt rating only applies for a connected line system configuration 480 Y / 277 V. Therefore it shall be ensured beforehand that the industrial control panel is only connected to a grounded star with a maximum phase voltage of 480 V. With a DELTA line system configuration or an ungrounded network, the phase voltage shall not exceed 240 V.

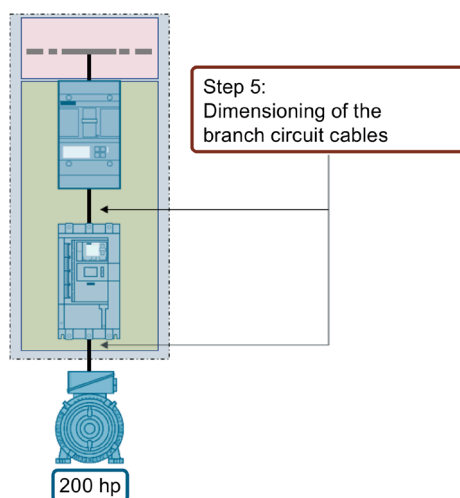
Step 5 – Sizing of the wiring

Figure 6-25 Sizing the cable

The procedure for sizing of the wiring is described in detail in Sizing (Page 72).

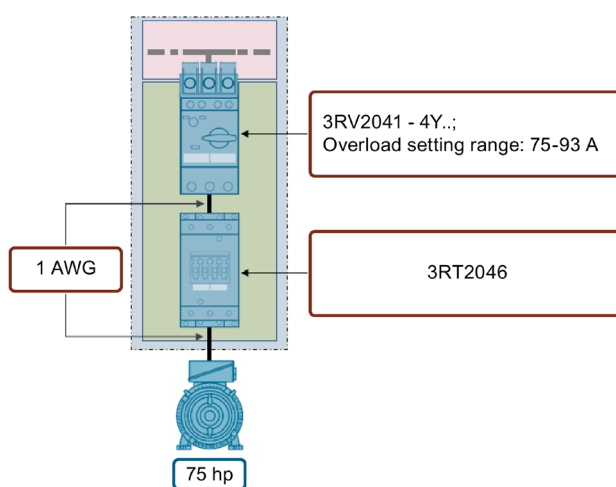
As already explained at the other motor feeder examples, the ampacity of motor feeder cables shall be dimensioned at least with 125 % of the motor standard current rating.

⇒ 125 % * FLC (motor standard current rating) (see step 1)

⇒ $1.25 \times 96 \text{ A} = 120 \text{ A}$

In accordance with Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266) the minimum conductor cross-section in main circuits amounts to 1 AWG with 130 A max. current carrying capacity.

Result: The result of this feeder application with standard feeder Type "F" for 75 HP and 480Y / 277V and 65 kA high SCCR, is the following configuration:



Contactor assemblies for wye-delta start

Wye-delta starting of motors is a very popular way of reducing the locked-rotor current. UL 508A, Chapter 33.5, describes 2 arrangements, with and without current interrupts for switching from wye to delta: "open-circuit" and "closed-circuit transition".

- 1M - First Main Contactor - line contactor
- 2M - Second Main Contactor - delta contactor
- S - Shorting Contactor - star contactor
- 1S and 2S Shorting Contactor 1 and 2 only for Closed-circuit Transition.

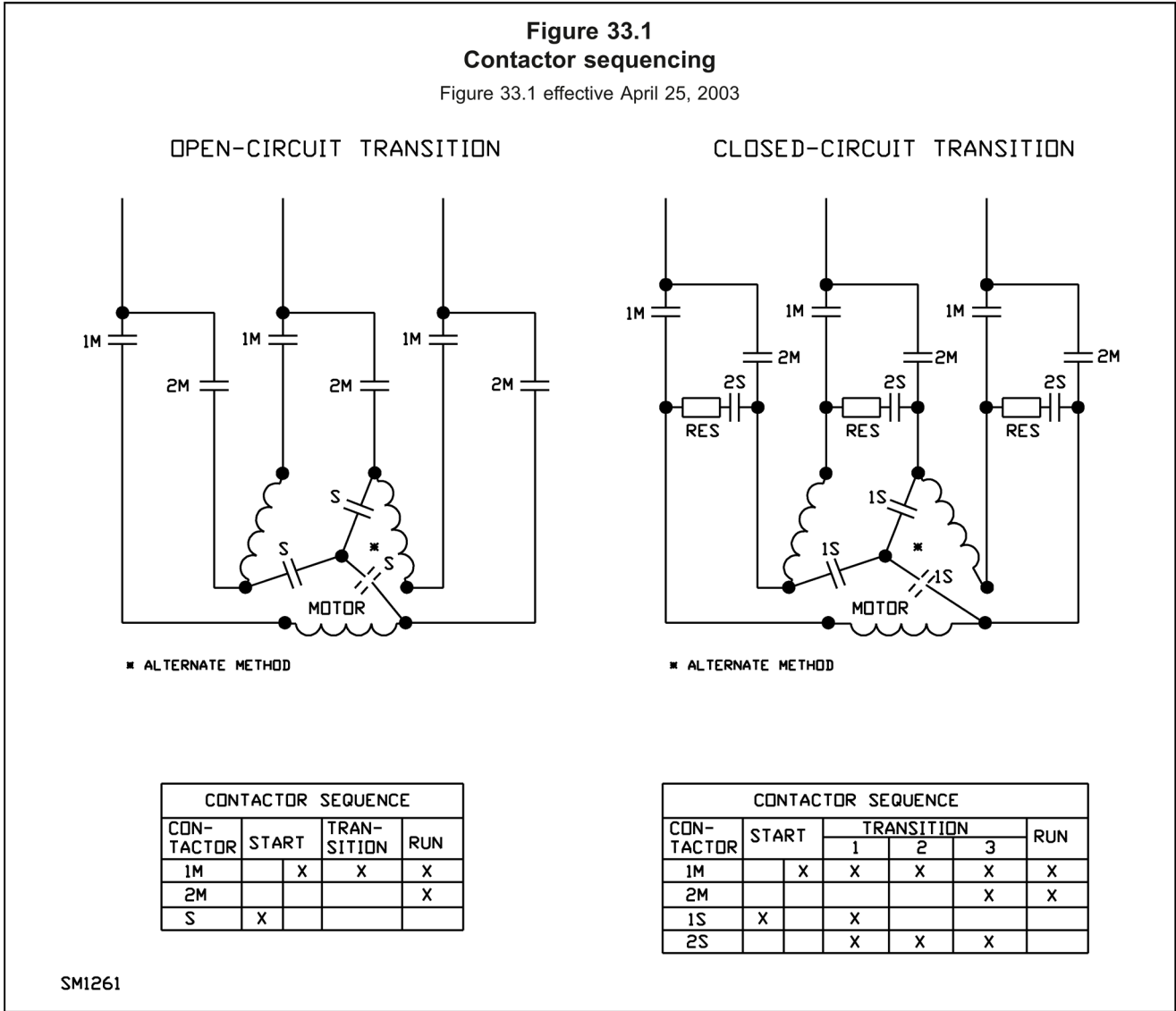


Figure 6-26 Wye-delta circuits in accordance with UL 508A (source: UL 508A, Figure 33.1)

With closed-circuit transition, the motor remains connected to the power system via an additional contactor-resistor assembly (not designed for full-load amps) during the switch from wye to delta.

The most common application is the "open-circuit transition". "Closed-circuit transition", which is used when current peaks, which may arise with large motors when switching from wye to delta, are not permitted.

It is more economically effective today to use a soft starter instead of this assembly. Siemens too has many different soft starters in its portfolio.

Only open-circuit transition is described here.

Contactor sizing

The locked rotor blocking current (Locked Rotor Amps LRA) and the ampere rating FLC of the contactor shall be sized at least according to the table below:

Table 6- 8 Contactor sizing for wye-delta controller

Contactor designation	Required contactor ampere rating	
	"make" current, LRA	"break" current, FLC
1M	0.3 multiplied by motor LRA	0.577 multiplied by motor FLC
2M	0.577 multiplied by motor LRA	0.577 multiplied by motor FLC
S (1S)	No current	0.33 multiplied by motor LRA
2S	^a	^a
^a Rating of the contactor shall be determined on the basis of the resistance combination of the Closed-circuit Transition .		

Source: UL 508A, Table 33.2

The standard current FLC of the contactor shall be selected matching for the motor output according to Feeder circuit (Page 100) full-load motor-running currents in amperes corresponding to various AC horsepower ratings. The contactor shall be approved for an armature blocking current corresponding to 6 times the full-load amps or the armature blocking current specified on the motor.

If contactors with standard sizes are used and the armature blocking current is not greater than 6 x the full-load amps the contactor size and resulting wye-delta rating can be taken from the table below.

6.3 Branch Circuit

Table 6- 9 Horsepower ratings of wye-delta controllers using standard size contactors

Size of controller	Size of contactor ^a		3-phase horsepower			
	M1 and M2	S	60 Hz	60 Hz	50 Hz	60 Hz
			200 volts	230 volts	380 volts	460 or 575 volts
1YD	1	1	10	10	15	15
2YD	2	2	20	25	40	40
3YD	3	3	40	50	75	75
4YD	4	4	60	75	150	150
5YD	5	5	150	150	250	300
6YD	6	6	300	350	500	700
7YD	7	6	500	500	800	1000
8YD	8	7	750	800	1000	1500
9YD	9	8	1500	1500	2000	3000

NOTE – For motors having locked-rotor currents greater than 6 times the full-load current, use Table 33.2

^a See Table 33.4 for horsepower ratings corresponding to standard size contactors.

Source: UL 508A, Table 33.3

The table below shows the minimum horsepower ratings of standard size contactors:

Table 6- 10 Horsepower ratings of standard size full-voltage magnetic motor controllers

Size of controller	3-phase horsepower			
	60 Hz	60 Hz	50 Hz	60 Hz
	200 volts	230 volts	380 volts	460 or 575 volts
1	7-1/2	7-1/2	10	10
2	10	15	25	25
3	25	30	50	50
4	40	50	75	100
5	75	100	150	200
6	150	200	300	400
7	–	300	–	600
8	–	450	–	900
9	–	800	–	1600

NOTE – For motors having locked-rotor currents greater than 6 times the full-load current, use Table 33.2.

Source: UL 508A, Table 33.4

Overload protection for star-delta circuit

In accordance with UL 508A, Chapter 34.3.6, an overload relay shall be located on the load side of line contactor 1M, and the triggering current shall be sized with 0.577 multiplied by the Full-Load Amps. Then the overload protection is correctly set and ensured during the ramp-up in star circuit and after the ramp-up in delta circuit.

The starting time of the motor shall be coordinated with an overload relay Class 20 (20 s).

Example

Sizing of a wye-delta contactor assembly for the same motor as in Chapter Single Installation (Page 112):



Power rating: 7.5 HP
Voltage: 460 V
Full-Load Amps FLA: 8.8 A
Service factor: 1.15

Figure 6-27 Siemens motor

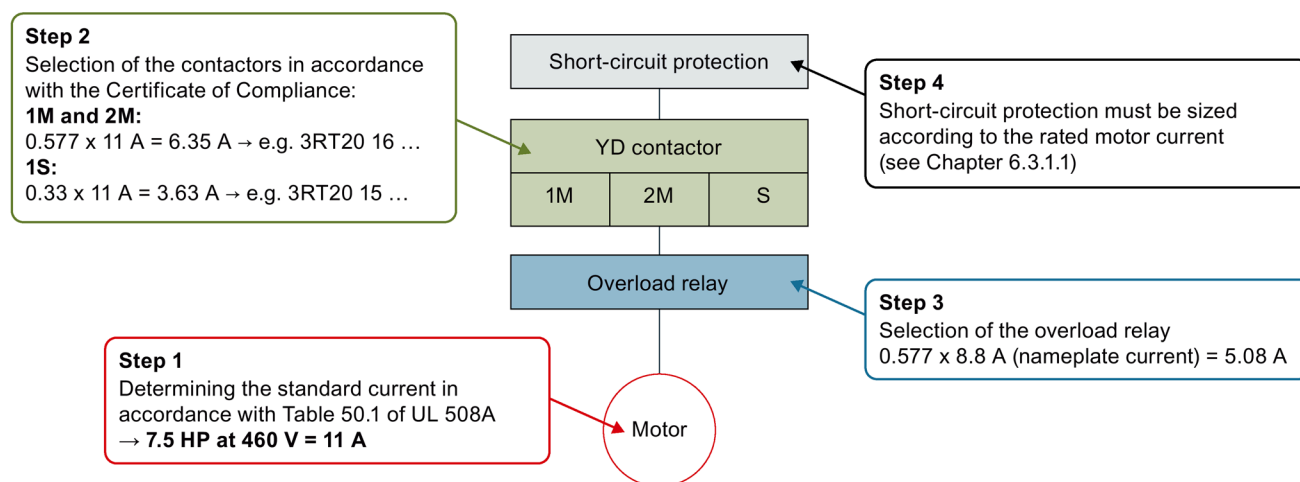


Figure 6-28 Sizing of a contactor assembly for wye-delta start

Note

The wye contactor is not relevant for the short-circuit current rating according to UL 508A, SB 4.2. This means that, in accordance with the Certificate of Compliance, the short-circuit protection device shall only be suitable for the line and delta contactor.

Tip: Fully certified STAR-DELTA can be obtained in the SIRIUS modular system. These are pre-assembled and can be used norm-compliant with the motor performance.

6.3.1.2 Group Installation**Overview**

"Group Installation" means several motors or one or more motors and other loads are protected with a shared short-circuit protective device.

This group fuse shall be a fuse in accordance with UL 248 – 41 ... 12, 15 or an inverse-time circuit breaker in accordance with UL 489. Because the group fuse protection is the last short-circuit protection device before the load it is correspondingly referred to as the BCPD. This means that all components and cables from the group fuse protection are in the feeder.

In relation to the four basic functions of a motor branch circuit, this means the following:

Table 6- 11 Basic functions of the motor branch circuit

Disconnecting means	→ Each motor individually or 1 x shared for the group
Short-circuit	→ 1 x shared for the group, sizing as described below
Motor control	→ Each motor individually, for sizing see Chapter Single Installation (Page 112)
Overload protection	→ Each motor individually, for sizing see Chapter Single Installation (Page 112)

The construction rules are described in detail in the NEC, UL 508A and also in NFPA 79. Since the rules are almost identical, the procedure in accordance with UL 508A is considered in more detail in this guide. Separate reference is made to differences to the NEC and NFPA 79.

UL 508A permits 3 methods in accordance with Chapter 31.4:

Method 1

- Group fuse protection does not exceed 20 A at ≤ 125 V or 15 A at ≤ 1000 V
- No motor FLC > 6 A
- Group fuse protection shall be selected in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications (nameplate or UL-Certificate of Compliance) for the components to be protected (e.g. contactor or overload relay)
- A group that contains non-motor loads shall be protected in each non-motor single branch circuit by an additional fuse in accordance with UL 248 – 4 ... 12, 15 or an "Inverse-time circuit breaker" in accordance with UL 489, and it shall be sized in accordance with Chapter 6.3.2.1 to 6.3.2.4.

Exception: If the group protection does not exceed the rating in accordance with Chapter 6.3.2.1 to 6.3.2.4, no additional short-circuit protection is required.

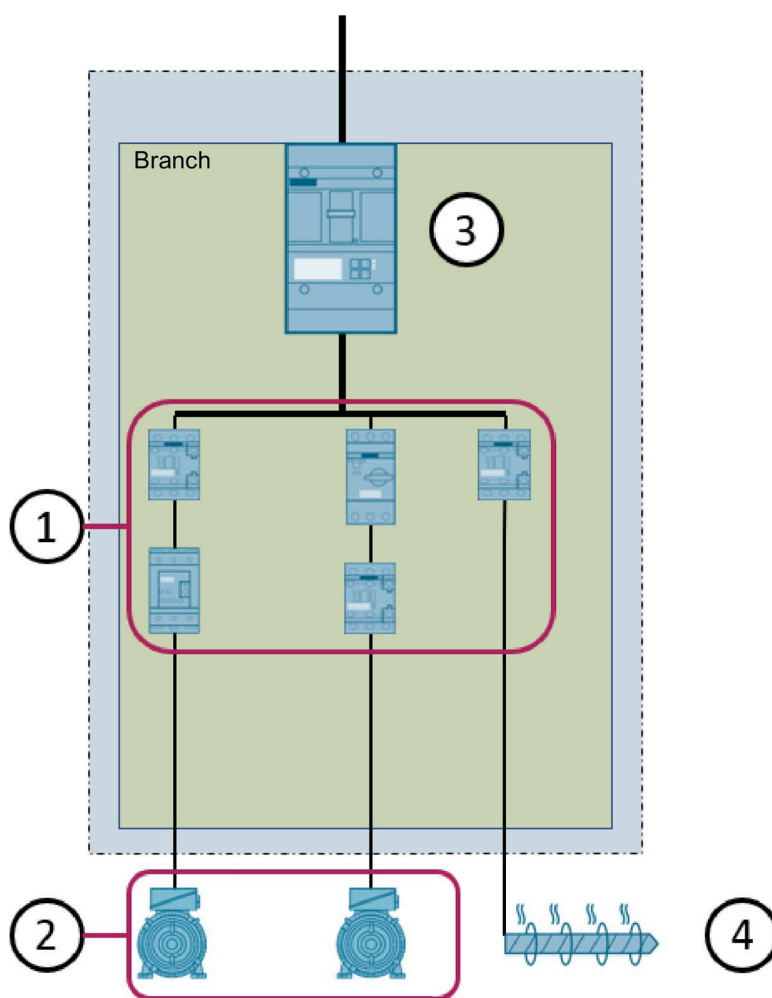


Figure 6-29 Group installation method 1

- ① **Step 1:** Check to see whether contactors and overload relays meet certain requirements for group installation. If they do, continue with method 3
→ **UL-Certificate of Compliance**
- ② **Step 2:** Motor current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100) or Feeder circuit (Page 100), max. 6 A
- ③ **Step 3:** Group fuse protection ≤ 20 A for max. 125 V or
Group fuse protection ≤ 15 A for max. 1000 V
- ④ **Step 4:** Group fuse protection corresponds to the requirements of non-motor loads in Chapter 6.3.2.2
→ **No additional short-circuit protection necessary for non-motor loads in single branch circuit**

In the NEC, Chapter 430.53 and in NFPA 79, Chapter 7.2.10.2, the rule is described identically, with the addition that no motor > 1 HP may be connected.

Method 2

- The group protection corresponds to the rules for Single Installation in Chapter Single Installation (Page 112) for each motor in the group.
- The current carrying capacity of the tap conductors to individual loads shall not be less than $\frac{1}{3}$ of the ampacity of the branch circuit conductor for the load group.

Exception: If a listed Manual motor controller in accordance with UL 508 marked "Suitable for tap conductor protection" is provided in the individual branch circuits (Branch tap conductor), the current carrying capacity for each branch circuit may be sized to $\frac{1}{10}$ of the ampere rating of the group protection.

NOTICE

The approval "Suitable for tap conductor protection" is only valid for 480 Y / 277 V or 600 Y / 347 V and not for 480 V or 600 V.

The conductors on the load side of the "Manual motor controller" shall have an ampacity of not less than 125 % of the motor rated current in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100) or Feeder circuit (Page 100).

NOTICE

Non-motor loads

For non-motor loads, the cross-section may only be reduced to $\frac{1}{3}$.

- Non-motor loads: as described in method 1.

Without "Manual motor controller (MMC) suitable for tap conductor protection":

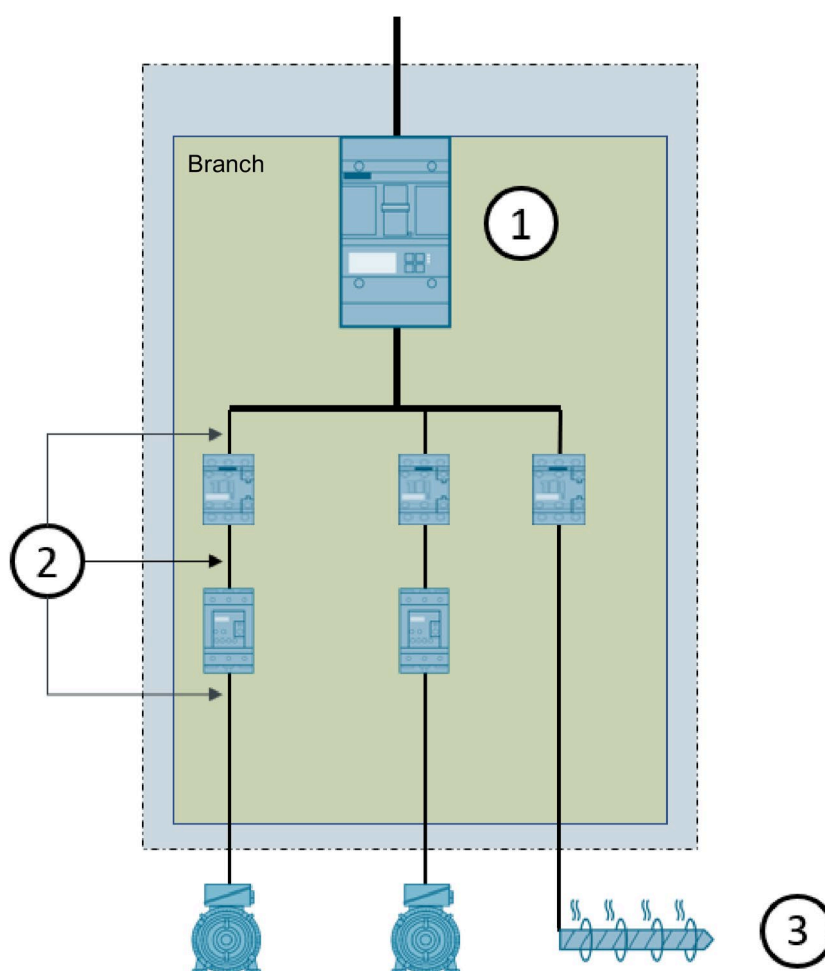


Figure 6-30 Group installation without tap conductor protection method 2

- ① **Step 1:** Group fuse protection designed in accordance with rated current in compliance with Feeder circuit (Page 100), sized according to Table 6-5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes (Page 114)
- ② **Step 2:** Current carrying capacity of the conductor = $\frac{1}{3}$ of the branch circuit conductor to the load group
- ③ **Step 3:** Short-circuit protective device corresponds to the requirements in Chapter 6.3.2.2
→ No additional short-circuit protection necessary in the individual branch circuit

This rule too is similarly described in the NEC, Chapter 430.53, and in NFPA 79, Chapter 7.2.10.5.

However, the $\frac{1}{3}$ rule applies here only if the length of the cross-section-reduced conductor is ≤ 7.5 m (25 ft.) from the point where the ampacity of the branch circuit conductor is reduced up to the overload relay.

→ If the conductor length is > 7.5 m (25 ft.), it is not possible to reduce the cross-section in the individual branch circuits.

With "Manual motor controller suitable for tap conductor protection" (MMC as TPC):

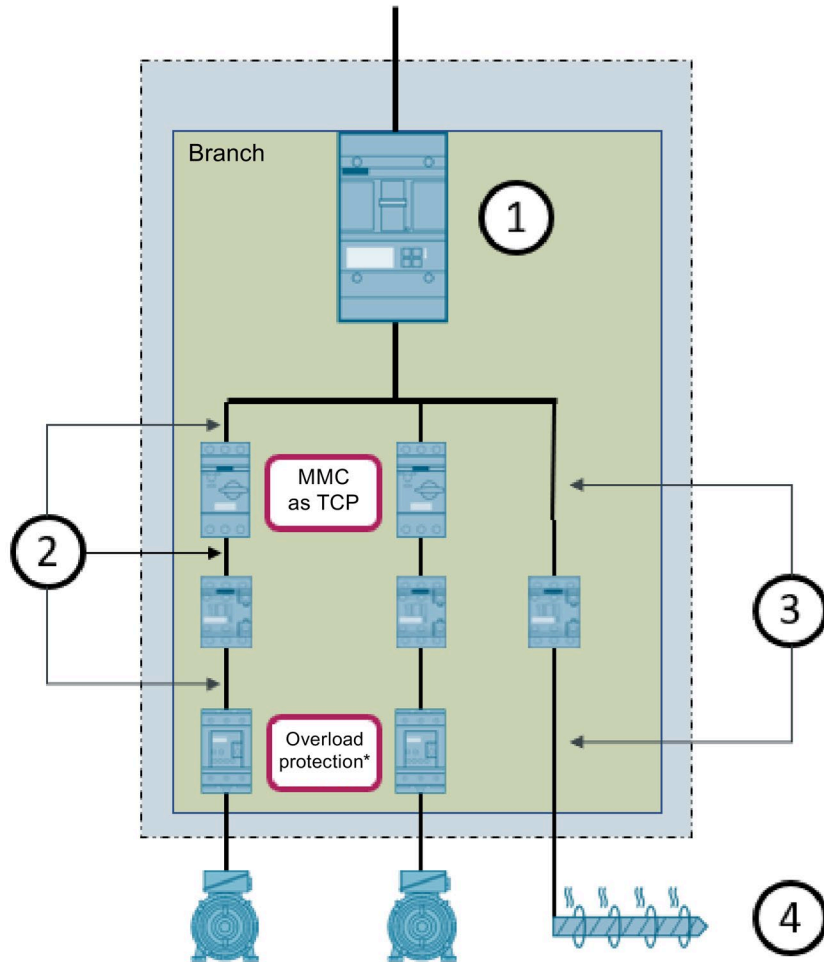


Figure 6-31 Group installation with tap conductor protection method 2

- ① **Step 1:** Group fuse protection designed in accordance with rated current in compliance with Feeder circuit (Page 100), sized acc. to Table 6-5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes (Page 114)
- ② **Step 2:** Current carrying capacity of the conductor = $\frac{1}{10}$ of the rated current of the branch circuit protective device under Point 1
- ③ **Step 3:** Current carrying capacity of the conductor = $\frac{1}{3}$ of the branch circuit conductor

- ④ **Step 4:** Group fuse protection corresponds to the requirements in Chapter Heater loads (Page 148)

→ No additional short-circuit protection necessary in the individual branch circuit

* Overload protection for motor loads can also be integrated into the "Manual motor controller"

Method 3

- All components on the load side of the group protection are approved in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications for group installation. See the nameplate of the components, the UL-Certificate of compliance, or also the temperature rise table in the case of overload relays.
- The conductor is sized as in method 2.
- Non-motor loads as in method 1 and 2.
- The rating of the group rating is not permitted to exceed the lower value of the following conditions:
 - Sizing according to the largest motor in accordance with Feeder circuit (Page 100) Full-load motor-running currents in amperes corresponding to motor outputs and AC voltages or Feeder circuit (Page 100) Full-load motor-running currents in amperes corresponding to motor outputs and DC voltages.

Maximum sizing in accordance with Single Installation (Page 112) + of the standard currents of the other motors + the rated currents of all non-motor loads.
 - The smallest required group protection of all components in the group installation (nameplate, UL-Certificate of compliance).

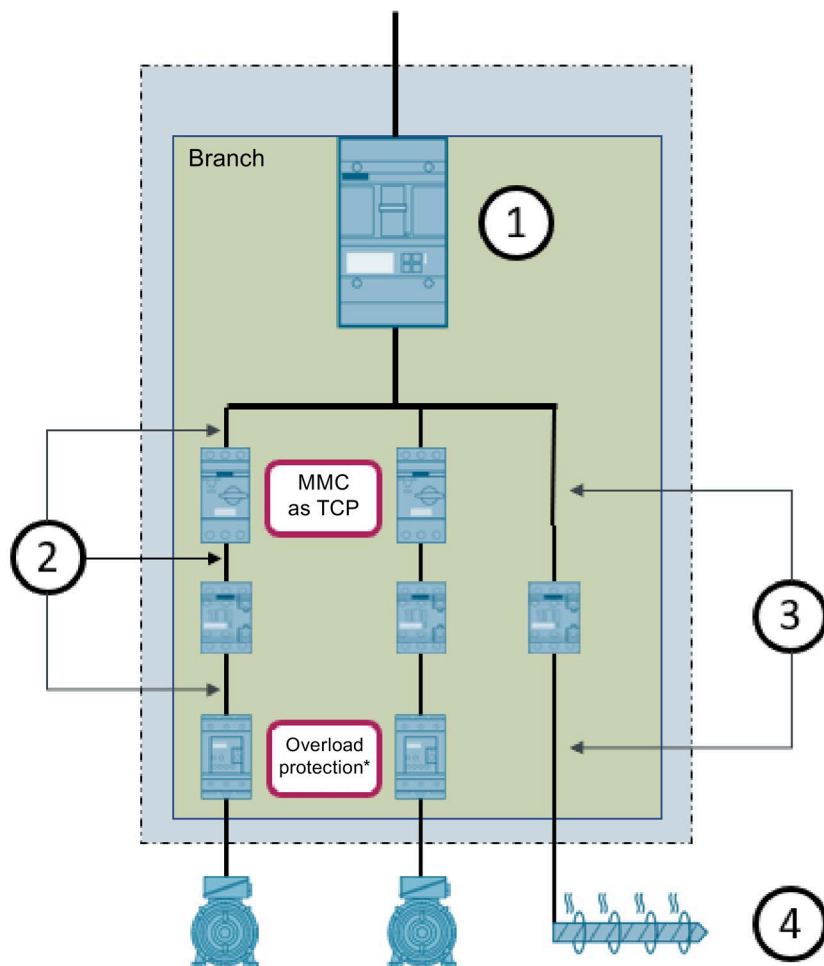


Figure 6-32 Group installation method 3

- ① **Step 1:** Group fuse protection in accordance with the lower of the following:
- Largest motor x value from Table 6-5 Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes (Page 114) + sum of all other loads
 - Lowest of manufacturer short-circuit protection of all components in the group
- ② **Step 2:** Current carrying capacity of the conductor = $\frac{1}{10}$ of the rated current of the branch circuit protective device under Point 1
- ③ **Step 3:** Current carrying capacity of the conductor = $\frac{1}{3}$ of the branch circuit conductor
- ④ **Step 4:** Group fuse protection corresponds to the requirements of non-motor loads in Chapter Heater loads (Page 148)
- **No additional short-circuit protection necessary for non-motor loads in single branch circuit**

* Overload protection for motor loads can also be integrated in the Manual motor controller.

6.3.2 Non-motor loads

The type of protection for non-motor loads depends on the load involved. The UL 508A and the NFPA 79 regulate this in different chapters.

The rules to be complied with for the respective loads are described by this guide in the chapters below.

In general, only fuses to UL 248-4...12, -15 or circuit breakers to UL 489 are permissible for use as short-circuit protection for non-motor loads.

6.3.2.1 Receptacles

The requirements regarding receptacles are described in detail in Chapter Receptacle for accessories and maintenance (Page 293). This chapter is restricted to short-circuit protection for receptacles.

Requirements from UL 508A

A single general-use receptacle, single, double or multiple, shall not have a higher protection rating than the design current of the receptacle.

Exception 1

A short-circuit protective device with a rating of 20 A is able to be used for a 15 A receptacle.

Exception 2

Short-circuit protective devices having a rating that is smaller than the rating of the receptacle(s) are able to be used for a receptacle intended for use with special loads and shall be marked with the rating and the intended load.



Figure 6-33 Marking of a receptacle

Requirements from NFPA 79, Chapter 7

Short-circuit protection shall be provided for circuits that supply receptacles for maintenance purposes.

Short-circuit protection ≤ 15 A shall be provided for all ungrounded conductors.

A fuse to UL 248-4...12, -15, or a circuit breaker to UL 489 shall be used as the short-circuit protective device.

6.3.2.2 Heater loads

Requirements from UL 508A

Firmly installed electrical space heating shall be protected as follows

1. Not larger than 60 A or
2. Not larger than the current carrying capacity of the wiring (see Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266))

Exception

For heaters used for industrial furnaces, pipelines and vessels/boilers, or outdoor de-icing systems or snow melting systems where the heater is not able to be subdivided into circuits ≤ 48 A, the short-circuit protective device shall be sized only in accordance with UL 508A, Chapter 31.6.1 (only according to Point 2).

Resistance heating elements (AC-1) in a water heater or steam boiler having an ASME rating (professional association of mechanical engineers in the USA) shall comply with the following requirements:

- Short-circuit protection maximum 150 A
- The type of load shall be specified in addition to the load rating

Examples: "Water heater with ASME vessel", "Steam boiler with ASME vessel", "Pipeline heater", "Industrial furnace" or comparable designations

Protection of general electrical loads:

General industrial process heaters which are based on electrical resistance or electrode technology, including water, air channel, process gas heater, immersion heaters or other firmly installed electrical process heaters.

Capacitive and inductive heater loads also for melting and welding equipment. Including applications for the industrial, research and scientific sectors.

The rated current of the protection of all these heater loads shall be based on the current carrying capacity of the cables.

Independent of this the current carrying capacities of cables to heater loads in accordance with SPECIFIC USE PART 2 - INDUSTRIAL MACHINERY of the UL508A, shall be oversized with the factor 1.25 as with the motor loads.

Example: An electrical 3-phase resistance heater with a rated current of 12.5 A and 480Y/277 V is operated in an industrial machine and shall be protected with an "Inverse-time circuit breaker".

1. Selection protection device 3RV2711-1KD10,

- a) 12.5 A,
- b) 100 % continuous rating

2. Cable dimensioning:

- Rated current of the heating multiplied by 1.25
- Minimum current carrying capacity: $12.5 \text{ A} \times 1.25 = 15.6 \text{ A}$

According to Table 11-5 Current carrying capacity of insulated cables (Page 266), the minimum conductor cross-section in main circuits amounts to AWG 12 with 15 to 20 A current carrying capacity.

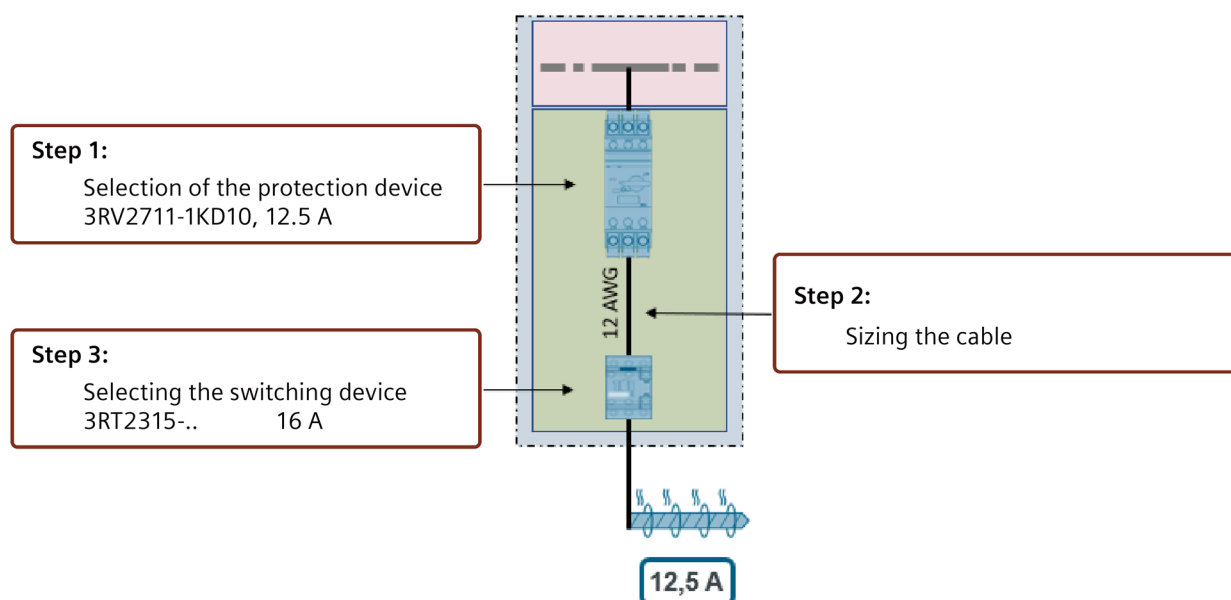
3. Selection contactor frame size S00 3RT201.. according to CoC

In contrast to motor loads, the horse power table cannot be used in this case. However, the CoC also specifies for our contactors

current switching values for different load types in accordance with Table 6- 4 Required controller ratings for various load types: (Page 112)

- AC Resistance – 3RT2315 600 V ac, 16 A
- 3RT2316 600 V ac, 18 A
- 3RT2317 600 V ac, 20 A

Therefore the 12.5 A heater can be switched with the 3RT2315.



Note

Although the protection device: 3RV2711-1KD10 with a rated current of 12.5 A also protects a 14 AWG cable, the heater has to be supplied with a 12 AWG cable for an industrial machine.

If you selected an "inverse-time circuit breaker" without "continuous rating", you have to take into account that it shall only be operated with up to 80 % of its rated current.

Requirements from NFPA 79

Heater loads > 48 A shall be subdivided. The short-circuit protective devices of the subdivided loads shall not exceed 60 A.

Exception

A single sheath-type heating element requiring more than 48 A shall be protected at not more than 125 % of the rated current, where the element is integral with and enclosed within the machine housing.

The short-circuit protective devices of the subdivided loads shall fulfill all the following criteria:

1. Installed within or on the machinery, or provided as a separate assembly
2. They shall be accessible (but not readily accessible)
3. They shall be approved for short-circuit protection

A fuse to UL 248-4...12, -15, or a circuit breaker to UL 489 shall be used as the short-circuit protective device (see also chapter Single Installation (Page 112)).

6.3.2.3 Overcurrent protection for appliance loads

For protecting a non-motor load not described under Chapter 6.3.2.1/2/4/5/6, the short-circuit protection shall be sized as follows in accordance with UL 508A:

1. In accordance with the marking on the device or
2. Max. 20A for devices with less than 13.3A rated current (if 1. not available) or
3. Max. 150 % for devices with greater than 13.3A rated current (if 1. not available)

Exception 1

For appliances with a power supply cord and attachment plug, protection is provided via the receptacle (see Chapter Receptacles (Page 147))

Exception 2

If the short-circuit protective device calculated in accordance with Point 3 does not correspond to a standard size, the next larger size may be used.

NFPA 79 requires the following:

If the branch circuit contains non-motor loads > 16.7 A, the short-circuit protection is not allowed to exceed 150 % of the rated current of the load.

6.3.2.4 Overcurrent protection for lighting loads

Lighting circuits are described in UL 508A

Short-circuit protective devices for standard-duty incandescent lampholders or fluorescent ballasts shall have a rating of ≤ 20 A, and shall not exceed the current carrying capacity of the wiring.

Short-circuit protective devices for lampholders marked heavy duty for use with fluorescent or infrared lamps shall have a rating of ≤ 50 A, and shall not exceed the current carrying capacity of the wiring.

In accordance with NFPA 79, Chapter 7.2.6, lighting circuits shall be protected with ≤ 15 A.

Further requirements for lighting are described in Chapter Control panel lighting and machine lighting (Page 297).

6.3.2.5 Variable-speed drives, servo motors and semiconductor devices

Variable-speed drives shall be approved in accordance with UL61800-5-1 (formerly 508C) and semiconductor switching devices in accordance with UL60947-4-1 (formerly 508).

Requirements according to UL 508A

Short-circuit protection

According to UL 508A, branch circuit protection for variable-speed drives shall be of the type and size specified by the manufacturer of the drive (e.g. Supplementary sheet or in the UL Certificate of Compliance).

Branch circuit protection with Type E combination motor controllers (NKJH)

Frame size	Rated power	Power Module	CMC model no.	Max. rated current of the CMC	Rated power of the CMC at 460 VAC	Short-circuit current rating (SCCR)
PM240-2 Built in units, 3AC 380V ... 480V						
FSA	0.55 kW	6SL3210-1PE11-8...	3RV20 1-1JA..	10 A	5 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
	0.75 kW	6SL3210-1PE12-3...	3RV20 1-1JA..	10 A	5 HP	
	1.1 kW	6SL3210-1PE13-2...	3RV20 1-4AA..	16 A	10 HP	
			3RV 031-4AA..	16 A	10 HP	
	1.5 kW	6SL3210-1PE14-3...	3RV20 1-4AA..	16 A	10 HP	
			3RV2021-4BA..	20 A	10 HP	
			3RV 031-4BA..	20 A	15 HP	
	2.2 kW	6SL3210-1PE16-1...	3RV20 1-4AA..	16 A	10 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV2021-4DA..	25 A	15 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV2021-4NA..	28 A	20 HP	50 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV 031-4DA..	25 A	20 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
	3 kW	6SL3210-1PE18-0...	3RV20 1-4AA..	16 A	10 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV2021-4DA..	25 A	15 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV2021-4NA..	28 A	20 HP	50 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC
			3RV 031-4DA..	25 A	20 HP	65 kA, 480Y / 277V 3AC

Figure 6-34 Extract from a UL Report Supplementary sheet of a Siemens SINAMICS G120 PM 240-2, to be protected with 3RV20 motor starter protector SINAMICS Basic Line Modules

If the manufacturer does not specify a short-circuit protective device and rating, only an Inverse-time circuit breaker to UL 489 or a Branch circuit fuse to UL 248-4...12, -15 shall be used.

In this case, the short-circuit protective device may be sized to no higher than the full-load output current of the variable-speed drive.

Exception 1

Additional short-circuit protection is not required if the Inverse-time circuit breaker, a Branch circuit fuse, or a semiconductor fuse is integrated into the variable-speed drive.

Exception 2

Unless specified in the manufacturer's instructions for a variable-speed drive, additional short-circuit protection is not necessary in the DC intermediate circuit conductors for a Common bus inverter.

Short-circuit protection of semiconductor contactors and soft starters shall be sized as described in the manufacturer's UL Certificate of Compliance.

Overload protection

Shall be specified in the UL report if integrated into the device.

- | |
|--|
| <p>- This equipment is capable of providing internal motor overload protection according to UL508C. The marking shall indicate protection level in percent of full-load current & instructions for adjustment.</p> |
|--|

Figure 6-35 Extract from the UL report of the Siemens Sinamics G120D drive

Requirements from NFPA 79**Overload protection**

- Overload protection shall be provided for every motor
- If the overload protection is integrated in the device, no additional protection is required
- Each motor in a motor group shall have its own overload protection

Protection against overtemperature

Servo drives shall be protected against overheating by means of one of the following measures:

- Integral thermistor protection
- Servo drive controllers with overload and overspeed protection with latching shutdown or cable loss through overheating
- Temperature relays with sensors in the motor
- Motors with cooling circuit

Note

In addition to conductor protection, protection against overheating shall also be used.

Systems for motor cooling (e.g. air or water cooling) shall have protective measures that exclude the possibility of failure of the cooling function.

Each motor in a motor group shall have its own protection against overheating.

Automatic restart is not permissible in the following cases:

- Not tested with the motor
- A hazard for persons can arise

Note

Shutdown in the event of a fault shall not result in an increased hazard. If it could result in an increased hazard, a higher-level alarm shall initiate a controlled shutdown.

6.3 Branch Circuit

6.3.2.6 Power transformers

Transformers in the power circuit shall be approved in accordance with UL 508A, Chapter 35.1 to UL 5085-1/2 or UL 1561.

Primary-side protection only

Chapter 35.2 of UL 508A stipulates only primary-side protection in the following cases:

- A two-wire single voltage on the secondary side
- A three-wire three-phase single voltage on the secondary side with both primary and secondary sides connected in a delta configuration

The protective device shall be a Branch circuit fuse to UL 248-4...12, -15 or an Inverse-time circuit breaker to UL 489, and shall be sized to UL 508A (see table below).

Table 6- 12 Sizing of primary winding only branch circuit protection

Power transformer primary current, amperes	Rating of branch circuit protection, maximum percentage of primary current
9 or more	125 ^a
2 ... 8.99	167
less than 2	300

^a Where the calculated size of the branch circuit protection does not correspond to a standard size fuse or non-adjustable inverse-time circuit breaker, the next larger size is able to be used. See 31.3.8 for standard sizes of branch circuit protection equipment.

Source: UL 508A, Table 35.1

The conductors on the secondary side of the transformer shall be sized in accordance with Table 11-7 Conductor current carrying capacity based on copper conductors with 60 °C (140 °F), 75 °C (167 °F) and 90 °C (194 °F) temperature stability of the insulation in an ambient temperature of 30 °C (86 °F) (Page 269), and in accordance with the primary-side protective device. The transformation ratio shall, of course, be observed here.

Primary-side and secondary-side protection

Primary-side and secondary-side protection is required if the transformer has multiple secondary-side windings / branches

The protective devices on the primary and secondary side shall be a Branch circuit fuse to UL 248-4...12, -15 or an Inverse-time circuit breaker to UL 489. The protective devices shall be sized according to UL 508A (see the table below), or according to UL 248-4...12, -15 if there are more than one Branch circuit fuse, and an Inverse-time circuit breaker shall be sized according to UL 489 if the total of the ampere ratings of the short-circuit protective devices do not exceed the values in the table below.

Table 6- 13 Sizing of primary and secondary branch circuit protection of a power transformer

Primary winding		Secondary winding	
Rated amperes	Branch circuit protection, percent of rated amperes	Rated amperes	Branch circuit protection, percent of rated amperes
9 or more	250	9 or more	125 ^a
2 ... 8.99	250	less than 9	167
less than 2	300	–	–

^a Where the calculated size of the branch circuit protection does not correspond to a standard size fuse or non-adjustable inverse-time circuit breaker, the next larger size is able to be used. See 31.3.8 for standard sizes of branch circuit protection equipment.

Source: UL 508A, Table 35.2

6.4 Short-circuit current rating (SCCR) and calculation

In accordance with NEC, Chapter 409.110 (4), every Industrial control panel shall be labeled with a short-circuit rating (SCCR). The specified SCCR shall meet one of the following requirements:

- Corresponds to a listed and labeled device
- Has been calculated using an approved method

The logic behind this requirement is fire safety and personal safety. Connection of the industrial control panel to a current source in which a short-circuit current can arise that is potentially higher than the combined SCCR of the control panel should be prevented.

An approved method is, for example, the method according to UL 508A, Supplement SB.

The prospective short-circuit current at the infeed point that can arise depends on the supply transformer and shall be specified to the panel builder by the customer. According to NEC 409.22 no industrial control panel shall be connected when this prospective short-circuit current is greater than the SCCR of the industrial control panel itself. In addition, this prospective short-circuit current at the infeed point shall now be documented with a date of its determination and provided to the AHJ before the connection.

All components in the power circuit are included when considering the short-circuit current rating. The component with the smallest SCCR value defines the SCCR value of the overall control panel.

In Section SB4.2.1 and Table SB4.1, UL 508A lists the following SCCR-relevant components as parts of the power circuit:

- Disconnect switches
- Supplementary protectors
- Branch Circuit Protective Devices
- Busbars
- Fuse holders
- Current meters
- Load controllers
- Current shunts
- Motor overload relays
- Industrial control equipment
- Receptacles
- Terminal blocks or distribution blocks
- Electromagnetic (EMC) or radio frequency interference (RFI) or active / passive harmonic filters

There are also components which are not SCCR-relevant (see exceptions 1 to 5):

Exception 1

- Power transformers
- Windings
- Current transformers
- Dry-type capacitors
- Resistors
- One-port surge protection devices (One-port SPD)
- Voltmeters

Exception 2

The wye (S) contactor of a wye-delta motor controller

Exception 3

Closed air-conditioning units which are connected through power plug connection cables.

Exception 4

Wire end ferrules when correctly crimped according to Section 29.3.6

Exception 5

EMC filter on the input and motor side each converter

SCCR for control circuits

In Section SB3.2.1, UL 508A stipulates that the primary short-circuit protective device for the control circuit shall also be included in the calculation of the SCCR value for the power circuit. For this reason, the SCCR value of overcurrent protective devices used on the primary side of a control circuit transformer is included in the calculation of the SCCR of the control panel. Control circuit components downstream of these devices are not included when calculating the SCCR.

The SCCR of individual power circuit components can be determined using four possible methods:

1. On the basis of standard SCCR (see device marking or on data sheets of the components)

Most control and protective devices for the power circuit are marked on the front or on the nameplate with a standard SCCR.

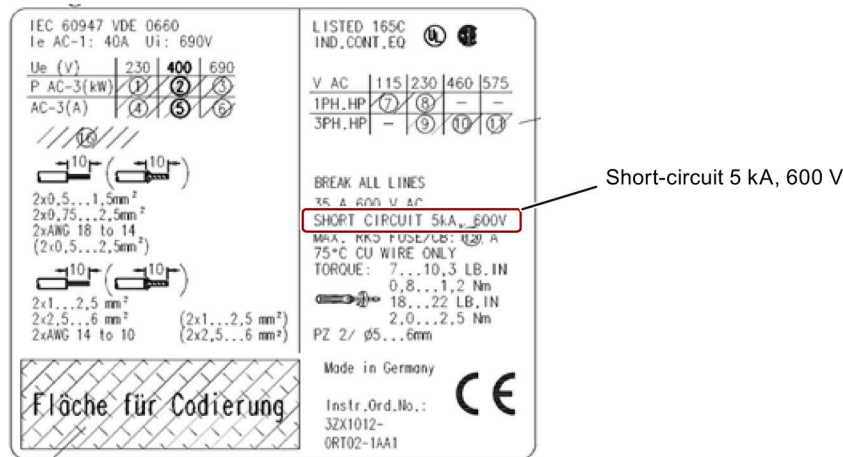


Figure 6-36 Example of 3RT contactor label

SCCR rating for
this design: 5 kA

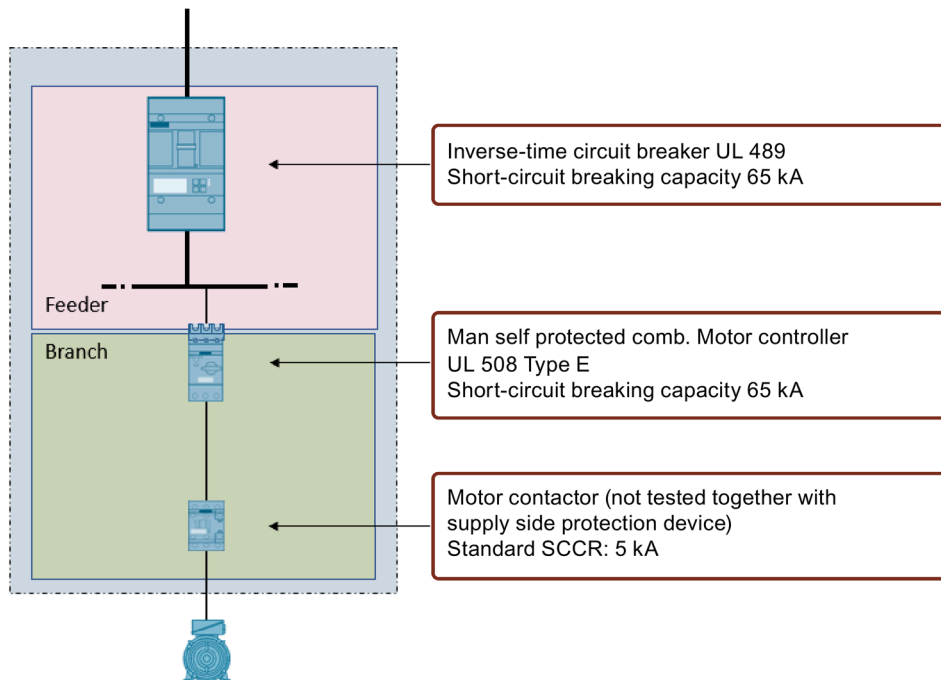


Figure 6-37 Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of the device marking"

2. On the basis of the assumed standard SCCR of components

For unmarked components, the assumed maximum SCCR can be used in accordance with the table below when determining the SCCR:

Table 6- 14 Assumed standard SCCR values for unmarked components

Component		Short-circuit current rating, kA
Bus bars		10
Circuit breakers (including GFCI type)		5
Current meters		a
Cable connection for control and main circuit loads		10
Current shunt		10
Fuse holder		10
Industrial control equipment		
a.	Auxiliary devices (overload relays)	5
b.	Switches (other than mercury tube type)	5
c.	Mercury tube switches	
	Rated over 60 A or 250 V	5
	Rated 250 V or less, 60 A or less and over 2 kVA	3.5
	Rated 250 V or less and 2 kVA or less	1
Motor Controller (motor control), rated in horsepower (kW) ^d , or in Amperes		
a	0 ... 50 hp (0 ... 37.3 kW) 0 ... 600 V	5 ^c
	0 ... 50 A 601 ... 1000 V	
b	51 ... 200 hp (38 ... 149 kW) 0 ... 600 V	10 ^c
	51 ... 200 A 601 ... 1000 V	
c	201 ... 400 hp (150 ... 298 kW) 0 ... 600 V	18 ^c
	201 ... 400 A 601 ... 1000 V	
d	401 ... 600 hp (299 ... 447 kW) 0 ... 600 V	30 ^c
	401 ... 600 A 601 ... 1000 V	
e	601 ... 900 hp (448 ... 671 kW) 0 ... 600 V	42 ^c
	601 ... 900 A 601 ... 1000 V	
f	901 ... 1500 hp (672 ... 1193 kW) 0 ... 600 V	85 ^c
	901 ... 1500 A 601 ... 1000 V	
Meter socket base		10
Miniature or miscellaneous fuse		10 ^b
Receptacle (GFCI type)		2
Receptacle (other than GFCI type)		10
Supplementary protector		0.2
Switch unit		5
Terminal block or power distribution block		10
Plug with multi contacts for main circuits		10
Auxiliary equipment and screw connections for cables		10
Distribution terminals, blocks with ring cable lugs		10

Component	Short-circuit current rating, kA
EMC and RFI filter max. 100 A	5
EMC and RFI filter max. 101 - 400 A	10

- ^a A short-circuit current rating is not required when connected via a current transformer or current shunt. A directly connected current meter shall have a marked short circuit current rating.
- ^b The use of a miniature fuse is limited to 125-V circuits.
- ^c Standard fault current rating for motor controller rated within specified horsepower range.
- ^d Highest rated power of the Motor controller

Source: UL 508A, Table SB4.1

SCCR rating for
this design: 5 kA

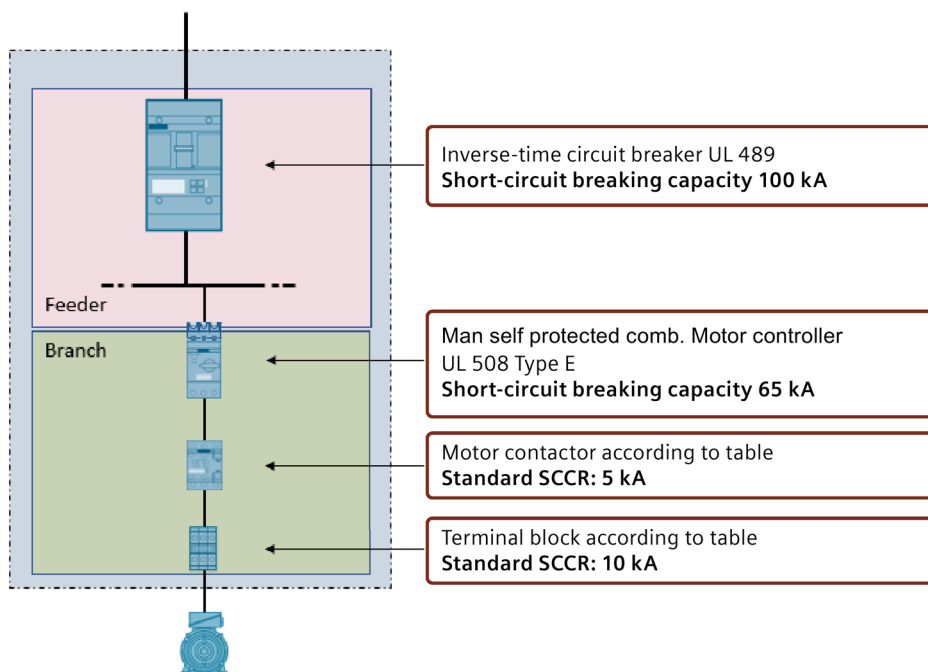


Figure 6-38 Example "Determination of the Combined SCCR of the feeder on the basis of the standard SCCR of the individual components"

3. Based on high SCCR checked device combination in accordance with UL certificate (CoC)

If the SCCR value of a component in the power circuit does not fulfill the desired SCCR value, measures shall be taken to increase it. To increase the SCCR value of a device, an appropriate protective device shall be connected upstream. The suitable protective device is to be taken from the respective UL Certificate of Compliance of the device for which the SCCR value is to be increased.

Example high SCCR of the contactor: A 3RT2015... contactor has a standard value of 5 kA according to the nameplate. The UL Certificate of Compliance specifies the protective devices with which the short-circuit rating can be increased. Thus a value of, for example, 65 kA at 480 V is achieved if the contactor is protected with a 3RV2.1 or 3RV2.2 combination motor controller max. 16 A.

High Capacity Short Circuit Ratings:

Type No.	Fuse Class J	Comb. Mtr. Ctr. 3RV2.1 or 3RV2.2	Circuit Breaker				Short Circuit	Voltage
			Bkr TM 3RV1742	Bkr TM 3RV1721, 3RV1821	Bkr TM 3RV2711, 3RV2811	Bkr I		
3RT2015	25 A					-	100 kA	600 V
			10 A			-	42 kA	480 V
				22 A		-	50 kA	480 V
		16 A			15 A	-	65 kA	480 V
				8 A	3.2 A	-	10 kA	600 V
		12.5 A				-	30 kA	600 V

Figure 6-39 Extract from the Certificate of Compliance of the Siemens 3RT2015... contactor

SCCR rating for this design: 65 kA

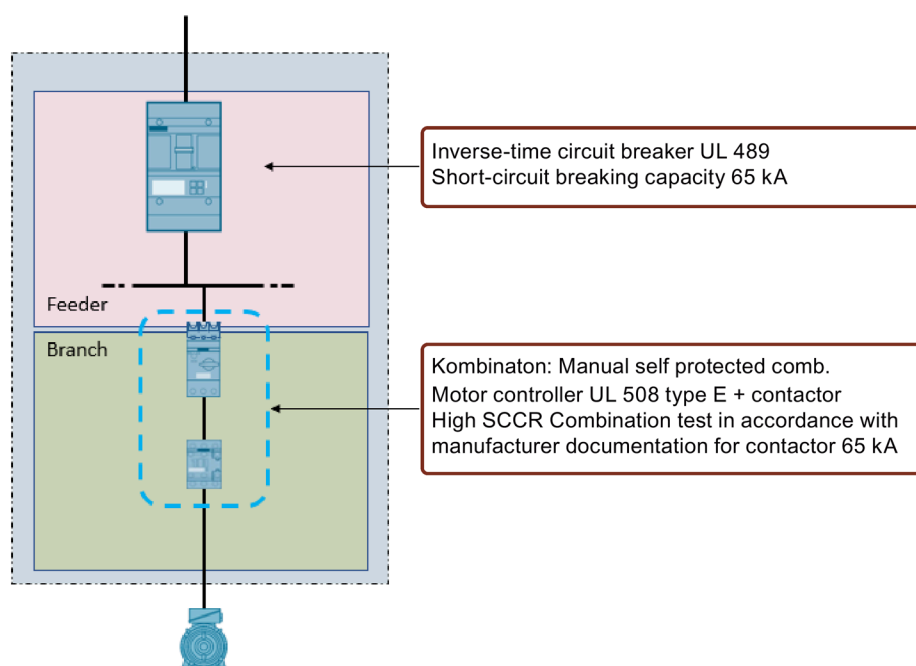


Figure 6-40 Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of tested device combinations"

High SCCR terminal block

Terminal blocks are also SCCR-relevant and shall be considered like switchgears in the combined SCCR determination.

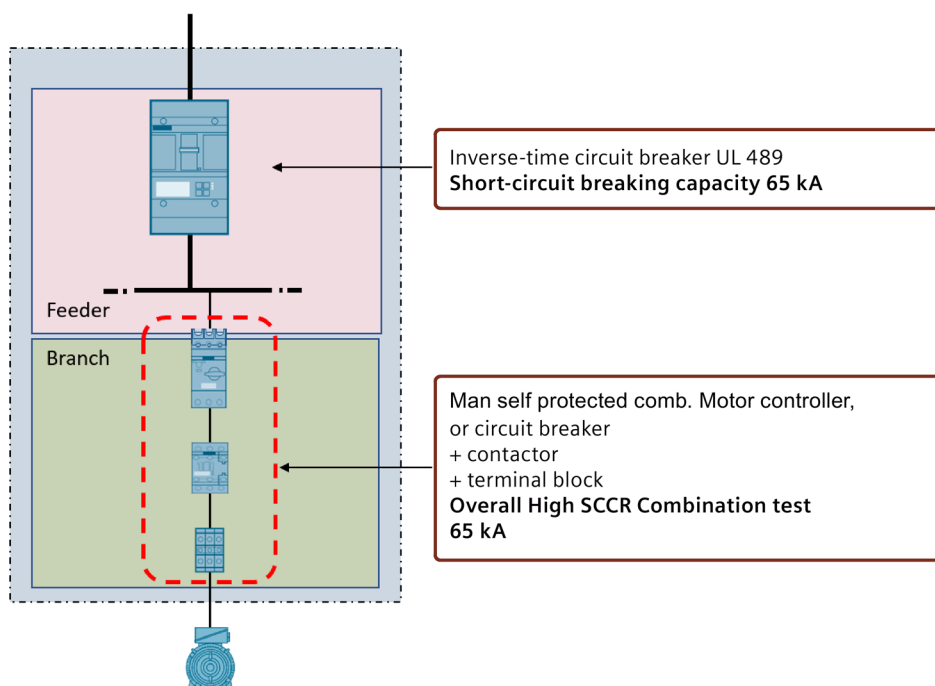
Note

For this reason screw terminal blocks 8WH1.. and terminal blocks in push-in technology 8WH6.. were tested, fused up to 100 kA and fuseless up to 65 kA.

To achieve norm-compliant and safe dimensioning it is advisable to use the planning and engineering software Control Panel Designer.

Example high SCCR contactor + terminal block:

SCCR rating for
this design: 65 kA



6.4.1 Influence of the type of coordination 1 or 2 on the HIGH-SCCR of checked unit combinations

Type of coordination 1

Type of coordination 1 means high SCCR tests of device combinations and their short-circuit values.

1. The protection device disconnects the short-circuit current safely without
2. Further hazards resulting from the switchgear for surrounding components or persons, such as ignitions of fire sources, emerging parts or ionizing gases.

However, whether the switchgear still fulfills its technical function after the high SCCR test, is not required under short-circuit test conditions of type of coordination 1.

In particular functional damage is permissible to the contactor, semiconductor switching devices and overload relay.

The result for the operator is that all components after the short-circuit release have to be checked for their functionality on the load side of the triggered protection device and have to be replaced, if necessary. For this reason the panel builder shall attach the following safety notes from the UL508A on the panel when applying high SCCR combinations.



WARNING

- Risk of Fire or Electric Shock -

The opening of the branch circuit protective device may be an indication that a fault current has been interrupted. All current-carrying parts and other components protected by this device should be examined and replaced if damaged. If burnout of a current element of an overload relay occurs, the complete overload relay must be replaced.

During the design of type of coordination 1 the operator has to expect that by checking the system and exchanging of components the normal system operation cannot be resumed again through simply resetting of the triggered circuit breaker. This consequently results in an additional effort caused by the exchange of affected devices. Example: High SCCR contactors SO 3RT202...:

12 example Type of coordination 1.png In the UL "Certification of Compliance for the SIRIUS contactors the voltage limits of the short-circuit values can be read as known from the high SCCR tables.

In this case this is always the type of coordination "1"

High-SCCR: Mag. Mot. Contr. --> Fuse / Com. Mot. Ctrl / CB --> (Zuordnungsart "1")						
25hp/ 3phase 480V	Class J	Comb. Mot. Ctrl.	Circuit Breaker		SCCR	Voltage
		3RV201...,3RV202..	3RV2742	3RV271...,3RV272..		
3RT2028	125 A	-	-	-	100 kA	600 V
	-	32 A	-	22	50 kA	480 V
	-	25 A	40 A	15 A	65 kA	480 V
	-	-	-	12,5 A	10 kA	600 V
	-	-	40 A	-	20 kA	600 V
	-	12,5 A	-	-	30 kA	600 V

Harmonization of the UL508 with IEC60947

In view of the harmonization of parts of the UL508: "Standard for Industrial Control Equipment", with the testing standard for industrial low-voltage switch devices IEC 60947, the following two UL60947 standards have been published:

- UL 60947-1: Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear – Part 1: General Rules (Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear – Part 1: General Rules)
- UL 60947-4-1: Electromechanical Contactors and Motor-Starters (Part 4-1: Electromechanical Contactors and Motor-Starters)

Contactors and motor starters - electromechanical contactors, overload relays and motor starters but also semiconductor contactors, soft starters, hybrid starters and maintenance switches are tested according to UL60947-4-1.

In the course of this harmonization, manufacturers can have their products tested for the North-American market according to type of coordination 2

Type of coordination 2, according to UL 60947-4-1A:

Type of coordination "2" requires that under short-circuit conditions the contactor or starter shall cause no danger to persons or installations and shall be suitable for further use. There is a risk of contact welding.

In this case, the manufacturer shall specify maintenance instructions. The starter is still operative. There must be no signs of damage to the devices, with the exception of slightly welded contactor contacts that can be easily separated again without any noticeable deformation.

Result: After a short-circuit, the starter must still be suitable for further operation. The risk of contact welding (e.g. on a contactor) is acceptable. In this case, the manufacturer's instructions must be followed in order to easily separate the welded contacts.

Regardless of the selected type of coordination, a short-circuit will be reliably and safely cleared and disconnected. Since type of coordination "2" assemblies are often instantly available for further operation after a short-circuit, they can be regarded as higher-quality modules.

Note

Combinations of type of coordination "1" are generally the more favorably priced combinations.

Combinations of type of coordination "2" automatically fulfill the requirements of type of coordination "1".

Example: High SCCR contactors S0 3RT202.. tested with type of coordination "2":

The high SCCR short-circuit values of the type of coordination "2" are also available to the user in the UL "Certification of Compliance" for the SIRIUS contactors. The corresponding table can be found in this example below the table header: High Capacity Short Circuit Ratings: "Type 2 coordination according to UL 60947-4-1A.

High-SCCR: Mag. Mot. Contr. --> Fuse / Com. Mot. Ctrl / CB --> Type 2 coordination UL60947-4-1A						
25hp/ 3phase 480V	Class J	Comb. Mot. Ctrl.	Circuit Breaker		SCCR	Voltage
		3RV201..,3RV202..	3RV2742	3RV271..,3RV272..		
3RT2028-1...screw-term.	50 A	-	-	-	100 kA	600 V
3RT2028-...	-	-	20 A	12,5 A	10 kA	600 V
	-	12,5 A	-	-	30 kA	600 V
	-	32 A	-	22	50 kA	480 V
	-	25 A	-	15 A	65 kA	480 V

4. Adaptation of the available short-circuit current on the basis of let-through values when using current-limiting devices in the feeder circuit

When using short-circuit-current-limiting components in the feeder circuit, all components in the branch circuit shall be sized for the let-through current of the short-circuit-current-limiting component in the feeder circuit.

Short-circuit-current-limiting components shall be located **fully in the Feeder Circuit**. The following components can be used to limit the short-circuit current:

- Transformers
- Fuses
- Circuit breakers according to UL 489 marked "current limiting"

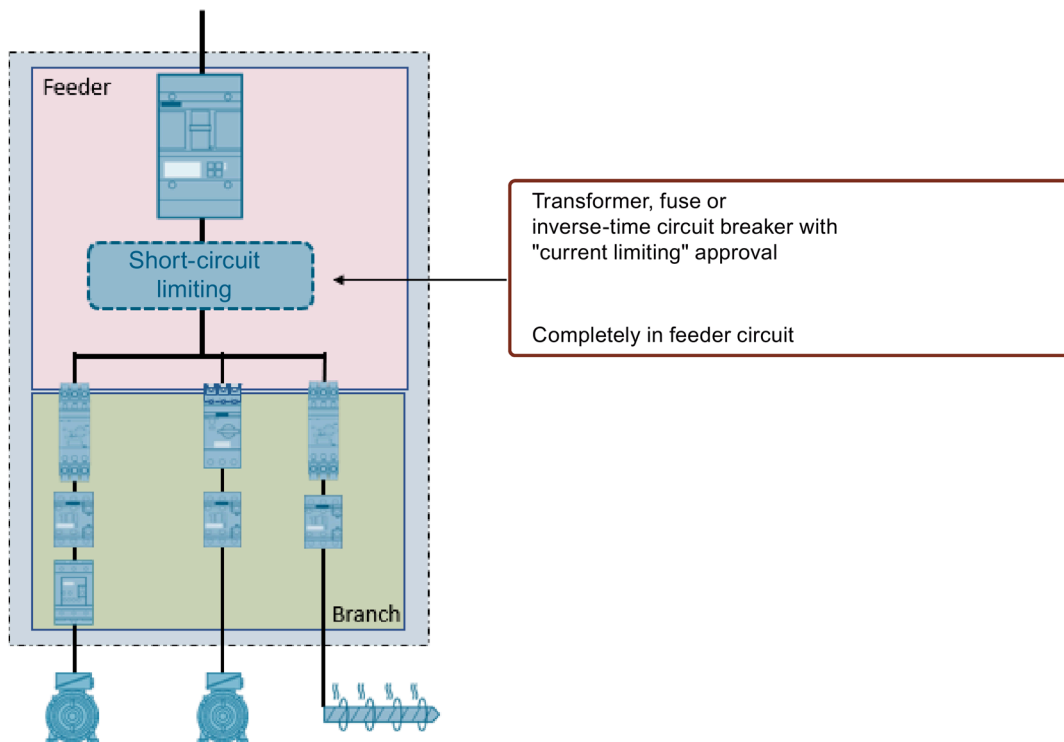


Figure 6-41 Diagram showing "short-circuit limiting in the feeder circuit"

a) Current-limiting transformers**Transformers with known relative short-circuit voltage (= Impedance Z in accordance with UL 508A)**

The short-circuit current that can arise on the secondary side of the transformer is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Secondary rated current (I}_{FL}) \text{ [A]} = \frac{\text{Transformer rating (P) [VA]}}{\text{Secondary voltage (U}_{sec}) \text{ [V]} \times \sqrt{3}}$$

Note

With single-phase transformers, the factor $\sqrt{3}$ is omitted.

$$\text{Secondary short-circuit current (I}_{sc}) \text{ [A]} = \frac{\text{Secondary rated current (I}_{FL}) \text{ [A]}}{\text{Impedance (Z) [\%]}}$$

All branch circuits on the secondary side of the transformer shall be sized to be $\geq$ the secondary maximum short-circuit current (I_{sc}).

→ SCCR of the branch circuits = short-circuit interrupting rating of the primary short-circuit protective device

Transformers with unknown relative short-circuit voltage (= I_{sc}) in accordance with UL 508A) or impedance Z = % 2.1 %

The maximum secondary short-circuit current can be calculated either using the formulas above assuming $Z = 2.1 \%$, or with the help of the two tables below "Secondary short-circuit current of single-phase transformers" (single-phase) or "Secondary short-circuit current of three-phase transformers" (three-phase) as follows:

1. The transformer power shall be $\leq$ column 1 **and**
2. The secondary voltage shall not be less than the values in column 2. If the secondary voltage is between the values, the column with the next lower voltage is to be selected.

Note

The US wording "Impedance Z" does not mean an apparent impedance of the transformer in the unit "OHM" but the relative short-circuit current input u_k , so the relative relation of rated current to the max short-circuit current on the secondary side.

6.4 Short-circuit current rating (SCCR) and calculation

Table 6- 15 Single phase transformer secondary available short circuit currents ^a

Column 1	Column 2							
Transformer Max. kVA	Minimum transformer secondary voltage (V)							
	120	120/240 ^b	208	240	277	347	480	600
1	400 A	300 A	230 A	200 A	180 A	140 A	100 A	80 A
3	1,200 A	900 A	690 A	600 A	520 A	420 A	300 A	240 A
5	1,990 A	1,490 A	1,150 A	1,000 A	860 A	690 A	500 A	400 A
10	3,970 A	2,980 A	2,290 A	1,990 A	1,720 A	1,380 A	1,000 A	800 A
15	5,960 A	4,470 A	3,440 A	2,980 A	2,580 A	2,060 A	1,490 A	1,200 A
25	9,930 A	7,450 A	5,730 A	4,970 A	4,300 A	3,440 A	2,490 A	1,990 A
37.5	14,890 A	11,170 A	8,590 A	7,450 A	6,450 A	5,150 A	3,730 A	2,980 A
50	19,850 A	14,890 A	11,450 A	9,930 A	8,600 A	6,870 A	4,970 A	3,970 A
75	29,770 A	22,330 A	17,180 A	14,890 A	12,900 A	10,300 A	7,450 A	5,960 A

^a Requirement: Z assumed to be 2.1 %.^b Short-circuit current shown is line-to-neutral.

Source: UL 508A, Table SB4.3

Table 6- 16 Three-phase transformer secondary available short circuit currents ^a

Column 1	Column 2						
Transformer Max. kVA	Minimum transformer secondary voltage (V)						
	208Y/120 ^b	208	240	480Y/277 ^b	480	600Y/347 ^b	600
5	830 A	670 A	580 A	360 A	290 A	290 A	230 A
10	1.660 A	1.330 A	1.150 A	720 A	580 A	580 A	460 A
15	2.480 A	1.990 A	1.720 A	1.080 A	860 A	860 A	690 A
20	3.310 A	2.650 A	2.230 A	1.440 A	1.150 A	1.150 A	920 A
25	4.140 A	3.310 A	2.870 A	1.800 A	1.440 A	1.440 A	1.150 A
30	4.960 A	3.970 A	3.440 A	2.150 A	1.720 A	1.720 A	1.380 A
45	7.440 A	5.950 A	5.160 A	3.230 A	2.580 A	2.580 A	2.070 A
75	12.400 A	9.920 A	8.600 A	5.370 A	4.300 A	4.300 A	3.440 A
100	16.530 A	13.220 A	11.460 A	7.160 A	5.730 A	5.730 A	4.590 A

^a Requirement: Z assumed to be 2.1 %.^b Short-circuit current shown is line-to-neutral conductor (1.25 phase-to-phase)

Source: UL 508A, Table SB4.4

The SCCR components and protection devices on the secondary side of the transformer shall be designed $\geq$ the determined maximum, secondary short-circuit current (I_{sc}).

→ SCCR of the branch circuits = short-circuit interrupting rating of the primary short-circuit protective device

b) Current-limiting circuit breakers (in accordance with UL 489)

To be able to use a circuit breaker in accordance with UL 489 as a current-limiting component in the feeder circuit, it shall be marked with the information "current limiting".

In this case, the let-through values of the circuit breaker shall be taken into account.

The let-through value is taken from the characteristic of the circuit breaker.

The **SCCR value** of the branch circuits **corresponds to the interrupting rating of the circuit breaker** in the feeder circuit under the following conditions:

- The SCCR value of all individual components in the branch circuit is not less than the peak let-through current of the circuit breaker in the feeder circuit.
- The interrupting rating of all branch circuit protective devices or the SCCR value of all Combination Motor Controllers is not less than the interrupting rating of the circuit breaker in the feeder circuit.

→ The SCCR value of the branch circuits corresponds to the smallest interrupting rating of a branch circuit protective device or Combination Motor Controllers connected downstream of the circuit breaker in the feeder circuit if this is less than the interrupting rating of the circuit breaker in the feeder circuit.

→ The SCCR value of the configuration corresponds to the smallest SCCR value of any branch circuit connected downstream of the circuit breaker if the above-named conditions are not met.

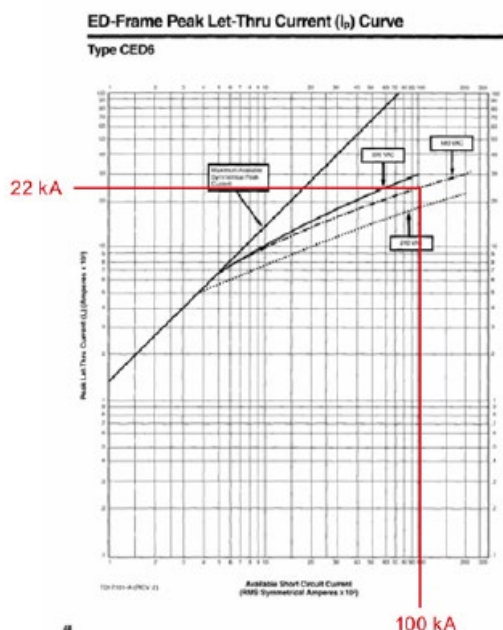


Figure 6-42 Let-through characteristic of a circuit breaker marked as "current limiting"

The selected circuit breaker lets 22 kA through at a short-circuit current of 100 kA.

⇒ In other words, all components in the branch circuit shall be sized for at least 22 kA.

The industrial control panel is suitable for a maximum let-through value of 100 kA.

Example of a 3VA6.. Current limiting device:

All SIEMENS 3VA6 Interrupting Class E can be used as "current limiting" according to UL508A. The let-through value [kA] and, if required, the I^2t [kA²s] can be found in the table of the CoC.

3VA6 Interrupting Class E (These types are current limiting circuit breaker)				
Voltage rating [V]	Test current [kA]	Test Level	Published values	
			Max. Peak Current [kA]	Max. I^2t [kA ² s]
480	10	Threshold current level	13.0	600
480	100	Intermediate interrupting Current	32.7	943
480	200	Maximum interrupting current	38.7	1133
600	10	Threshold current level	12.5	592
600	50	Intermediate interrupting Current	27.3	117.7
600	100	Maximum interrupting current	34.2	1188

The 3VA6 for 480 V would disconnect the short-circuit current safely with a prospective short-circuit current at the infeed point of 100 kA. In the process, however, a maximum cut-off current of 32.7 kA would act on the following components.

c) Current-limiting fuses

Only fuses from the table "Peak let-through currents and I^2t values for fuses" below may be used as current-limiting fuses. This table contains the corresponding let-through values (see the column $I_p \times 10^3$).

Table 6- 17 Peak let-through currents and I^2t values for fuses

Fuse types	Fuse rating amperes	Between threshold and 50 kA		100 kA		200 kA	
		$I^2t \times 10^3$	$I^p \times 10^3$	$I^2t \times 10^3$	$I^p \times 10^3$	$I^2t \times 10^3$	$I^p \times 10^3$
Class CC	15	2	3	2	3	3	4
	20	2	3	3	4	3	5
	30	7	6	7	7.5	7	12
Class G	15	–	–	3.8	4	–	–
	20	–	–	5	5	–	–
	30	–	–	7	7	–	–
	60	–	–	25	10.5	–	–
300 V, Class T ^b	1	–	–	0.4	0.8	–	–
	3	–	–	0.6	1.3	–	–
	6	–	–	1	2	–	–
	10	–	–	1.5	3	–	–
	15	–	–	2	4	–	–
	20	–	–	2.5	4.5	–	–
	25	–	–	2.7	5.5	–	–
	30	3.5	5	3.5	7	3.5	9
	35	–	–	6	7	–	–
	40	–	–	8.5	7.2	–	–
	45	–	–	9	7.6	–	–
	50	–	–	11	8	–	–
	60	15	7	15	9	15	12
	70	–	–	25	10	–	–
	80	–	–	30	10.7	–	–
	90	–	–	38	11.6	–	–
	100	40	9	40	12	40	12
	110	–	–	50	12	–	–
	125	–	–	75	13	–	–
	150	–	–	88	14	–	–
	175	–	–	115	15	–	–
	200	150	30	150	16	150	20
	225	–	–	175	21	–	–
	250	–	–	225	22	–	–
	300	–	–	300	24	–	–
	350	–	–	400	27	–	–
	400	500	22	550	28	550	35
	450	–	–	600	32	–	–
	500	–	–	800	37	–	–
	600	1000	29	1000	37	1000	46
	700	–	–	1250	45	–	–
	800	1500	37	1500	50	1500	65
	1000	–	–	3500	65	–	–

6.4 Short-circuit current rating (SCCR) and calculation

Fuse types	Fuse rating amperes	Between threshold and 50 kA		100 kA		200 kA	
	1200	3000	50	3500	65	4000	80
Class CF (up to 100 A), Class J and 600 V Class T ^b	1	–	–	0.8	1	–	–
	3	–	–	1.2	1.5	–	–
	6	–	–	2	2.3	–	–
	10	–	–	3	3.3	–	–
	15	–	–	4	4	–	–
	20	–	–	5	5	–	–
	25	–	–	5.5	6	–	–
	30	7	6	7	7.5	7	12
	35	–	–	12	7.5	–	–
	40	–	–	17	8	–	–
	45	–	–	18	8.5	–	–
	50	–	–	22	9	–	–
	60	30	8	30	10	30	16
	70	–	–	50	11.5	–	–
	80	–	–	60	12.5	–	–
	90	–	–	75	13.5	–	–
	100	60	12	80	14	80	20
	110	–	–	100	14.5	–	–
	125	–	–	150	15.5	–	–
	150	–	–	175	17	–	–
	175	–	–	225	18.5	–	–
	200	200	16	300	20	300	30
	225	–	–	350	22.5	–	–
	250	–	–	450	24	–	–
	300	–	–	600	26	–	–
	350	–	–	800	29	–	–
	400	1000	25	1100	30	1100	45
	450	–	–	1500	36	–	–
	500	–	–	2000	42	–	–
	600	2 500	35	2 500	45	2 500	70
	700	–	–	1250	45	–	–
	800*	4000	50	4000	55	4000	75
Class L	800	10 000	80	10 000	80	10 000	80
	1200	12 000	80	12 000	80	15000	120
	1600	22000	100	22000	100	30000	150
	2000	35000	110	35000	120	40000	165
	2 500	–	–	75000	165	75000	180
	3000	–	–	100.000	175	100.000	200
	4000	–	–	150000	220	150000	250
	5000	–	–	350000	–	350000	300
	6000	–	–	350000	–	500000	350

Fuse types	Fuse rating amperes	Between threshold and 50 kA				100 kA				200 kA			
Class R		RK1	RK5	RK1	RK5	RK1	RK5	RK1	RK5	RK1	RK5	RK1	RK5
	30	10	50	6	11	10	50	10	11	11	50	12	14
	60	200	200	10	20	40	200	12	21	50	200	16	26
	100	500	500	14	22	100	500	16	25	100	500	20	32
	200	1600	1600	18	32	400	1600	22	40	400	2000	30	50
	400	5000	5000	33	50	1200	5000	35	60	1600	6000	50	75
	600	10 000	10 000	43	65	3000	10 000	50	80	4000	12 000	70	100

* Value applies to fuses of Class T.

^b When values at 50 kA and 200 kA are needed, the standard case size shall be used.

Source: UL 508A, Table SB4.2

The **SCCR value** of the branch circuits corresponds to the **interrupting rating of the fuse** in the feeder circuit under the following conditions:

- The SCCR value of all individual components in the branch circuit is not less than the peak let-through current of the fuse in the feeder circuit.

→ The combined SCCR value of the branch circuits corresponds to the smallest interrupting rating of a branch circuit protective device or the breaking capacity of the fuse of BCPD in the feeder circuit if this is less than the interrupting rating of the fuse in the feeder circuit.

→ If, however, the SCCR value of components is smaller than "current limiting" feeder fuses smaller than the let-through value (Peak Let Through Current) the feeder fuses, then the smallest SCCR is the combined SCCR.

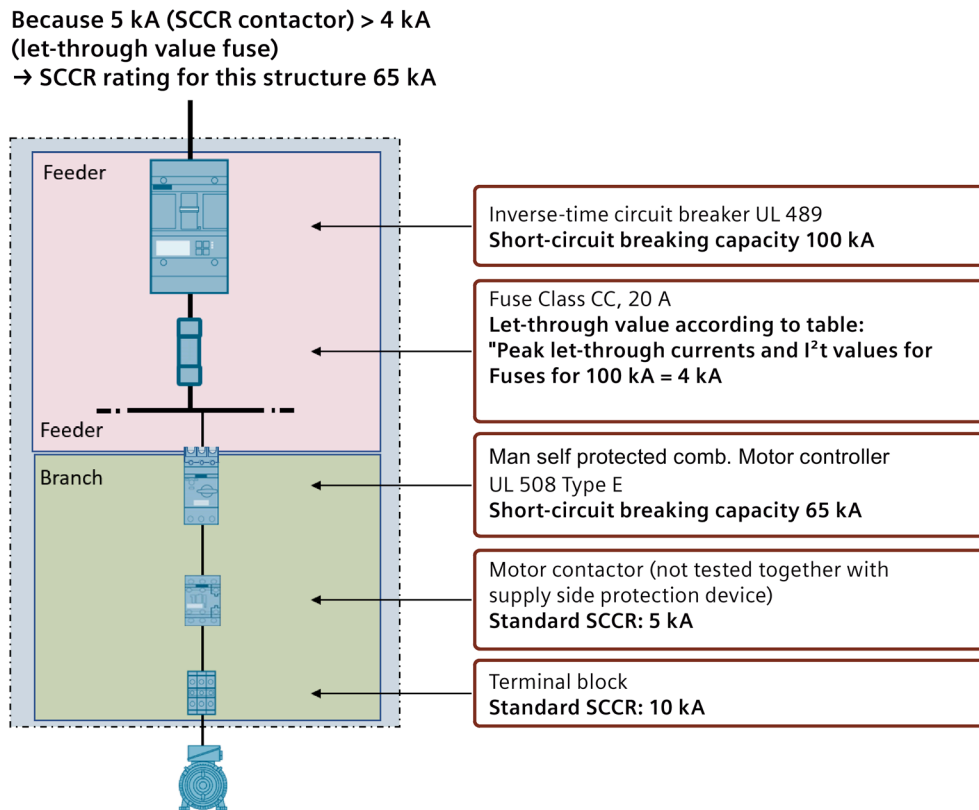


Figure 6-43 Example of "Determining the SCCR on the basis of a short-circuit-current-limiting fuse"

Note

Depending on the scope of the electrical equipment, the determination of the combined SCCR can be rather time-consuming and complex. For this reason the use of planning and engineering software tools such as, for example, the Control Panel Design (www.siemens.com/CPD) is recommended. On this see also Appendix B.2 Examples: Software and tools for electrical planning according to North American standards / for the North American market (Page 368).

Overcurrent protection and sizing of the control circuit

7

7.1 General information

The next chapter describes control circuits in accordance with NEC, UL 508A and NFPA 79.

According to definition in UL 508A, NEC and NFPA 79, a control circuit is a circuit that carries the signals for the function and the controller. It does not carry the electrical power for the connected loads.

UL 508A usually limits the control circuit to 15 A. This is a recommendation. A mandatory maximum value is not specified.

The following control circuits are defined in UL 508A:

1. Class 1 control circuit
2. Class 2 control circuit
3. Low-voltage limited energy circuit

The NEC and NFPA 79 define only Class 1 and Class 2 circuits. This means if a low-voltage limited energy circuit in accordance with UL 508A exits the industrial control panel, it is treated outside the control panel as a Class 1 circuit. Output terminals of a low-voltage limited energy circuit are to be marked "Class 1 circuit" (see also Chapter Other markings for terminals in control circuits (Page 316)).

NEC also defines a Class 3 circuit. However, since neither UL 508A nor NFPA 79 have anything to say about this control circuit, it is not dealt with in this guide.

The coming chapters deal with the properties, sizing rules and protection of the control circuits.

7.2 Classification

7.2.1 Class 1 control circuit

Definition according to UL 508A

A Class 1 control circuit is a control circuit with the following properties:

- On the load side of a short-circuit protective device
- On the load side of a transformer or power supply
- With max. 600 V control voltage (regardless of whether AC or DC)

NFPA 79 limits the voltage to 120 V AC or 250 V DC.

By definition a control circuit is an electric circuit which does not supply the main circuit loads but only signals, displays, messages, etc. provided to control a machine. For this reason a control circuit must be galvanically isolated from the main circuit.

However, the following components must be supplied by the control circuit:

- Industrial control panel lighting for maintenance purposes Max. 120 V
- LED lighting
- Socket outlets to supply programming devices, PCs, etc. with corresponding marking
- Switchgear cabinet fans which are checked according to UL507 and industrial control panel heaters which are checked according to UL499 must be supplied by control circuits and configured as control circuit loads.

7.2.2 Class 2 control circuit

A Class 2 control circuit shall always be established when components are approved only for a Class 2 control circuit. Such components are marked "For use in class 2 circuits only" or similarly.



Definition according to UL 508A

A Class 2 control circuit is a control circuit with the following properties:

- Supplied from a source with a limited voltage of 30 V_{rms} or less
- Supplied by a Class 2 power supply or transformer

NFPA 79 contains the Class 2 control circuit but does not describe it in more detail since it is defined as follows in the NEC:

- Circuit on the load side of a listed Class 2 power supply
- Offers fire safety and protection against electric shock due to the limited energy

Note

Components and wiring located completely within a Class 2 control circuit do not have to be accepted by the inspector.

→ Unlisted components and wiring can be used.

However, despite this exception, use of UL approved components and wiring is recommended if this is possible. This exception is primarily intended to nevertheless enable the use of components available on the market that do not have UL approval. In special purpose machine manufacturing, for example, components without UL approval can be mandatory (e.g. proprietary control PCBs).

7.2.3 Low-voltage limited energy circuit

The low-voltage limited energy circuit is described **only in UL 508A** and defined as follows:

- Voltage ≤ 42.4 V peak (= 30 V_{rms} at AC voltage) or 60 V DC voltage
- Supplied by a battery or an isolated secondary circuit and
- Current limiting through:
 - a) An overcurrent protective device (e.g. a listed fuse in accordance with UL 248-4...12, -15 or a circuit breaker in accordance with UL 489) *or*
 - b) The inherent capacity of an isolation transformer or power supply, *or*
 - c) The combination of a secondary winding and an impedance
- Tap from the line voltage using a voltage divider is not permitted

Note

The short-circuit protective device shall be selected in accordance with the table "Overcurrent protection for a low-voltage limited energy circuit" below.

The low-voltage limited energy circuit is limited to:

- Max. power of 100 VA
 - Output current of 5 A at a voltage of ≤ 20 V
 - 42.4 V peak (= 30 V_{rms} at AC voltage) or 60 V DC voltage
-

Conversions in accordance with the table below are permitted provided the maximum values are not exceeded.

Table 7- 1 Overcurrent protection for a low-voltage limited energy circuit

Wire break secondary voltage, volt	Maximum overcurrent device, amperes
0 ... 20 (AC peak or DC)	5
20.1 ... 42.4 (AC peak or DC)	100 / V
42.5 ... 60 (DC)	100 / V

Whereby "V" is equal to the peak or DC open-circuit voltage.

Source: UL 508A, Table 43.1

Exception 1

A secondary circuit that complies with the limited voltage/current circuit requirements for secondary circuits in accordance with UL 508 (Industrial Control Equipment) is not required to be protected in accordance with the table "Overcurrent protection for a low-voltage limited energy circuit".

Exception 2

A current transformer is not required to be protected in accordance with the table "Overcurrent protection for a low-voltage limited energy circuit".

Note

Analogously to the Class 2 control circuit, components and wiring located completely within a low-voltage limited energy circuit do not have to be accepted by the inspector.

→ Unlisted components and wiring can be used.

However, despite this exception, use of UL approved components and wiring is recommended here too if this is possible. This exception is primarily intended to nevertheless enable the use of components available on the market that do not have UL approval. In special purpose machine manufacturing, for example, components without UL approval can be mandatory (e.g. proprietary control PCBs).

7.3 Power supply and short-circuit protection

7.3.1 Tapping and power supply

Control circuits can be supplied with power in different ways in accordance with UL 508A.

Control circuits can be supplied from a separate source. In this case, the control circuits shall be provided with a separate disconnecting means.

A separate incoming supply circuit can be implemented using a separate incoming supply circuit conductor or by tapping upstream of the main control switch as so called "Excepted circuits"

Separate infeed (separate source)

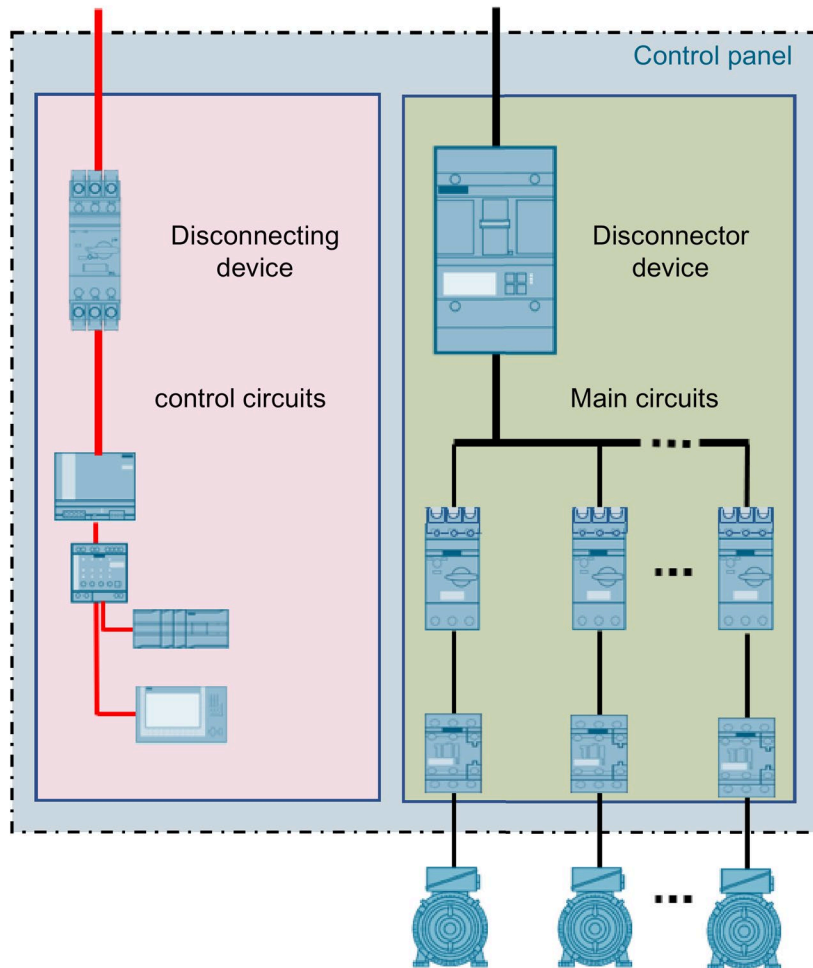


Figure 7-1 Control circuit with separate incoming supply circuit conductor

Tapping upstream of the main control switch ("excepted circuit")

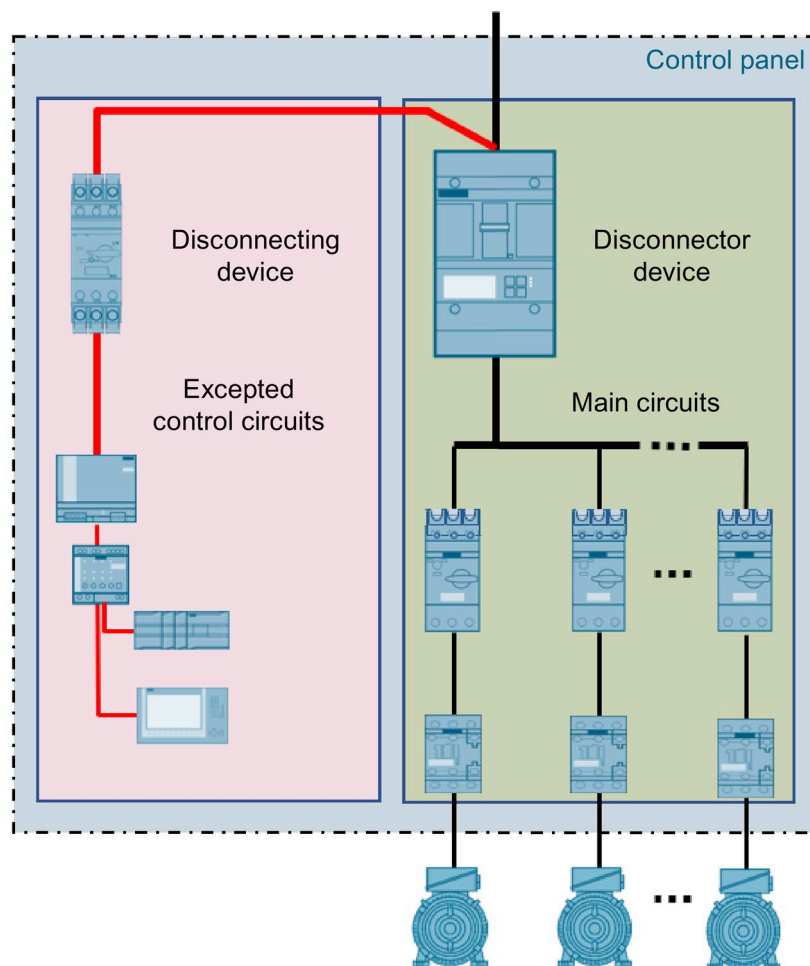


Figure 7-2 Control circuit tapped upstream of the main control switch

Tapping downstream of the main control switch in "Feeder circuit"

In most cases, the control circuit is tapped downstream of the main control switch and upstream of the load branch circuits.

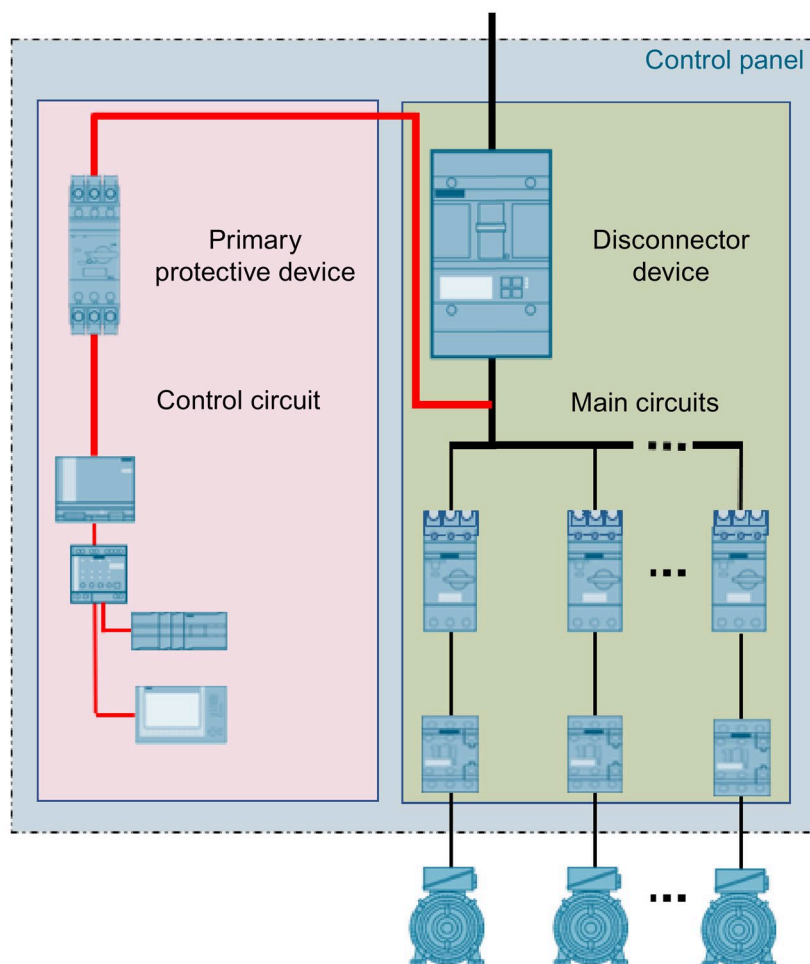


Figure 7-3 Control circuit tapped downstream of the main control switch and upstream of the load branch circuits

Tapping downstream of the main control switch in "Branch circuit"

In the relevant standards it is also not unusual to tap the control circuit downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device". In this case, "Supplementary protectors" in accordance with UL 1077 or "Supplemental fuses" in accordance with UL 248-14 may be used as the primary protective device. For more information, see following chapter Overcurrent protection of control circuits (Page 187).

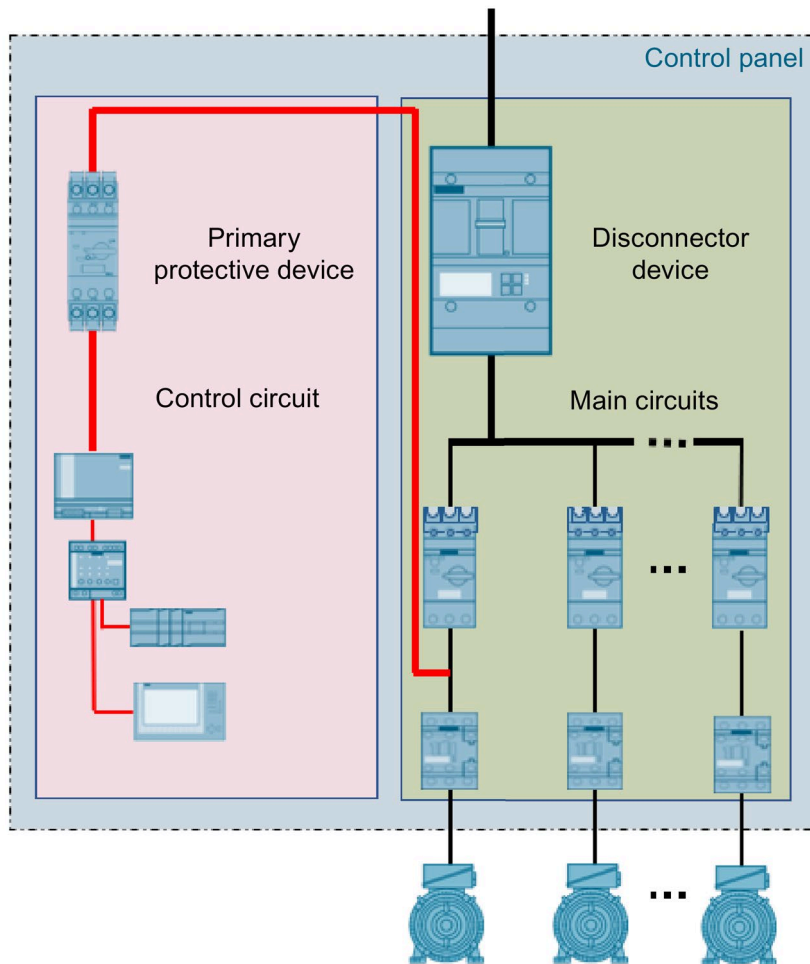


Figure 7-4 Control circuit tapped downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device"

Power supply units

Power supply units for Class 1 control circuits in accordance with UL 508A:

- Transformers in accordance with UL 5085-1/-2 or UL 1561
- Power supplies (with galvanic isolation) in accordance with UL 1012, UL 60950, UL 62368-1, UL 508 and UL 61010
- Control devices with isolated secondary circuits approved in accordance with UL 508, UL 508C or 61010-2-201

Power supply units for Class 2 control circuits in accordance with UL 508A:

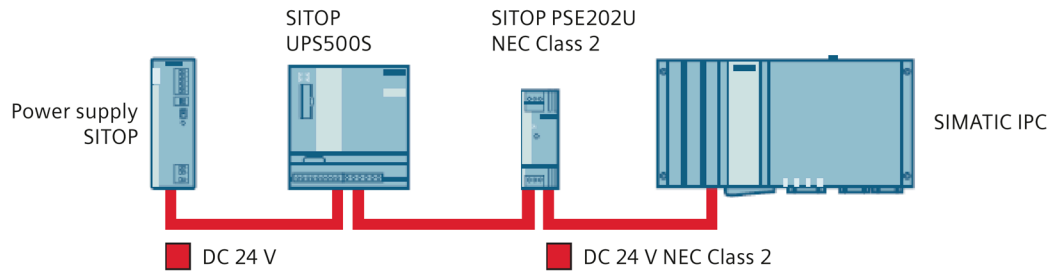
- Transformers in accordance with UL 5085 -1/-3
- Devices for supplying a circuit for "Information technology equipment" shall be approved in accordance with UL 60950-1
- Power supplies ("Power units") in accordance with UL 1310

Note

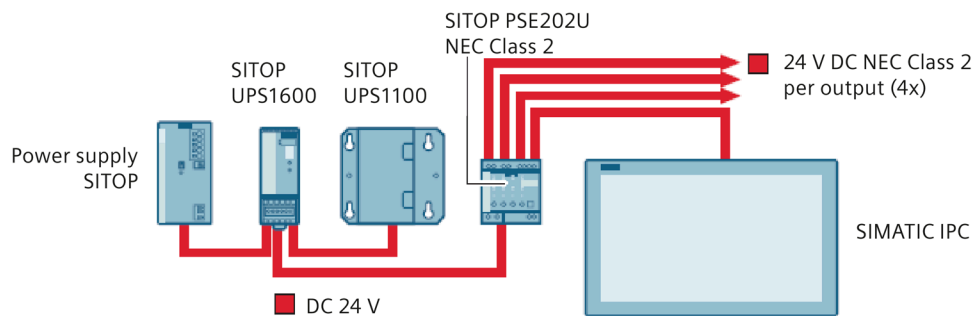
Structure with SIEMENS SITOP NEC-Class 2 power supplies:

Within the large variety of SITOP power supply units, numerous checked power supply units are available, beginning with advanced or standard up to bas power supplies, which are available on the secondary side of a NEC Class-2.

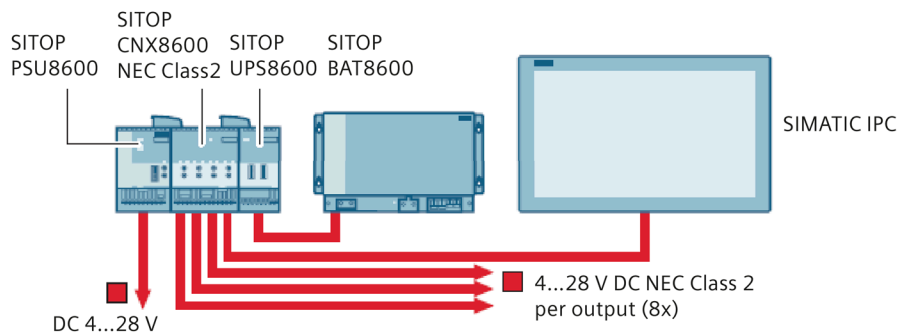
SIMATIC IPC voltage supply via a powerful power pack with capacitor-based DC-USV SITOP UPS500S redundancy module SITOP PSE202U with NEC Class 2



SIMATIC IPC voltage supply via a powerful power supply unit with DC UPS module SITOP UPS1600 and Battery module UPS1100 as well as selectivity module SITOP PSE200U with NEC Class 2



SIMATIC IPC voltage supply via power supply system SITOP PSU8600 with extension module CNX8600 with NEC Class 2 and buffering of the outputs through DC-UPS UPS8600 with battery module BAT8600



Structure of a Class 2 control circuit with electrical overcurrent protection devices:

The two selectivity modules 6EP1961-2BA51 and ..-2BA61, as well as all electrical device circuit breakers 5SK9.. have, in addition to their product approval UL2367 ("Special-purpose Solid-state Overcurrent Protectors"), also been checked in accordance with UL1310 (Class 2 power unit). Therefore NEC-Class 2 components can be supplied and simultaneously protected with a conventional DC 24 V supply by means of these protection devices.

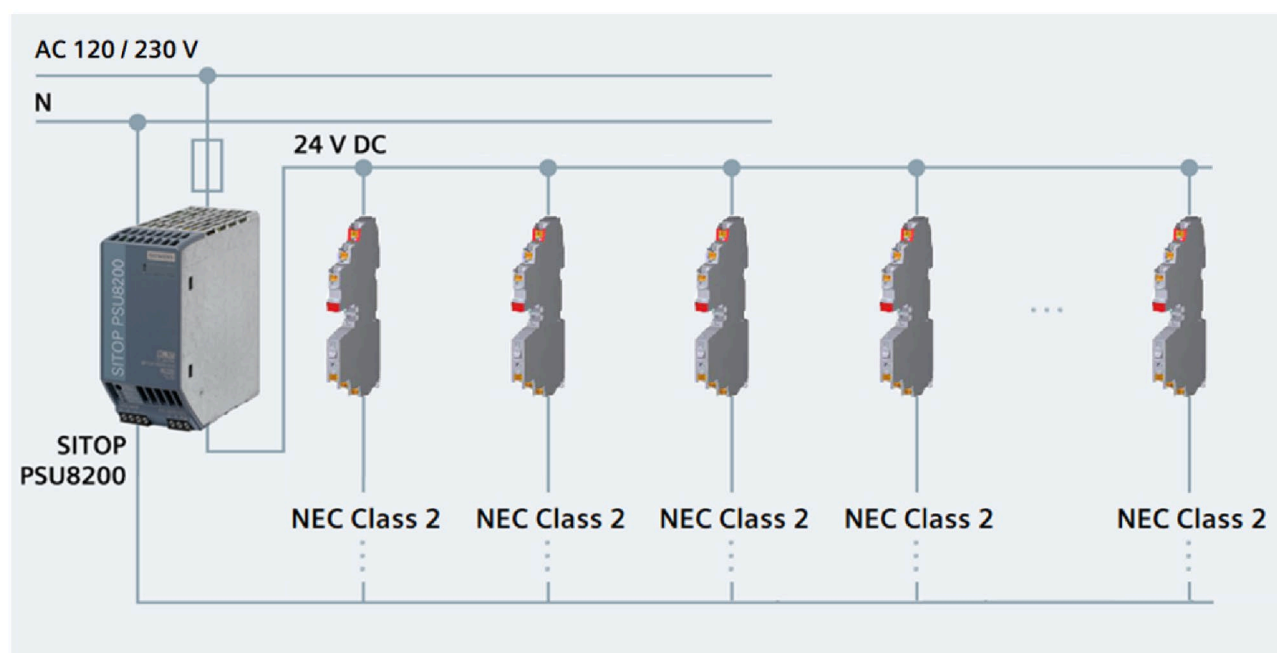


Figure 7-5 Device protection switch 5SK9

Power supply units for Low-voltage limited energy circuits in accordance with UL 508A:

- Power supplies for Class 1 control circuits
- Sealed batteries according to UL 1989
- Lithium batteries according to UL 1682
- Current transformers according to UL 5085-1/-2
- Current transformers with max. secondary current of 5 A

7.3.2 Overcurrent protection of control circuits

The protection of control circuits in accordance with UL 508A:

The following devices are approved without restrictions for protecting a control circuit:

- "Fuse" according to UL 248-4...12, -15
- "Inverse-time circuit breaker" according to UL 489

Devices approved with restrictions:

- "Supplemental Fuses" according to UL 248-14
- "Supplementary Protectors" according to UL 1077

Fuse holders shall comply with UL 4248-1 and to the part of UL 4248 applicable for the fuse used

If the above-named protective devices are used in control circuits with a DC voltage **above** 32 V, they shall be approved in accordance with the appropriate product standard to have a voltage rating **equal to or greater** than the rated voltage.

Note

It is highly recommended, however, to use protection devices in all DC power independently of the voltage which have a suitable DC rating.

Note

Supplemental fuses and supplementary protectors are only "recognized", but are often similar in appearance to the "listed" fuses or circuit breakers. Pay attention, therefore, to the approval to avoid any danger of mix-up.

Circuit breaker according to UL 489



Supplementary protectors according to UL 1077



Supplementary protectors according to UL 1077



Figure 7-6 Comparison of "Supplementary Protector" and "Circuit Breaker" in the design of miniature circuit breakers

"Supplemental Fuses" in accordance with UL 248-14 and "Supplementary Protectors" in accordance with UL 1077 are only approved as primary protection if the control circuit has been branched downstream of a branch circuit protective device (see Figure 7-4 Control circuit tapped downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" (Page 183)).

There are also restrictions when using these devices as secondary protection, downstream of the transformer or power supply. These protective devices are not listed, but they are recognized. That means Conditions of Acceptability shall be observed here.

Example: Recognized devices do not always have a Field Wiring approval. If the devices are only approved for Factory Wiring, wiring that exits the control panel shall not be connected direct, but instead shall be routed to the outside via a component approved for Field Wiring (e.g. a terminal block).

Every ungrounded conductor (phase) shall be protected.

Protection of a separate electric circuit: Infeed (no insulated secondary current)

(see Figure 7-1 Control circuit with separate incoming supply circuit conductor (Page 180)):

- Protection with max. 20 A or
- less in accordance with the current carrying capacity of the wiring
- or in accordance with the max. permissible current consumption of the devices

Protection of an isolated secondary circuit in accordance with UL 508A

(see Figure 7-2 Control circuit tapped upstream of the main control switch (Page 181) and Figure 7-3 Control circuit tapped downstream of the main control switch and upstream of the load branch circuits (Page 182)):

a) Only one protective device required on the primary side

Only one protective device is required on the primary side if the current carrying capacity of the cables on the 1-phase secondary side is **equal to or greater than** the rated current of the primary protective device. **Take the transformation ratio of the transformers into account.**

Example: Primary protective device 3 A / 480 V → Current carrying capacity of the secondary cable ≥ 12 A / 120 V, with a winding ratio 1:4

In this case, the protective device shall be sized in accordance with Table 7-2 "Sizing of primary winding only overcurrent protection of a control transformer" below.

Table 7- 2 Sizing of primary winding only overcurrent protection of a control transformer

Control transformer primary current, amperes	Rating of overcurrent protection, maximum percentage of primary current
9 or more	125 ^a
2 ... 8.99	167
less than 2	500

^a Where the calculated size of the overcurrent protection, branch circuit or supplementary type, does not correspond to a standard size protective device, the next larger size is able to be used.

Source: UL 508A, Table 42.1

b) Every secondary circuit shall be protected separately

In the following cases, every secondary circuit shall be protected separately:

- The rated current of the load on the secondary side is **greater than** the rated current of the primary protective device. **Note here the transformation ratio in the case of transformers.**
- The summation current of all loads is greater than the output current of the power supply.
- The secondary circuit exits the industrial control panel.
- The transformer/power supply has several secondary-side taps/windings.

7.3 Power supply and short-circuit protection

Table 7- 3 Sizing of primary and secondary overcurrent protective devices

Primary winding		Secondary winding	
Rated amperes	Overcurrent protection percent of rated amperes	Rated amperes	Overcurrent protection percent of rated amperes
9 or more	250	9 or more	125 ^a
2 ... 8.99	250	less than 9	167
less than 2	500	-	-

^a Where the calculated size of the overcurrent protection, branch circuit or supplementary type, does not correspond to a standard size protective device, the next larger size is able to be used. See 31.3.8 for standard sizes of branch circuit protection equipment.

Source: UL 508A, Table 42.2

Protection of a control circuit that is tapped downstream of a "Branch Circuit Protective Device"

(see Figure 7-4 Control circuit tapped downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" (Page 183))

Wiring of a control circuit that is tapped downstream of a branch circuit protective device shall be sized in accordance with Table 11-6 Ampacities of control circuit conductors (Page 268) and Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266), and shall be protected accordingly.

Exception 1

If the control circuit meets all the following conditions:

- Tapped from the load side of a motor branch circuit protective device
- The control wires **do not leave the industrial control panel** (such as when a start-stop button is provided on the industrial control panel enclosure)
- The rated value of the motor branch circuit protective device does not exceed the maximum values in Table 7-4 "Motor branch circuit protection of common control circuit without remote control devices"

Table 7- 4 Motor branch circuit protection of common control circuit without remote control devices

Control circuit wire size		Maximum protective device rating, amperes
AWG	(mm ²)	
22	(0.32)	12
20	(0.52)	20
18	(0.82)	25
16	(1.3)	40
14	(2.1)	100
12	(3.3)	120

Source: UL 508A, Table 41.1

If these conditions are fulfilled, the motor branch circuit protective device also ensures the required short-circuit protection for the control circuit. That means an additional overcurrent protective device on the primary side of the control circuit is not required.

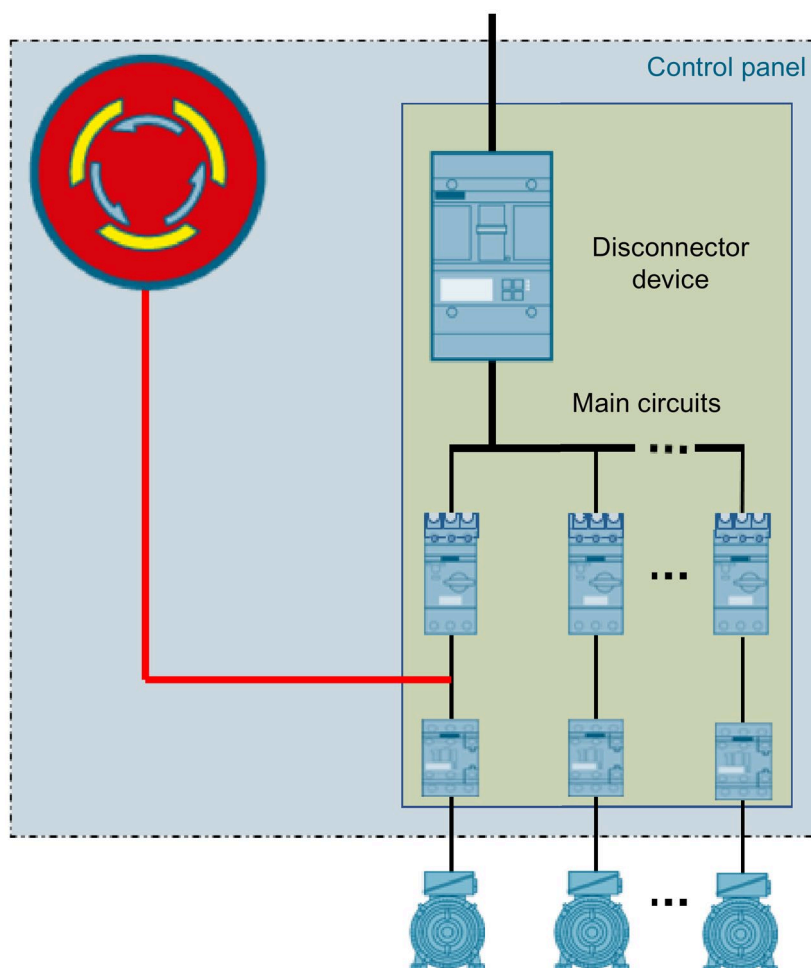


Figure 7-7 Tapping downstream of the main control switch and downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" of a motor feeder without control circuit components inside the cabinet without remote control

⇒ **An additional protective device for the control circuit is not required.**

Exception 2

If the control circuit meets all the following conditions:

- Tapped from the load side of a motor branch circuit protective device
- The control circuit **leaves the industrial control panel** (for example when a start-stop button is mounted outside the industrial control panel in the field)
- The rating of the motor branch circuit protective device does not exceed the maximum values in Table 7-5 "Motor branch circuit protection device of common control circuit without remote control devices"

Table 7- 5 Motor branch circuit protection of common control circuit with remote control devices

Control circuit wire size		Maximum protective device rating, amperes
AWG	(mm ²)	
22	(0.32)	3
20	(0.52)	5
18	(0.82)	7
16	(1.3)	10
14	(2.1)	45
12	(3.3)	60

Source: UL 508A, Table 41.2

If these conditions are fulfilled, the motor branch circuit protective device also ensures the required short-circuit protection for the control circuit. That means an additional overcurrent protective device on the primary side of the control circuit is not required.

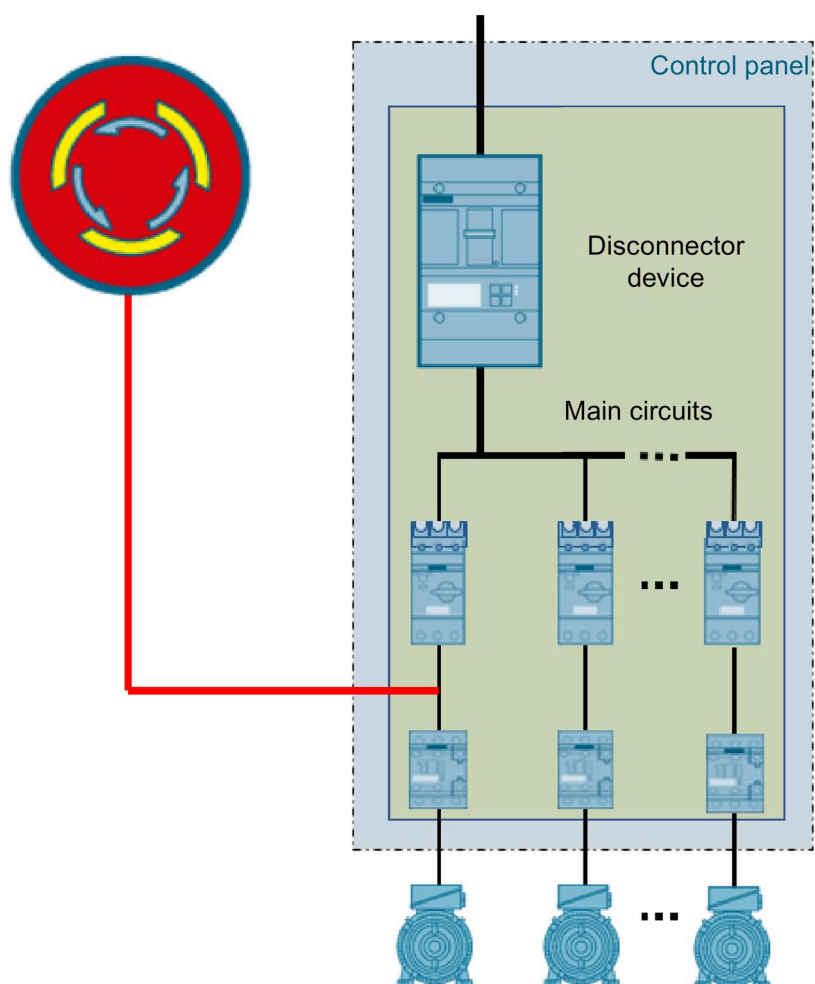


Figure 7-8 Tapping downstream of the main control switch downstream of the "Branch Circuit Protective Device" of a motor feeder without control circuit components outside the cabinet with remote control

⇒ **An additional protective device for the control circuit is not required.** (see also Chapter Control circuit (Page 268)).

7.4 Unlisted components

As described in Chapter General information for manufacturers of machinery and their associated electrical equipment (Page 25), components used shall be approved in accordance with the relevant US standards for the respective application.

However, Appendix B of UL 508A describes some possibilities where components that are neither "listed" nor "recognized" are approved, and the requirements under which this is possible.

Conditions of use

The exceptions described in this chapter are not applicable to the following components:

- Components that function to cause the opening of a circuit in the case of short circuit, overload, running motor overload, or ground fault
- Where additional safety concerns are present

Examples: A risk of an implosion of a cathode ray tube, use of components with flammable gas (e.g. oxygen) and liquids, or high pressures (300 psi = 2.08 MPa)

- Components that have been previously evaluated and are now being used for a purpose or at electrical ratings other than those for it has been evaluated, or if this product standard is not approved in UL 508A
- Components with a direct electrical connection to power circuits
- Components that are located entirely within a circuit that is isolated from the control circuit voltage in which the "Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter" is installed
→ Components without approval are only allowed to be installed in a control circuit

Possible devices and components are:

- Switches
- Relays
- Measuring devices
- Recording devices
- Similar components that control loads or other devices within the control circuit and do not include connections to external devices

Components that do not fall within the conditions listed above shall be approved in accordance with UL 508 Industrial Control Equipment or another applicable standard. With UL-certified panel builders, the components shall also be included in the UL file of the industrial control panel builder.

The component shall be completely enclosed and located within the industrial control panel.

Exception 1

The component used is able to extend through an opening in the industrial control panel enclosure when the enclosure of the component has one of the following properties:

1. The component is made of polymeric plastic and the exposed area is not larger than 30 square inches (194 cm²)
2. The component is made of metal or glass and the exposed area is not larger than 100 square inches (654 cm²)

Exception 2

Components in an "open Type industrial control panel have one of the following two properties:

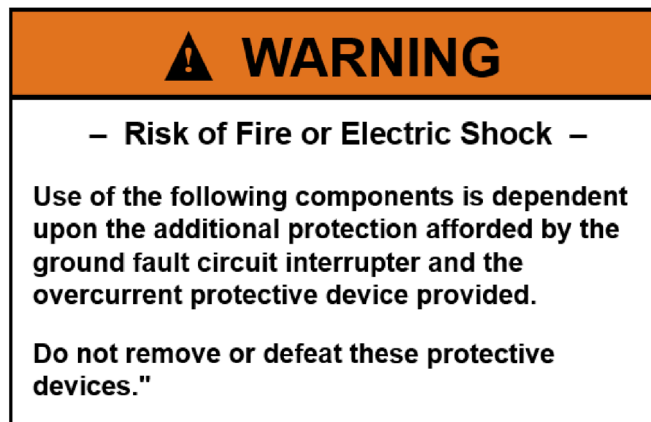
1. Installed in a completely enclosed enclosure.
2. Protected by barriers. The barriers shall comply with the conditions for "Barriers used with ventilation openings".

With ventilation openings, the unlisted component is to be treated as an arcing part.

All signal inputs and signal outputs to the unlisted component shall only be connected to control system components that are approved in compliance with UL.

Marking

The industrial control panel shall have the following markings:

a) Warning

This marking shall be followed by a table showing the components referred to.

Table 7- 6 Example - Devices to be protected by a "Ground fault circuit interrupter"

Component	Identification
Relay, K1	Acme, p/n 508

Source: UL 508A, Appendix B

b) Note that the "Ground fault circuit interrupter" should be checked regularly for proper operation.

7.4 Unlisted components

Power supply

- Transformer with isolated secondary winding and a secondary voltage of 115 to 120 V or 230 to 240 V

Note

Since NFPA 79 limits the control circuit to a voltage of 120 V AC, a maximum of 120 V applies for an industrial machine.

- One side of the secondary winding shall be grounded.
- The secondary side shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter in accordance with UL 943 (Class A, 6 mA or receptacle type)
- When using a receptacle type, the following requirements apply:
 - The component shall be connected directly to the terminals and not plugged into the receptacle.

Note

If a component has a power supply cord that includes an attachment plug, this plug shall be removed.

- A marking immediately adjacent to the receptacle shall indicate the receptacle is not to be used for devices external to the industrial control panel.
- The receptacle shall be mounted so that it is not accessible from outside the enclosure.

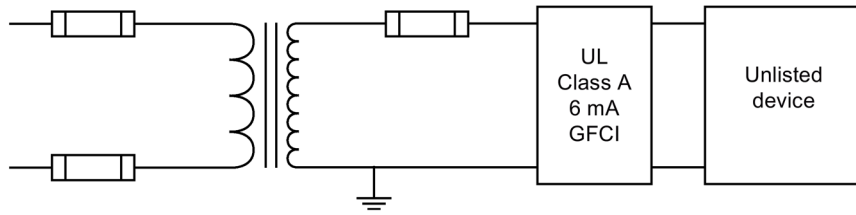


Figure 7-9 Design of a control circuit for an unlisted component

Inputs and outputs

$U > 30 \text{ V rms (42.4 peak or DC)}$

- The signals shall be routed via a UL-approved device (e.g. a relay)
- This device shall be installed in the industrial control panel.
- The voltage shall be supplied from the load side of a ground fault circuit interrupter.

$U \leq 30 \text{ V rms (42.4 peak or DC)}$

Signal input via any of the following devices:

- Low-voltage limited energy circuit
- Class 2 power supply/transformer

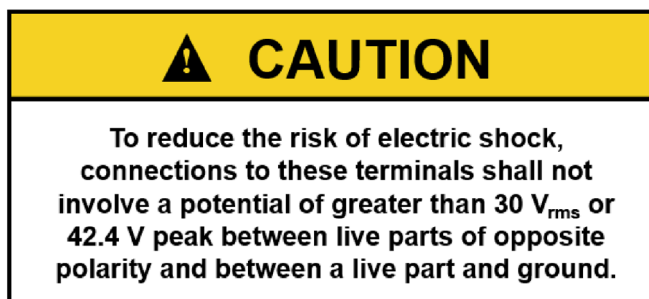
Note

In these two cases, no additional protection by means of a ground fault circuit interrupter is required

Signal inputs from outside the industrial control panel shall be protected by a 0.5 A fuse for each ungrounded conductor. The fuse shall be located within the industrial control panel. A marking shall be provided near the fuse with the following information:



The following marking shall be placed next to the field wiring terminals:



Signal inputs from measuring devices that are isolated from the supply voltage (such as current transformers, tachometers, thermocouples, or similar feedback devices), and that are located inside or outside the industrial control panel, do not require any additional protection.

Responsibility of the manufacturer

The manufacturer is obliged to test the ground fault circuit interrupter as follows:

- Control circuit energized
- Connection of a resistance between the live parts of the unlisted component and ground.

Note

The resistance value shall be such that the current flowing through it is greater than 6 mA and less than the rating of the secondary short-circuit protective device.

→ The ground fault circuit interrupter shall open the circuit.

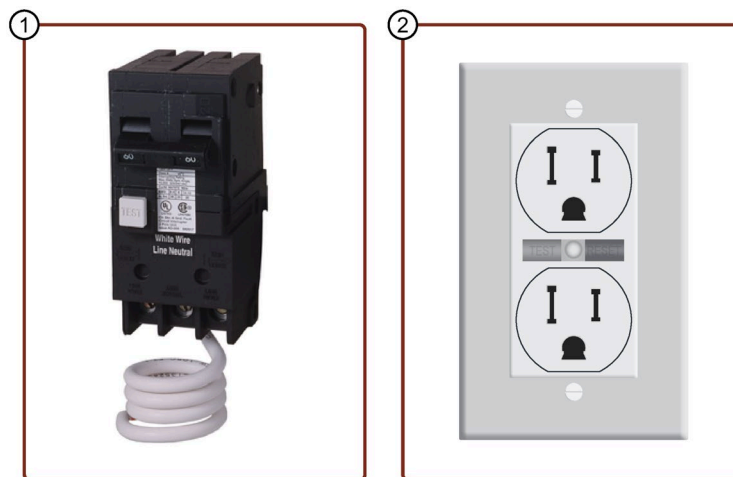
Records shall be made of the tests of the evaluated devices. The records shall be maintained at all times for viewing by UL inspectors.

The records shall be retained for at least 6 months.

Table 7-7 Example "Logging form"

Component designation	Component manufacturer's name	Catalog designation	Number used	Panel identification	Ground fault date of testing
...	...	...	...	...	...

Source: UL 508A, Appendix B



① Class A - GFCI

② Receptacle type - GFCI

Figure 7-10 Ground fault circuit interrupter

Grounding

8.1 General requirements

The requirements for grounding and protective conductors are described in detail in this chapter. As part of this, it provides a detailed differentiation between the requirements for the industrial control panel according to UL 508A and the requirements for the electrical equipment according to NFPA 79.

The requirements of both standards differ on some points. For this reason, it is recommended that manufacturers of industrial control panels observe the requirements of UL 508A. The requirements of NFPA 79 on the subject of grounding (which provide additional information and are more extensive in some respects) are recommended for industrial control panel builders and machine builders.

In the case of discrepancies between the requirements, clarification between the manufacturer and operator should take place in advance.

a) General information

"Bonding"

The purpose of Bonding is to establish a continuous electrical connection between conductive parts so that they can reach the same electrical potential.

"Grounding"

Connection of conductors and live parts to ground or zero potential

"Equipment grounding conductor" (EGC), Equipment Bonding"

All electro-conductive connections which are not live in regular operating state and can be touched by persons. These are adjusted to ground potential to allow the tripping of the corresponding protection device via the phase-to-ground short-circuit current in case of a fault.

„Effective Ground-Fault Current Path“

The complete low resistance continuous electric circuit which leads the fault current from the location of the possible short-circuit to the infeed source.

„Grounded conductor“

All conductors which are consciously grounded. Operating and compensating current flow via these but not fault currents. Most often they occur in the following networks:

Solid grounded wye, grounded DELTA, midpoint grounded DELTA and single-phase grounded AC or DC.

"Neutral conductor"

The neutral conductor is a "Grounded conductor" which has the same voltage for all phase conductors. The grounded neutral point conductor in the "solid grounded wye" is often also designated in short as "Neutral" in the relevant North American standards.

b) Combination of equipment grounding (protective) conductor and grounded conductor

Combining the protective conductor and grounded conductor is not permitted according to current US standards (NEC, UL 508A, and NFPA 79).

c) marking of the clamps

External protective conductor terminals (field wire terminals) must be attached in proximity to the terminal itself and can be marked in the following three ways:

- The following **abbreviations** are recommended: "G", "GND", "GRD", "Ground" or "Grounding"

"PE" (protective earth) can also be used as marking according to NFPA 79, in addition to the abbreviations described. However, this is a typical abbreviation taken from the IEC standards and does not correspond to the standard abbreviation that is currently used in North America.
- **Color** Green
- **Grounding symbol** according to IEC 

8.2 Requirements of UL 508A for grounding the industrial control panel

All conductive parts that may be touched by persons under normal operating conditions or while adjusting parts of the industrial control panel shall be connected to the equipment grounding (protective) conductor and grounded. In the event of a fault (e.g. an insulation fault), this is intended to prevent a hazardous contact voltage occurring with loose electrical connections and the supply being automatically disconnected.

Suitable terminals (Field Wiring Terminals) shall be available for connecting external grounding wires.

These terminals shall also meet one of the following two requirements:

- Requirements for external interfaces to the industrial control panel (see feeder circuits in Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54))
- Requirements of the standard UL 467 "Standard for Grounding and Bonding Equipment" or correspondingly tested

The connection between the terminals and the conductive parts shall be established using metallic contact surfaces or connecting wires with a minimum cross section. The minimum cross section shall correspond to one of the following two specifications:

- **UL 508A**

For cross sections of grounding conductors and equipment grounding terminals, see the table below, "Size of equipment grounding conductor terminal".

- Same cross section as the external supply conductors for the industrial control panel

The smaller cross section of these two options should be used in this case.

These requirements apply to permanently installed industrial control panels that are operated in a particular location.

Note

A flexible supply cord shall be provided for industrial control panels that are to be operated with different supplies and, therefore, in different locations.

8.2 Requirements of UL 508A for grounding the industrial control panel

Table 8- 1 Size of equipment grounding conductor terminal

Maximum ampere rating of overcurrent protection for field wiring conductors supplying the panel	Size of equipment grounding or bonding conductor, minimum			
	Copper		Aluminum	
	AWG or kcmil	[mm ²]	AWG or kcmil	[mm ²]
15	14	[2.1]	12	[3.3]
20	12	[3.3]	10	[5.3]
30	10	[5.3]	8	[8.4]
40	10	[5.3]	8	[8.4]
50	10	[5.3]	8	[8.4]
100	8	[8.4]	6	[13.3]
200	6	[13.3]	4	[21.2]
300	4	[21.2]	2	[33.6]
400	3	[26.7]	1	[42.4]
500	2	[33.6]	1/0	[53.5]
600	1	[42.4]	2/0	[67.4]
800	1/0	[53.5]	3/0	[85.0]
1000	2/0	[67.4]	4/0	[107.2]
1200	3/0	[85.0]	250 kcmil	[127]
1500	4/0	[107.2]	350	[177]
2000	250 kcmil	[127]	400	[203]
2 500	350	[177]	600	[04]
3000	400	[203]	600	[304]
4000	500	[253]	800	[405]
5000	700	[255]	1200	[608]
6000	800	[506]	1200	[608]

Source: UL 508A, Table 15.1

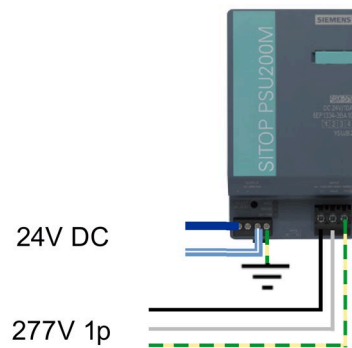
Requirements for grounding transformers and power supplies (UL 508A)

A secondary circuit that contains field wiring terminals and is supplied from a power transformer, control transformer or power supply shall have the secondary grounded under any of the following conditions:

a) **Secondary voltage ≤ 50 V**

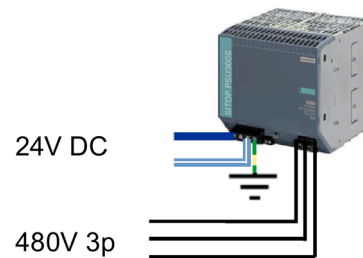
1. Primary voltage is ≥ 150 V phase – ground

SITOP 1 phase AC 277V

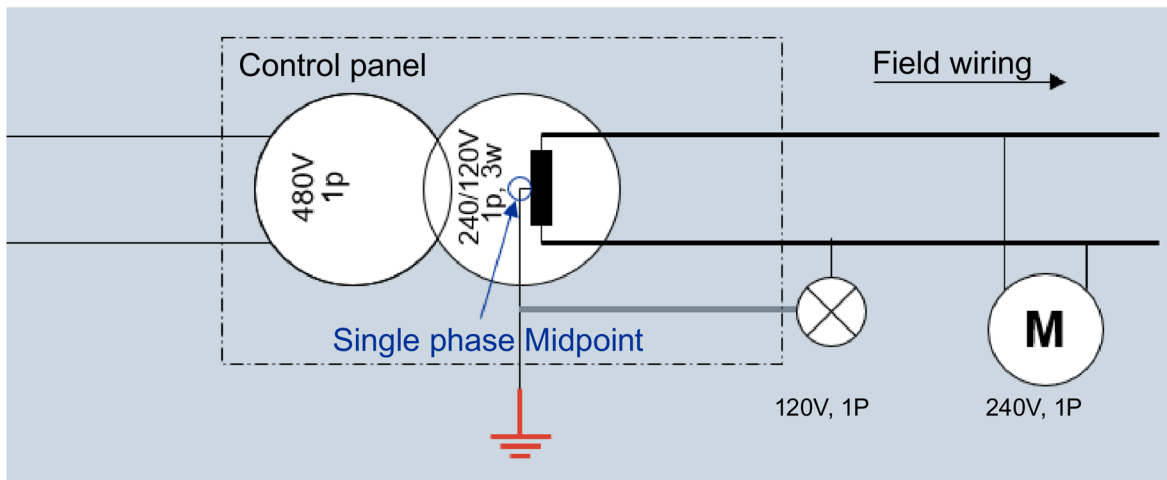


2. Primary side is ungrounded, regardless of the operating voltage

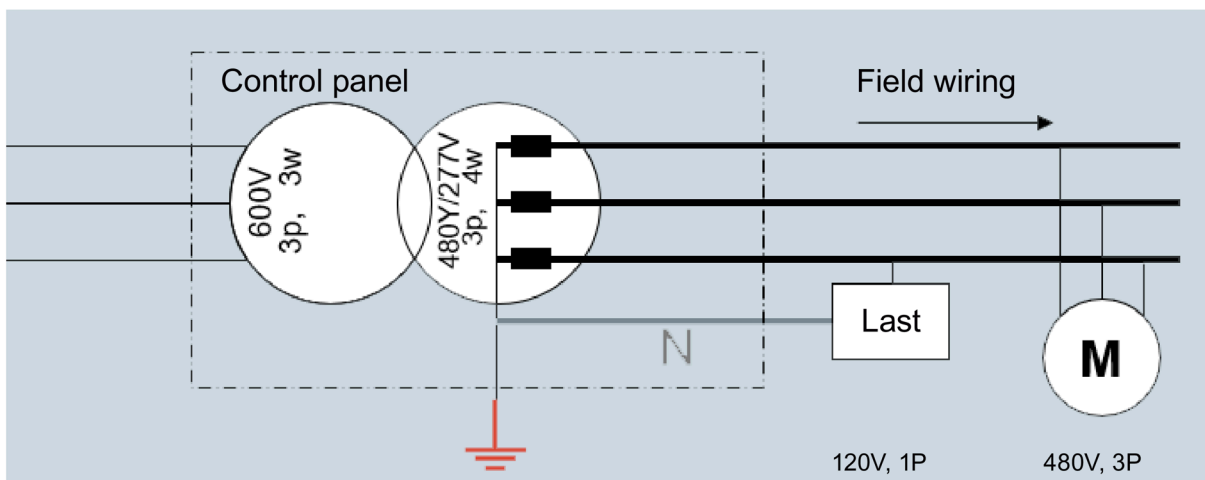
SITOP phase AC 480V



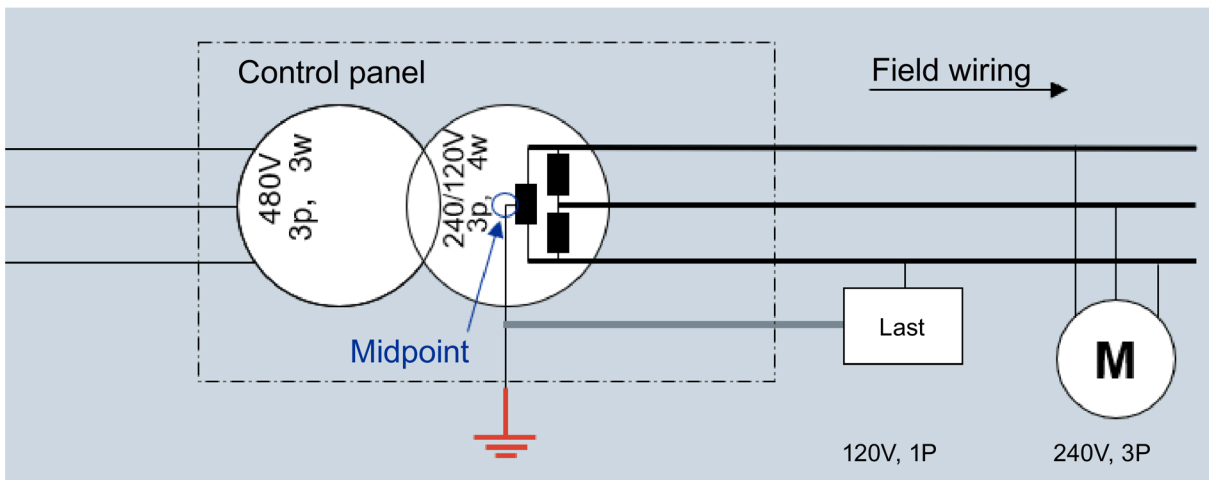
- b) **Secondary voltage phase-against-phase ≥ 50 V**, and it is possible to limit the secondary voltage to ≤ 150 V phase – ground by means of grounding. The example shown is a 1-phase main circuit transformer, which is switched to the secondary side in "single phase midpoint grounded".



c) Independent of the transformer voltages when the secondary side is listed in an grounded star and the neutral point is used as a N-conductor (1phase - ground), (3-phases, 4-conductor design) the neutral point has to be grounded.



d) If the secondary side is listed in a "Midpoint grounded DELTA" and the grounding is used as N-conductor (1-phase - ground) (3-phase, 4-conductor design), the Midpoint has to be grounded.



This is particularly relevant to devices on the secondary side that are marked by a "Slash Rating" (e.g. 120/240 V, 480 Y/277 V, or 600 Y/347 V). In this case, it is essential that the electric circuit complies with condition b) or c). For a 3-phase wye network with only 3 implemented phases, the midpoint of the wye shall be grounded.

Note

Detailed information on the power supply system configurations listed in c) and d) can be found in Chapter Power supply system configurations (Page 62)

Grounding shall be carried out on site in the industrial control panel. It shall be ensured that there is a connection between the enclosure and the grounding terminal. Corresponding marking is also required for the size of the terminal and the external equipment grounding (protective) conductor. The following two exceptions shall be observed:

- The grounding terminal is not required for control circuit transformers with a rating of $S \leq 1,000$ VA. The ground connection shall be made of copper and have a minimum cross section of 14 AWG (2.1 mm²)
- For multiple incoming supply circuits which use other supplies (e.g. generators) for the same industrial control panel, besides the usual supply line, a grounding terminal with a minimum cross section of 3/0 AWG shall be provided.

Ungrounded circuits

For a power circuits or control circuit supplied from a secondary circuit voltage that is not required to be grounded and is rated ≥ 100 V, one of the following conditions shall be met:

- The secondary circuit shall be provided with ground-fault monitoring devices which issue an audible or visual indication when a ground fault occurs in any ungrounded conductor (e.g. an indicator light or display).
- It shall be provided with a monitoring device that interrupts the circuit automatically in the event of a ground fault (e.g. a ground fault circuit interrupter).

If the monitoring device only issues a visual or audible indication for a ground fault but does not interrupt the circuit, a ground fault shall not result in the bypassing of safety shutdown devices.

Exception: Control circuits with a secondary voltage of more than 100 V and with no provision for connection to external circuits (Field Wiring) do not require ground-fault monitoring or an automatic disconnection device in the event of a ground fault.

1-phase loads of "midpoint grounded delta" transformers in the industrial control panel

If external, single-phase loads between a phase and the neutral are supplied via a transformer in the industrial control panel, which has a delta connection on the secondary side and is a midpoint-grounded power supply, an additional orange label is required for the internal conductor at the connection points for the "high-leg" voltage.

* The higher voltage between line – ground (see Chapter Power supply system configurations (Page 62))

Note

More details on labels, colors, etc., are described in Chapter Identification and color (Page 277).

8.3 Requirements of NFPA 79 for grounding machinery

General information

The primary objective of the requirements is to ensure that the impedance in the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit is as low as possible. The purpose of this, in turn, is to ensure that the overcurrent protection will cause automatic disconnection of the overcurrent protective devices in the event of a fault. The occurrence of a hazardous contact voltage shall also be prevented. All conductive parts that are not live shall be connected to this equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit. The requirements of **NFPA 79** on the subject of grounding also cover the requirements for the grounded conductor.

Equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit

Components

Only the following parts may be used for the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit:

- Equipment grounding (protective) conductor terminals
- Equipment grounding (protective) conductors and equipment bonding jumpers

Structural machine components or other supporting parts of the electrical equipment may not be used to establish continuity in the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit; only electrical conductors may be used for this.

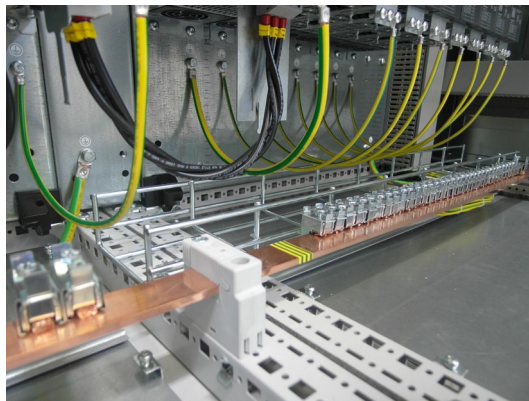


Figure 8-1 Grounding concept of an industrial control panel

All parts of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit (terminals and conductors) shall be capable of withstanding the associated mechanical and thermal stress without incurring unacceptable damage, particularly in the event of a short circuit.

NFPA 79 does not provide any further specifications on how this can be achieved, however. The logic behind this is that the short-circuit current flows back via the equipment grounding (protective) conductor to the source in the event of single-pole short circuits. Equipment grounding (protective) conductors are often designed with a smaller cross section than the associated phase conductor. In addition, the smaller cross section of the equipment grounding (protective) conductor does not feature separate overcurrent protection that is

appropriate for its smaller size; instead, it shall be protected indirectly via the overcurrent protection device in the ungrounded conductors (phases).

On the other hand, it is also assumed that the ground fault loop impedance for the single-pole short circuit is significantly higher than it is in the case of the two or three-pole phase short circuit. This means that the usual level of the single-pole short circuit in machines and industrial control panels is lower than that of the three-pole short circuit and, therefore, in the case of thermal and mechanical stress.

If the equipment grounding (protective) conductors are designed with these minimum cross sections according to NFPA 79 (see Table 8-2 Minimum size of equipment grounding conductors and bonding jumpers (Page 210)), this is usually sufficient for thermal and mechanical stress in the event of a short circuit.

If there is any uncertainty (for example, if the prospective short circuit current specified by the system operator is very high), additional measures shall be stipulated in order to provide the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit with adequate protection.

Examples of additional measures:

- Installing an additional parallel protective equipment grounding (protective) conductor
- Increasing the cross section of the equipment grounding (protective) conductor

Terminals in the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit are also tested for a max. SCCR with the relevant overcurrent protection device during the certification process (e.g. UL approval).

The exceptions for conductive parts that are not required to be connected to the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit are small parts for which the occurrence of voltages that present a contact hazard is not expected.

Examples:

- Screws
- Rivets
- Nameplates

Industrial control panel enclosures or enclosures for subdistribution boards made from non-conductive material (e.g. plastic) may contain devices that are installed on metallic mounting panels. In this case, the mounting panels shall be bonded to the grounding equipment (protective bonding) circuit (see also chapter Requirements of NFPA 79 for grounding machinery (Page 207)).

Note

In their installation instructions, some manufacturers of components and subassemblies require these to be grounded using special means to ensure that they function efficiently. If this is explicitly required, bonding to the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit shall be established.

Equipment grounding terminal

Each incoming supply circuit conductor shall have its own grounding terminal. This shall be located in the vicinity of the associated phase conductors.

All equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuits and, where applicable, assemblies and components shall be connected to the system grounding terminal.

Example:



Figure 8-2 Equipment grounding terminals for the incoming supply circuit conductor

The terminal shall be sized so that a minimum cross section can be connected (as specified in the table below, "Minimum size of equipment grounding conductors and bonding jumpers").

If a ground electrode is provided for auxiliary circuits, the equipment grounding terminal shall be able to include these additional grounding conductors.

Table 8-2 Minimum size of equipment grounding conductors and bonding jumpers

Rating or set value of automatic overcurrent device in circuit ahead of the equipment (not exceeding amperes)	Copper conductor size (AWG or kcmil)
10	16
15	14
20	12
30	10
40	10
60	10
100	8
200	6
300	4
400	3
500	2
600	1
800	1/0
1000	2/0
1200	3/0
1600	4/0
2000	250
2 500	350
3000	400
4000	500
5000	700
6000	800

Source: NFPA 79, Table 8.2.2.3

Equipment grounding (protective) conductors and bonding jumpers

Note

According to NFPA 79, equipment grounding (protective) conductors and bonding jumpers shall be made of copper. Aluminum is not permitted.

When installed, grounding conductors and their associated bonding jumpers may be insulated, covered, or bare (non-insulated). Sufficient protection against mechanical damage shall be provided.

The cross sections of grounding conductors and bonding jumpers shall not be smaller than the required minimum cross section according to Table 8-2 Minimum size of equipment grounding conductors and bonding jumpers (Page 210). However, a cross section that is larger than the cross section of the circuit conductors supplying the equipment shall not be required.

Equipment grounding (protective) conductors and bonding jumpers shall be identified as described in Chapter General requirements (Page 199) and Chapter Identification and color (Page 277).

Continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit

The continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit shall only be ensured by effective connections through conductors. Structural, supporting, and conductive parts of the machine shall no longer be used for the purposes of maintaining continuity. The same applies to raceways, wireways, and cable trays.

If devices have to be removed from the system (for routine maintenance, for example), this should not result in an interruption of the continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit as far as the remaining parts and subassemblies are concerned. This also applies if there is a junction at this point. If an equipment grounding (protective) conductor is disconnected, this shall not result in an interruption to the junction.

Bonding of equipment with bolts or other identified means shall be permitted if paint and dirt are removed from the joint surfaces or the bonded members are effectively penetrated.

In the event that grounding terminals for parts and subassemblies are not provided, it should be ensured that the electrical contact point is established independently of the plate or metal fastening mechanisms.

NOTICE
Damage to property
The use of different metals at the contact point can lead to electro-chemical corrosion.

Note

Doors and covers

Where electrical devices (indicator lights, pushbuttons, displays, etc.) are mounted on doors or covers, bonding shall be established between these doors and covers to the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit. This can either be a connection to the enclosure or to an equipment grounding terminal.

Portable, pendant, and resilient-mounted equipment shall be bonded by separate conductors. Where multiconductor cable is used, the bonding conductor shall be included as one conductor of the cable.

Exclusion of switching and overcurrent protection devices

The equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit shall not be interrupted under any circumstances. For this reason, the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit shall not contain any switching devices or overcurrent protective devices (e.g. fuses).

Separable connections (such as those provided in draw-out equipment, separable by means of an attachment plug) shall ensure that the equipment grounding (protective) conductor is the first point of contact made when making, and the last to be broken when disconnecting ("First make – last break")

Connecting points for equipment grounding (protective) conductors

All equipment grounding (protective) conductors shall have their own connecting point. This ensures that the connection to other system parts and assemblies is not interrupted unintentionally when an equipment grounding (protective) conductor is removed.

The connecting points are identified as described in Chapter General requirements (Page 199).

Control circuits

Control circuits shall be permitted to be **grounded** or **ungrounded**.

Grounded control circuits

When the control circuit is grounded, the grounding must take place as closely as possible to the secondary side of the control transformer (AC) or network devices (DC).

Contacts of disconnecting and switching devices are not allowed in the "grounded conductor" unless both conductors interrupt the control circuit at the same time.

Exceptions:

- Exposed PELV control circuits shall always be grounded. See Chapter Protection by the use of protective extra low voltage (PELV) or NEC Class 2 electric circuits (Page 92).
- Overload relay contacts shall be permitted to be lead in the grounded conductors. Prerequisite for this is that the control circuit does not leave the control panel.

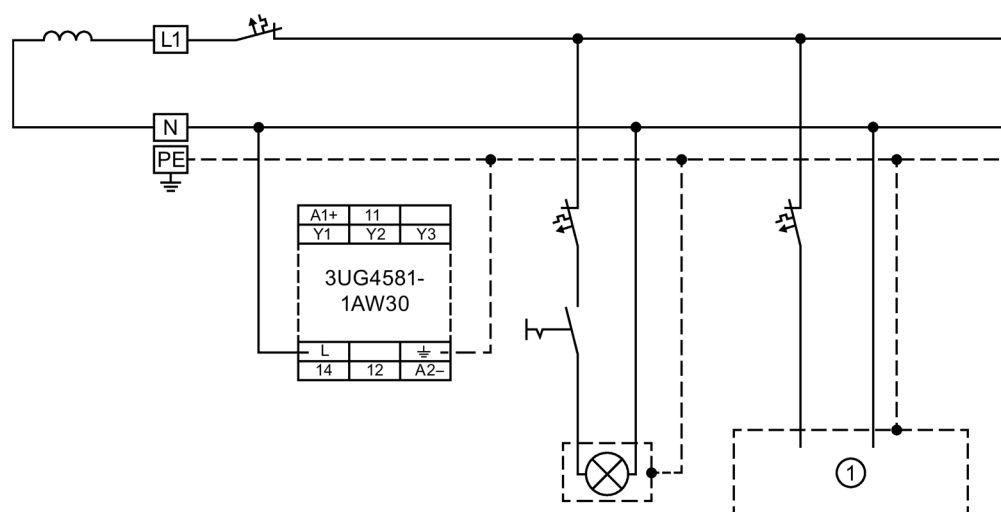
Ungrounded control circuits

Ungrounded control circuits shall be provided with an insulation monitoring device that meets the following requirements:

- A ground fault is indicated (visually, acoustically). The fault shall be rectified within a reasonable period of time.
- The circuit is interrupted automatically.

In the event of a double ground fault, this is intended to prevent important actuators (such as EMERGENCY OFF switches) from being bypassed unnoticed during normal operation.

See the figure below.



① Loads

Figure 8-3 Ungrounded control circuits

Also compare the UL 508A requirements in Chapter Requirements of UL 508A for grounding the industrial control panel (Page 201), Section "Ungrounded circuits".

Lighting circuits

Lighting circuits for machine lighting or maintenance shall be grounded. Identification shall be carried out as described in Chapter Identification and color (Page 277).

Where the lighting circuit is supplied by a separate isolation transformer, the secondary side shall be connected directly to the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit.

Grounded conductors, where run to a screw-shell lampholder, shall be connected to the screw-shell. See the figure below.

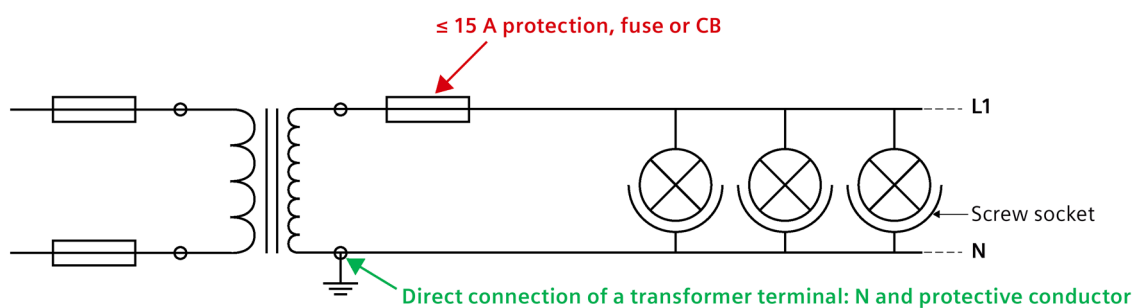


Figure 8-4 Lighting circuits

Control circuit functions

9.1 Start and stop functions

Start functions

Start functions shall operate by energizing the relevant circuit. This means that a device (such as a converter/drive, magnetic motor controller or circuit breaker) is activated by the generation of a signal. Interrupting a signal in order to activate a start function is not permitted.

Stop functions

Stop functions shall operate by de-energizing that relevant circuit, and shall override related start functions. The reset of the stop functions shall not initiate any hazardous conditions.

NFPA 79 defines three different categories for controlling electrical actuators with the aim of stopping them.

These categories do not make a distinction between an emergency measure (EMERGENCY STOP) and an operational measure (e.g. service and maintenance). In addition, the 0, 1, and 2 classifications do not denote any particular priority or rank. As a result, the stopping process shall always be carried out for the entire actuator, not just the electrical part of the equipment.

Table 9- 1 Stop categories

Category	Aspects		
	Energy supply	Delay	Stopping
Category 0 stop	Immediate interruption	Uncontrolled	No control
Category 1 stop	Interruption once the specified position is reached	Controlled delay via the control system	No control
Category 2 stop	No interruption	Controlled delay via the control system	Ensured by the actuator control system

9.2 Operating modes

Each machine shall be permitted to have one or more operating modes.

The operating modes for a machine are defined according to the following criteria:

- Type of machine
- Area of application (automatic and manual operation, service and maintenance, setup mode, etc.)

No hazardous conditions shall be created and no machine operation shall be initiated as a result of the mode selection. Machine functions shall be initiated separately after selecting the operating mode.

If necessary, inadvertent mode selection shall be prevented by the use of a key-operated switch or an access code.

Indication of the selected and set operating mode shall be provided (e.g. position of the mode selector switch, visual display indication, indicating light).

9.3 Overriding safety functions and protective devices

Where it is necessary to temporarily override one or more safeguards.

A mode selection device or means capable of being secured (e.g. locked) in the desired mode shall be provided to prevent automation operation. In addition one or more of the following measures shall be provided:

- Initiation of motion only by a Hold-to-run device (which automatically reverts to its original position upon release) or other control device
- A portable control station (e.g. pendant) with an EMERGENCY STOP device shall be provided. The control station shall come with an enabling function. Where a portable station is used, motion shall only initiated from that station.
- Limiting the range of motion
- Limiting the speed or power of motion

9.4 Operation

General information

All necessary safety functions and protective measures (e.g. interlocks) required for safe operation shall be provided.

The safety functions and protective measures are generally derived from the risk assessment carried out beforehand.

Safety functions according to ISO 12100

Function of a machine whose failure may lead to a direct increase of the risk(s).

These safety functions are active precautions designed to ensure that a machine is working in its intended environment and that its safety-related functions are only executed within permissible limits.

Protective measures according to ISO 12100

Technical measures using protective equipment to protect personnel against hazards or risks. Protective measures are required in the following cases:

- Hazards that cannot be adequately removed by means of inherently safe design.
- When risks cannot be sufficiently reduced.

Protective measures are passive precautions and their primary function is not to operate the machine. They are actually additional measures that are intended to protect individuals.

Further measures shall also be taken to prevent unintentional or unexpected machine movements.

Examples:

- Cancellation of a locked-off condition
- Fault in the power supply
- Battery replacement
- Loss of control signals with cableless control systems

9.4.1 Start

It shall only be possible to start an operation once all safety functions and safeguards are in place. If the conditions for cancelation are met (see Chapter Overriding safety functions and protective devices (Page 217)), however, then this constitutes an exception.

Depending on the structure, function, and area of operation, it may not be possible to apply protective measures adequately. If this is the case, it shall only be possible to perform operation via a manual hold-to-run switch and, where applicable, the controls shall be enabled beforehand.

Interlocks shall be provided to ensure correct sequential starting, e.g. sequential process steps.

Machines with multiple control stations

On machines requiring the use of more than one control station to initiate a start, the following criteria shall be met:

- Each control station shall have a separate manually actuated start control device.
- All required conditions for operating the machine shall be met.
- All start control devices shall be in the "OFF" position (released position/normally-open function) before a start can be initiated.
- All start control devices shall be actuated at the same time, but not necessarily synchronously. This means that the switch-on commands shall overlap at a particular point in time.

9.4.2 Stop

The term "Stop" is used to refer to all stop commands, regardless of whether these are initiated manually or automated by the control system.

The three stop categories are described in Chapter "Start and stop functions (Page 215)".

Note

The stop category to be applied shall be defined by the risk assessment and the functional requirements of the machine.

Recommendations for the use of stop categories

Category 0 stop is used particularly in cases where faults are present in the power supply or control system. The logic behind this is that Categories 1 or 2 may no longer be functional in such cases.

Category 1 stop is recommended in the following cases:

- When external influences are present.
- If the machine needs to be stopped for operational reasons, but the equipment (e.g. motors) need to be stopped with care because the brakes are not available, for example.

Category 2 stop can be used in cases where the process requires a specific position to be maintained after stopping. This position requires, for example, a holding torque that shall be applied by the motor.

NFPA 79 requires the following:

- Each machine shall be equipped with a stop category. Determining the suitable categories 0, 1 or 2 as well as their selection must take place as part of the risk evaluation.
- Categories 0 and 1 stops shall be operational regardless of the operating mode.
- Category 0 shall always take priority.

9.4.3 Operations in the event of an emergency (EMERGENCY STOP, EMERGENCY OFF)

General information

This section specifies more details on the two operations used in the event of an emergency, EMERGENCY STOP and EMERGENCY OFF.

The requirement for this is always:

- A conscious, human action and decision. The process shall only require a single human action.
If the same process is performed by a machine control system, this is not considered to be an EMERGENCY STOP or EMERGENCY OFF as it does not involve conscious, human action.
- The command issued shall be stored until the process is reset by a conscious, human action.
- The system shall be reset to the state it was in before the action was initiated. This also applies in cases where multiple EMERGENCY STOP or EMERGENCY OFF buttons are actuated at different points on the machine.

In addition to the requirements for stop, the emergency stop shall have the following requirements:

- It shall override all other functions and operations in all modes.
- Power to the machine actuators, which causes a hazardous condition, shall be removed as quickly as possible without creating other hazards.
- Resetting a stop command in the event of an emergency should only permit restarting, it should not be possible to restart the machinery.

Note

EMERGENCY OFF and EMERGENCY STOP serve exclusively as additional, supplementary protective measures and not as primary, risk-minimizing measures. It is not possible to assume that people who are able to assess the risks concerned will always be at the site when a risk arises.

As a result, **NFPA 79** recommends the following:

- **ISO 12100:** Safety of machinery – General principles for design – Risk assessment and risk reduction for the risk assessment and risk reduction
 - **ISO 13850:** Safety of machines - emergency stop function - for the principles of design for EMERGENCY STOP and functional aspects for machines
-

Selecting a stop category in the event of an emergency

EMERGENCY STOP (Emergency Stop)

An EMERGENCY STOP shall function as either a Category 0 or Category 1. The choice of the category of the emergency stop shall be determined by the risk assessment of the machine.

Exception

In some cases it can be required that the energy supply must not be interrupted after the controlled stop to avoid additional risks. The state after the stop has to be monitored and the energy supply must only be disconnected after detecting the fault.

Final removal of power to the machine actuators shall be ensured. Therefore, Category 2 is not permitted. This interruption shall be ensured by means of electromechanical components, although these do not necessarily require the properties of a disconnecter. If electromechanical switching devices (such as magnetic motor controllers and relays) are used to meet the requirements of Category 0, for example, these shall be non-retentive relays.

Exception

Power electronics devices (such as drives or solid-state contactors) shall only be allowed to interrupt the power supply if they have been tested in accordance with the relevant standards.

Note

IEC 61508 and IEC 61800-5-2 are standards for drives used in the context of safety-related functions.

EMERGENCY OFF (Emergency Switching OFF)

The EMERGENCY OFF function can be used in all cases where electrical voltage presents an immediate hazard. Above all, it is used if protection against direct contact has been achieved only by placing out of reach or by obstacles. Examples of this include collector wires/bars, control gear in electrical operating areas, and slip-ring assemblies.

Only Category 0 is available for selection in the case of EMERGENCY OFF, as the incoming supply circuit conductor is required to be immediately disconnected in this case. EMERGENCY OFF primarily involves eliminating hazards that are caused directly by electricity.

This may even be required under load, which means that power electronics devices are not allowed to be used. Only electromechanical industrial control equipment with appropriate load-switching behavior is allowed to be used. This does not necessarily require the properties of a disconnecting device, however, which means that even magnetic motor controllers, for example, are allowed to be used for this purpose.

Where the machine cannot tolerate the Category 0 stop for EMERGENCY OFF due to safety reasons, it shall be necessary to provide other measures so that the EMERGENCY OFF function is no longer necessary. These include appropriate and adequate protective measures that prevent direct contact with live parts.

Note

EMERGENCY OFF and its functional aspects are described in **IEC 60364-5-53**.

Control equipment

10.1 Enclosure type ratings

The protection of control equipment in enclosures shall be adequate, taking into account the external influences under which the machine is intended to operate. This includes the location and physical environmental conditions, including dust, coolants, and swarf. The primary concern in this case is providing protection against the ingress of foreign objects and liquids.

Enclosure type ratings are designed to protect equipment not only against external environmental influences, but also against direct contact. See Chapter Basic protection (protection against direct touching) (Page 83). For this reason, enclosures containing electrical equipment shall provide a minimum protection of NEMA type 1 (similar to UL Enclosure Type 1).

Exception

The minimum degree of enclosure protection, NEMA Type 1, is not required for removable collectors on collector wire or collector bar systems; in these cases, NEMA Type 1 is not practicable or achievable. Instead, adequate covers should be attached to ensure protection against direct contact.

The following information refers essentially to the requirements of UL 508A, and NFPA 79.

The IP enclosure types common in IEC standards are found in the IEC 60529 standard.

UL enclosure types

Requirement

Enclosure accessories, such as ventilators (fans), air conditioners, heaters, and so on, shall be UL-approved.

Most manufacturers of UL-listed enclosures have also approved all necessary accessories and tested these accordingly.

Peculiarities

The enclosure type ratings are specified both in the NEC and by UL with type numbers (e.g. Type 12). In most manufacturers' catalogs, however, the enclosure type rating is indicated with the NEMA designation (e.g. NEMA Type 12 (NEMA ICS-6)).

Note

- Comparison of UL and NEMA: An enclosure built in accordance with NEMA (standard ICS-6) is not automatically UL-listed. It shall be examined by UL for the enclosure type rating (UL Enclosure Type 1) and tested (UL type 3R, 12, etc.).
- For UL/NEMA type 1: If there are uninsulated, live conductors in the industrial control panel, the panel shall have a cover to protect against falling dirt. (UL 508A)

10.1 Enclosure type ratings

- UL 508A – swing-out panels (only for "Industrial Control Panels for use in Industrial Machinery"). It shall be possible for these panels to swing out by more than 110 degrees. (UL 508A)
- In UL 508A – 3RX, 3SX, and 3X are type 3 with extra corrosion protection requirements.

"Enclosure ratings" for "Non-Hazardous" locations

Table 10- 1 List of all currently applicable "Enclosure ratings" for "Non-Hazardous" locations

Comparison of specific applications of enclosures for indoor and outdoor non-hazardous locations																
Provides a degree of protection against the following environmental conditions	Type of enclosure															
	1	2	3	3X	3R	3RX	3S	3SX	4	4X	5	6	6P	12	12 K	13
Access to hazardous devices:	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Falling dirt	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Dripping and light splashing of non-corrosive liquids	-	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Rain, snow and sleet ^a	-	-	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	-	●	●	-	-	-
Rain, snow and sleet ^b	-	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Circulating dust, lint, fibers, and flyings ^c	-	-	●	●	-	-	●	●	●	●	-	●	●	●	●	●
Settling airborne dust, lint, fibers, and flyings ^d	-	-	●	●	-	-	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Wind-blown dust	-	-	●	●	-	-	●	●	●	●	-	●	●	-	-	-
Hosedown and splashing water	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	-	●	●	-	-	-
Oil and coolant seepage	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	●
Oil or coolant spraying and splashing	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	●
Corrosive agents	-	-	-	●	-	●	-	●	-	●	-	-	●	-	-	-
Occasional short submersion	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	●	●	-	-	-
Occasional prolonged submersion	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	●	-	-	-

^a External operating mechanisms are not required to be operable when the enclosure is ice-covered.

^b External operating mechanisms are operable when the enclosure is ice-covered.

^c These fibers and flyings are nonhazardous materials and are not considered Class III type ignitable fibers or combustible flyings.

Source: UL 50E

The following American standard terms include the following enclosure types (source: NFPA 79, Annex):

Raintight	3, 3S, 3SX, 4, 4X, 6, and 6P
Rainproof	3R and 3RX
Watertight	4, 4X, 6 and 6P
Driptight	2, 5, 12, 12K, und 13
Dusttight	3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 5, 12, 12K and 13

Detailed description of these American terms can be found in the NEC manual.

IP degrees of protection can be found in the IEC60529. They are, however, not a replacement for the enclosure type ratings.

Fitting devices in industrial control panel openings

Devices which are fitted in industrial control panel openings shall be of the same Enclosure Type rating or higher (e.g. operating handles, ammeters and voltmeters, pushbuttons, indicator lights, fans, filters, and fasteners for openings, etc.). The definitions of device enclosure types and the permissible enclosure type ratings of devices for installation in enclosure openings are specified in UL 508A.

Table 10- 2 Openings for conduit connections in enclosures with environmental rating other than Type 1

Enclosure type (Column 1)	Required construction (Column 2)
2, 3R, 3RX	a) All holes for conduit shall be below all uninsulated live parts; or b) Conduit openings below the lowest uninsulated live parts shall be provided with conduit fittings having an environmental rating that complies with Table 19.2; or c) The enclosure shall be marked as in 53.2 with instructions for the installer to apply fittings complying with (a) or (b).
3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 5, 12, 12K	d) All holes for conduit shall be provided with conduit fittings having an environmental rating that complies with Table 19.2 or as specified by the enclosure manufacturer; or e) The enclosure shall be marked as in 53.3 with instructions for the installer to apply fittings complying with (d).
6, 6P	f) All holes for conduit shall be provided with conduit fittings having an environmental rating that complies with Table 19.2.
13	g) All holes for conduit shall be provided with conduit fittings having an environmental rating that complies with Table 19.2; or h) No conduit openings shall exist.

Source: UL 508A, Table 19.1

10.1 Enclosure type ratings

Table 10- 3 Openings for components in enclosures with environmental rating other than Type 1

Enclosure type	Openings are able to be closed by equipment marked
2 ^a	2, 3, 3R, 3RX, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 5, 6, 6P, 12, 12K, 13, "Wet Location" or "Raintight"
3	3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 6, 6P
3R ^b	3, 3R, 3RX, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 6, 6P, "Wet Location" or "Raintight"
3RX	3RX, 3SX, 3X, 4X
3S ^c	3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 6, 6P
3SX ^c	3SX, 3X, 4X
3X	3SX, 3X, 4X
4	4, 4X, 6, 6P
4X	4X, 6P
5	3, 3R, 3RX, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 5, 6, 6P, 12, 12K, 13, "Wet Location" or "Raintight"
6	6, 6P
6P	6P
12, 12K	12, 12K, 13
13	13

^a Type 1 components, ventilation openings, or observation windows are able to be installed when their profile outside the enclosure is completely protected by the drip shield from water dripping vertically downward from above.

^b Components marked "Weatherproof" or "Rainproof" are able to be installed below all other live parts within the enclosure.

^c Components with external operating mechanisms shall be Type 3S or 3SX for use on a Type 3S enclosure, or Type 3SX for use on a Type 3SX enclosure.

Source: UL 508A, Table 19.2

Fitting devices with different ratings in one enclosure

If devices with other ratings are installed in one enclosure, and if these combinations are not covered in UL 508A, Table 19.1 and 19.2 (alternative applications), the resulting rating of the overall enclosure is given in the table below.

Table 10- 4 Alternative enclosure ratings

Enclosure type (including components and fittings that comply with Tables 19.1/19.2) (Column 1)	Component/fitting ratings that do not comply with Tables 19.1/19.2) (Column 2)	Resulting enclosure rating (Column 3)
3, 3RX, 3S, 3SX, 3X,4, 4X, 6, 6P	3R, "Wet Location", "Raintight", "Weatherproof" ^c , "Rainproof" ^c	3R ^{a,b,c}
4X	3RX, 3SX, 3X	3RX ^{a, b}
4, 4X, 6, 6P	3, 3S	3 ^b
4X	3X, 3SX	3X ^b
6, 6P	4, 4X	4
6P	6	6
13	12, 12K	12
12, 12K, 13	3, 3S, 4, 4X, 5, 6, 6P, "Wet Location", "Raintight"	5 ^b

^a When a drain is added.

^b When provision is made for locking the door (such as a loop for padlock, key-locking type handle or latch), or tools are required to open the enclosure.

^c Components marked "Weatherproof" or "Rainproof" shall be installed below all other live parts within the enclosure. Openings for conduit or conduit fittings shall comply with note a, b, or c in UL 508A, Table 19.1 for Type 3R enclosures.

Source: UL 508A, Table 19.3

If the combination of ratings (enclosure and installed equipment) also does not correspond to the table above, the enclosure shall be marked with the rating "Enclosure Type 1".

Note

Siemens built-in devices have a multitude of IP and NEMA/UL enclosure type ratings for most diverse applications.

Comparison of IP code and NEMA Enclosure Types

A comparison between IP codes and enclosure ratings is nothing more than a rough estimation because the tests and the pass and fail criteria are different. The table below gives you an overview of the different enclosure types. The correlation was published by NEMA.

The two tables below are intended to help users in orientation and when comparing the two rating concepts. Conversion between the enclosure types without further tests of the respective standard is not possible.

According to UL, enclosures with IP data alone are automatically awarded Enclosure Type rating 1 only, whatever the level of their IP protection.

Table 10- 5 Examples of enclosure ratings; comparison between Enclosure Type Rating and IP (Ingress Protection) rating

NEMA		Place of installation (typical application)	Protection against	Comparable IP rating
Type				
1	General use	Indoors	Accidental contact with live parts and ingress of falling dirt	IP 20
2	Protection against dripping water	Indoors	Ingress of dripping water and falling dirt	IP 22
3R	Rain, hail, ice	Outdoors (starter for pump)	Ingress of dust and rain blown by the wind, and protection from icing over	IP 54
4	Dustproof, waterproof	Indoor/outdoor (food industry)	Ingress of falling rain, splash water, and jet water, no damage should ice form	IP 65
4X	Dustproof, waterproof, resistant to corrosion	Indoor/outdoor (water treatment plants, manure production)	Ingress of falling rain, splash water, and jet-water, no damage should ice form, anti-corrosion protection	Not available
12	Protection against dripping water, dustproof, oil and cooling water-proof	Indoors (machine tools)	Ingress of dripping water, dust, oil, and cooling liquid	IP 54 (IP 55)
13	Protection against dripping water, dustproof, oil and cooling water-proof	Indoors (command devices on machine tools)	Ingress of dripping water, dust, spraying oil, and cooling liquid	IP 54+

The only common features between enclosure type ratings and IP ratings are:

- Personal protection against devices and components inside the enclosure that are dangerous to touch.
- Protection for devices inside the enclosure against the ingress of foreign bodies, including dust.
- Protection for devices inside the enclosure against the ingress of water.

Enclosures with only one IP code do not correspond with the additional requirements of NEMA 250 and its Enclosure Type ratings. NEMA 250 specifies further exclusive requirements for enclosures that are only identified with one IP code, meaning that Enclosure Type ratings cannot be used.

As there are fewer IP code requirements, allowing them to be considered as covered by the Enclosure Type ratings according to NEMA 250, a conservative IP Rating can be added alongside an Enclosure Type rating. The NFPA 79 Assignment of IP-Ratings to Type-Rated Enclosures table can be used to help determine this. The optional letters in the IP code are not taken into consideration in such cases.

In many practical applications, the enclosures are generally provided with an IP code and an Enclosure Type rating, and have thus been tested for the requirements of both.

Table 10- 6 NFPA 79 Table F.5.5 "Assignment of IP-ratings to type-rated enclosures"

A	NEMA enclosure type													B
IP first character	1	2	3	3R	3S	4	4X	5	6	6P	12	12K	13	IP second character
IP0_	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	IP_0
IP1_	A	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	IP_1
IP2_		B	AB	B	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	IP_2
IP3_			AB	B	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	IP_3
IP4_			AB	B	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	AB	IP_4
IP5_			AB		AB	AB	AB	A	AB	AB	A	A	A	IP_5
IP6_			A		A	AB	AB		AB	AB				IP_6
Not applicable									B	B				IP_7
Not applicable										B				IP_8

A: The first IP character designation is the protection against access to hazardous parts and solid foreign objects. The respective NEMA enclosure type meets the requirements for the IEC 60529 IP first character designation.

B: The IP second character designation is the protection against ingress of water. The respective NEMA enclosure type meets the requirements for the IEC 60529 IP second character designation.

Notes:

- (1) Type-rated enclosures for hazardous locations and potentially explosive areas have been excluded from the table. The additional and supplementary letters for IP-ratings have also been excluded from the table. (See NEMA 250, ANSI/UL 508 and IEC 60529.)
- (2) This table should be used only to assign an IP-rating to a type-rated enclosure, and not to assign a type-rating to an IP-rated enclosure. This table assists in specifying enclosure ratings and should not be used as a definitive guide. For example, if the conditions of installation require an IP55, this table indicates that Type 3, 3S, 4, 4X, 6 or 6P enclosure can be utilized. However, if the conditions of installation require a NEMA Type 4, an enclosure that is only IP-rated cannot be used as a substitute.
- (3) Although the corresponding NEMA type-ratings meet or exceed the corresponding IP-ratings as indicated in the table, the IEC does not currently accept these type-ratings without further IEC testing.

Source: NFPA 79, Table F.5.5

10.2 Working space

NFPA 79 specifies set minimum distances and requirements for access to and operating ranges of industrial control panels and compartments that have a maximum voltage of 1000 V and can undergo maintenance, testing, adjustment, or servicing while live.

Essentially, it shall be ensured that sufficient access and working space shall be provided to enable the doors or hinged panels on industrial control panels and compartments to be opened by at least 90°.

Working space depth

The working space depth in the direction of access to live parts shall be not less than indicated in the following table: "Working space depth". Distances shall be measured from the industrial control panel or compartment front or opening to live parts.

Table 10- 7 Working space depth

Nominal voltage line – ground	Typical supply voltages line – line	Minimum clear distance		
		Condition 1	Condition 2	Condition 3
0 ... 150	120 ³ , 120 / 240 ³ , 208 Y / 120 V; 240Δ 3.) Single phase	900 mm (3 ft)	900 mm (3 ft)	900 mm (3 ft)
151 ... 600	480 (Δ or Y) 600 (Δ or Y)	900 mm (3 ft)	1.0 m (3½ ft)	1.2 m (4 ft)
601 ... 1000	-	900 mm (3 ft)	1.2 m (4 ft)	1.5 m (5 ft)

Condition 1: Exposed, live parts on one side and no live or grounded parts on the other side of the working space. Or exposed, live parts on both sides effectively guarded by insulating materials. Insulated wire or insulated bus bars operating at not over 300 V to ground shall not be considered live parts.

Condition 2: Exposed, live parts on one side and a grounded surface on the other side. Concrete, brick, or tile walls shall be considered as grounded.

Condition 3: Exposed, live parts on both sides of the working space (not guarded as provided in "**Condition 1**") with the operator between.

Exceptions to the minimum working space

- On the sides or back of industrial control panels or compartments, if:
 - no renewable or adjustable parts are installed
 - all connections are accessible from locations other than the back or sides.

Where rear access is required to work on de-energized parts on the back of enclosed industrial control panels, a minimum working space of 762 mm (2.5 ft) horizontally shall be provided.

- If exposed parts are operated with a maximum voltage of 50 VAC or 60 VDC, a working space depth of 762 mm (2.5 ft) or less is permitted.

- The minimum working spaces under condition 2 are permitted for:
 - Industrial control panels and compartments located across the aisle from each other
 - Industrial control panels and compartments arranged across from non-machinery-associated switchgear, panelboards, or motor control centers.The maintenance and supervision conditions ensure that written procedures have been adopted to prohibit the affected equipment doors on both sides of the aisle from being open at the same time. In addition, qualified persons who are authorized will service the installation.
- The minimum working spaces under "**Condition 1**" are permitted for industrial control panels and compartments that are arranged across the aisle from each other or across from a grounded surface, and all associated industrial control panel or compartment devices and equipment operating at > 50 VAC or 60 VDC are separately enclosed, guarded, or constructed so that openings to live parts of the devices and equipment are not greater than 12.5 mm (0.5 in.) diameter.
- A minimum working space of 762 mm (2.5 ft) is permitted if the following five conditions are met:
 - The operating voltage does not exceed 150 V line – line or line – ground.
 - The conditions of maintenance and supervision ensure that only qualified persons will service the installation.
 - Industrial control panels and compartments require a tool to open.
 - Where only diagnostic troubleshooting and testing on live parts are involved.
 - The doors for the industrial control panels or compartments can be opened by at least 90° or are removable.

Working space width

The width of the working space in front of industrial control panels and compartments shall be the greater of the following two minimum widths:

- The width of the industrial control panel enclosure or compartment
- At least 762 mm (30 in.)

Working space height

The minimum height of the working space is 2.0 m (6.5 ft). Other equipment associated with the machine which is installed within this minimum height, is only permitted to extend into the working space by a maximum of 150 mm (6 in.).

Doors for access to the electrical equipment shall be at least 0.7 m (2 ft 4 in.) wide and 2.0 m (6½ ft) high. It shall be possible to open them outwards from the interior without using a key or tool. (Direction of flight in hazardous situations). This also applies, for example, to containers that house the electrical equipment for the machine.

10.3 Access and maintenance

According to NFPA 79 all items of electrical equipment shall be installed in such a way that they can be identified without having to remove them or move the wiring. The same applies to equipment items that require regular maintenance or adjustment without the need to remove machine parts (with the exception of doors or covers) in advance. Identification refers to the conformance of equipment including its associated function with the documentation. This is generally established by means of a label whose information is the same on the equipment as it is in the documentation.

This does not apply for boards and modules, which are sealed or cannot be opened.

Access to terminals and their connected conductors shall be completely unobstructed.

Clearances

Exposed, live parts in industrial control panels with an operating voltage of more than 50 VAC or 60 VDC shall maintain the following clearances:

- At least 13 mm (0.5 in.) to uninsulated enclosure parts, including conduit fittings
- At least 25 mm (1 in.) to uninsulated doors

Maintenance

All devices shall be installed in a way that facilitates their maintenance and operation. Where a special tool is necessary to remove a device, the tool shall be supplied with the machine.

Specifically, the following is recommended:

- An installation height for devices involving normal maintenance and adjustment between 0.4 m (15.75 in.) and 2.0 m (6.5 ft) above the normal floor space
- An installation height for terminals of at least 0.2 m (7.88 in.). The terminals shall be arranged in a way that allows the conductors to be connected easily.

Connections and screws

To attach the components to the subplate, threaded fasteners with machine threads shall be used.

In this case, the following minimum thicknesses shall be ensured for the subplates:

- Steel subplates: At least 2 full threads

Exception: A screw with 32 threads per 25.4 mm (1 inch) may be screwed into a steel mounting panel with a minimum thickness of 1.35 mm (0.053 inch).

- Aluminum subplates: At least 3 full threads

Assuming the requirements specifying 2 or 3 threads for steel and aluminum subplates have been met, thread-forming or thread-cutting screws shall be permitted.

Rivets, sheet metal screws, welds, solders, or bonding materials shall not be used to mount components to a subplate.

Exception: Smooth, flat rivets shall be permitted to be used for attaching cable ducts and mounting rails.

Swing-out enclosure panels

Industrial control panels are becoming increasingly compact. In cases where this requires devices to be arranged in two vertical tiers, one on top of the other, it shall be possible to swing out the front tier. It shall also be possible to swing out the frame and enclosure panels by at least 110°. As a result, it shall be easy to access items of equipment situated behind swing frames.

Plug-in connections

Plugs and plug sockets which are used during operation must be attached in an easily accessible manner.

Busbars

Busbars must be attached securely and must fulfill the increased clearances and creepage distances in the feeder circuit at all uninsulated parts (see also Chapter Through air and over surface spacings (Page 54)).

Note

It is recommended to use busbars with covers for the contact prevention.

10.4 Separation and grouping

10.4.1 Separation

NFPA 79 advocates strict separation between electrical equipment parts and coolant/oil reservoirs in enclosures and compartments. Compartments that open downward (open to the floor) are not permitted, whether to the foundation upon which the machine rests, or to other compartments that are not clean and dry. The same applies to pipelines, tubing, or devices for handling air, gases, or liquids.

Exception:

- Devices for cooling the electronic devices
- Pipelines, tubings and devices that are an integral part of checked and listed (e.g. UL-listed) equipment and are also separated by suitable barriers

Experience has shown that using a mixture of electrical and non-electrical items of equipment can have a significant effect on operational safety.

This requirement is based on two key **principles**:

1. Maintenance and adjustments on non-electrical equipment may, where necessary, be carried out by people who are laypersons in terms of their knowledge of electrotechnical equipment. If electrical and non-electrical equipment is arranged together in the same compartment, this may, under certain circumstances, expose these electrotechnical laypersons to increased risk.
2. If defects should arise in non-electrical equipment (e.g. pipelines, pipes, or valves that carry gases or liquids), this may have a considerable impact on the electrical equipment and its functions. In addition, it may become increasingly difficult to eliminate any other potential hazards that could arise from these defects (e.g. Arc Flash, see Chapter Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing) (Page 95)).

For the purpose of separating electrical and non-electrical equipment, there are various Enclosure Type ratings that relate to the principles listed above and may be applied between the equipment parts:

- Separation with an Enclosure Type rating of at least type 1 to ensure protection against accidental contact during maintenance work. (See principle 1.)
- If liquids and/or gases are present in the vicinity of non-electrical equipment, which in some cases may also still be under pressure, a high enclosure type (e.g. Enclosure Type 12 or 13) is recommended for separation purposes.

For "mixed" (electrical and non-electrical) parts in a subassembly (e.g. in the case of valves), there are additional aspects to consider. It is recommended that electrical valves for controlling liquids are situated in the non-electrical section, for example. Electrical valves that only control compressed air could be placed in the electrical section, as the consequences in the event of a defect are less significant than in the case of liquids.

10.4.2 Grouping

According to NFPA 79 control devices shall be grouped separately depending on the supply voltage. Devices that are connected to the supply voltage (and which may also be connected to the control voltage) shall be arranged in groups and separated from devices that are only connected to the control voltage.

A similar principle applies to terminals and terminal strips: Separation shall be established for terminals for power circuits and associated control circuits, as well as control circuits supplied by other external sources (e.g. interlocking control circuits).

Terminals may be arranged adjacently, provided that each group is readily identified (e.g., by markings, by use of different sizes, by use of barriers, by colors). (For example, see the figure below "Grouping and separating terminals for the connection of external conductors")

These requirements are designed to ensure a neat, isolated wiring system, particularly in respect of the insulation resistance and the requirements relating to this (see Chapter Wiring practice (Page 279)), and to make it easier to identify components. This is particularly important for circuits that are capable of remaining live even when the main control switch is switched off (see Chapter Identification and color (Page 277) and Chapter Excepted circuits (Page 76)).

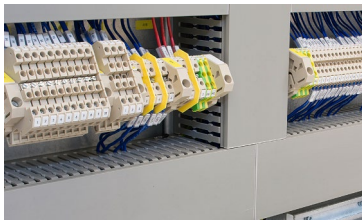


Figure 10-1 Grouping and separating terminals for the connection of external conductors

Where components are grouped, however, it is also essential to consider the interaction between the resulting power losses of the electrical equipment parts. On a general level, the NFPA 79 standard only requires that the permissible ambient temperature shall remain within the limits specified by the device manufacturer.

10.5 Enclosures, doors, and openings

NFPA 79 requires that the enclosure shall withstand the mechanical, electrical and thermal stresses encountered during operation. It is therefore crucial for the design and materials to be suitable for this. This applies not only to industrial control panel enclosures, but also to field devices, motor enclosures, and even electrical equipment that is housed in a container.

Corrosion protection is covered by the standard enclosure types. If additional corrosion protection is required, however, this is permitted for non-metallic enclosures that meet the criteria of the standard UL 50, UL 50E. In the most basic of cases, checking the relevant product certificate (issued by UL, for example) will suffice.

For subplates with a surface area greater than 1.5484 m² (2400 in.²), additional supports shall be installed in addition to the standard mounting means. This provides aid when installing the subplate.

Fasteners of the captive type shall be used to secure doors. The fasteners shall comply with one of the following standards:

- UL 50 Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations
- UL 508 Industrial Control Equipment
- UL 508A Industrial Control Panels
- NEMA 250 Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum)

If necessary, a simple check of the manufacturer's certificate from the testing institute (e.g. UL-Certificate) is also recommended.

NFPA 79 has an entire range of general requirements, relating to aspects such as fastening holes or openings for cable entries. One of the purposes of these is to ensure the relevant enclosure type is maintained consistently throughout the equipment.

It is a general requirement that these openings shall not result in structural changes that diminish the required enclosure type rating. The formation of condensation shall be prevented; and if this is not possible, an adequate drainage system shall be provided. Seals, doors, and covers shall be able to withstand the effects of emerging gases, vapors, or liquids and shall not diminish the enclosure type rating.

Accessories for securing the doors and covers shall not have a negative impact on the enclosure type, even when these are removed for maintenance. The accessories shall be securely connected to the door, cover, or enclosure.

In addition, strict separation shall be established between electrical equipment and parts which contain coolants, lubricants, and hydraulic fluids. See also Chapter Separation (Page 236).

NFPA 79 also has a general requirement for equipment which, during normal or abnormal operation, is capable of attaining surface temperatures sufficient to cause a fire hazard or have a harmful effect on the enclosure material.

The following requirements apply in this case:

- Installation in an enclosure that can withstand such temperatures without fire hazards or harmful effects.
- Installation and location at a sufficient distance from adjacent equipment so as to allow dissipation of heat without creating a hazard. See also Chapter Grouping (Page 237).

Alternatively, screened by a material that can withstand the heat emitted by the equipment without the risk of fire or harmful effects.

However, there are no specific temperatures given in this context. In this case, an example of an abnormal ambient temperature would be one that is over 40 °C; this exceeds the standard area of application for UL 508A and NFPA 79.

10.6 Operator interfaces and control devices

10.6.1 General information

This NFPA 79 contains the requirements for control equipment in conjunction with the electrical equipment of machinery. The functions, types, colors and arrangement of such equipment are described throughout.

Many items of control equipment and operator interfaces are arranged completely outside or partially outside the industrial control panel. Control devices (e.g. pushbuttons, selector switches, indicator lights) shall always be readily accessible. However, control devices shall also be arranged in such a way as to prevent inadvertent or undesired operation.

Since machines are used in many different environments, the NFPA 79 standard encompasses rules on the following topics:

- Selection and use of control devices and operator interfaces
- Location and mounting of control devices and operator interfaces
- Color
- Ambient conditions

NFPA 79 also recommends the two IEC standards for other requirements beyond the scope of the standard with regard to selection, mounting, color, and marking of user interfaces and control devices:

- **IEC 61310-1**

"Safety of machinery - Indication, marking and actuation - Part 1: Requirements for visual, acoustic and tactile signals"

- **IEC 61310-3**

"Safety of machinery - Indication, marking and actuation - Part 3: Requirements for the location and operation of actuators"

10.6.2 Location and mounting

10.6.2.1 Control devices

As far as is practicable, control devices shall always be arranged as ergonomically as possible and shall be readily accessible to facilitate reading, operation, service and maintenance. The normal operating conditions and machine operations shall also be taken into account since the possibility of damage to the control equipment by machine movements (e.g. material handling) shall be minimized.

If the control devices are hand-operated control devices, they shall be installed not less than 2 ft (0.6 m) above the normal standing level of operating personnel. The hand-operated control devices shall be installed in such a way that the operator is not placed in a hazardous situation when operating them, and the danger of accidental, inadvertent operation is minimized.



Figure 10-2 Machine environment

10.6.2.2 Control equipment outside the industrial control panel in the machinery field

Control devices (e.g. limit switches, brakes, solenoids, position sensors) shall be mounted rigidly and arranged in such a way as to exclude accidental operation by the operator, or as a result of machine movements.

The environment shall be as clean and dry as possible in case the devices have not been tested for the respective ambient conditions. In addition, there shall be sufficient protection against mechanical damage. Position sensors such as limit switches and proximity switches shall be installed such that accidental overtravel by the machine will not damage them by, for example, arranging the sensor in parallel with the direction of movement. See the figure "Proximity switch" below.

Suitable cable ducts or conduits are often used for the mechanical protection of incoming supply cables to these external devices installed in the field.

Exception

Prewired devices such as limit switches or proximity switches provided with an identified cable need not be equipped with provisions for termination of conduits. See the figure "Proximity switch" below.

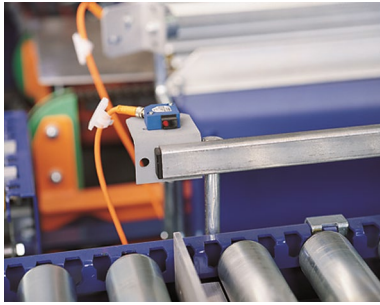


Figure 10-3 Proximity switch

10.6.2.3 Protection

All control devices, operator interfaces, sensors and actuators arranged partially outside the industrial control panel or mounted in the vicinity of the machine shall have a suitable enclosure type rating, and they shall withstand the stresses of expected use created by the respective environmental conditions.

Care shall be taken to select a correspondingly tested protection rating (e.g. Enclosure Type rating). The UL/NEMA Enclosure Types normal in North America are described in the standards ANSI / UL 50, ANSI / UL 508 or NEMA 250 (see also Chapter Enclosure type ratings (Page 225)).

10.6.3 Special features of the individual devices

10.6.3.1 Arrangement of pushbuttons for START

Pushbuttons for STARTING a machine operation shall be positioned either above or to the left of the associated STOP pushbuttons.

Exception

- EMERGENCY STOP buttons
- Series-switched START pushbuttons (e.g. for presses)

10.6.3.2 Foot-operated switches

Foot-operated switches shall be protected against accidental operation, e.g. by falling objects, to avoid the creation of a hazardous situation.

However, if the foot-operated switch is used for the EMERGENCY STOP function, the actuation element shall not be covered.



Figure 10-4 Siemens 3SE2 foot-operated switch with cover

10.6.3.3 Operator controls on pushbuttons and color displays

Design requirements

Pushbuttons are frequently used for initiating a STOP function. In this case, the operator control can be one of the following design versions:

- Mushroom-head type

Example:



Figure 10-5 Siemens 3SU1 mushroom pushbutton

- Extended operator control type that projects beyond the protective ring

Example:



Figure 10-6 Siemens pushbutton 3SU1 with raised button

Color

The color for operator controls of pushbuttons and icons for displays shall be selected according to a specific color scheme. In the table "Colors for the operator controls of pushbuttons" below, the respective meanings of the required colors is shown.

Table 10- 8 Colors for the operator controls of pushbuttons

Identification of pushbuttons	Color
Start / "On"	Prior: Green Optional: Black / white / gray Caution: Red shall not be used.
Stop / "Off"	Prior: Red Optional: Black / white / gray Caution: Green shall not be used! Exception: Position switches with spring rod or rod lever do not have to be red.
EMERGENCY STOP	Red
Pushbuttons with double-assignment (Start and Stop; On and Off)	Black / white / gray Caution: Red, yellow or green shall not be used.
Unusual operating states	Yellow
Hold-to-run switches	Black prior or white/gray/blue
Reset	Blue / black / white / gray Exception: with simultaneous Off / Stop function: Red

Function identification

All operator interfaces shall be provided with a permanent and legible function identification. See Chapter Function identification (Page 330) for further details.

EMERGENCY STOP devices that already meet the requirements of the color scheme (red/yellow) do not absolutely require this additional function identification. More detailed information on this can be found in Chapter Devices and requirements for STOP and EMERGENCY STOP (Page 248).

Colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays

In the table "Colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays" below shows the colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays depending on the machine operation.

Alternative application uses are permitted to display other machine or process states. This is often implemented on signal columns. The recommendation here is to maintain the following order of colors (from top to bottom).



Figure 10-7 Example of Siemens 8WD4 signal column

This is designed to display the meaning by means of the position of the light for service personnel with color blindness problems. Similarly to traffic lights, operating personnel often use not only the color but also the position of the lighting for orientation. In that case, the importance of the information diminishes from top to bottom.

Table 10- 9 Colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays

Color	Description	Explanation	Resulting handling
Red	Emergency	Imminent danger	Instantaneous acting necessary for elimination of danger
Yellow	Abnormal	Abnormal pending critical state	Monitoring and intervening
Blue	Mandatory	Message of a required action	Mandatory action
Green	Normal	Normal operating state	Any additional actions
White	Neutral	Further operating states which are not contained with red, yellow, blue or green	Monitoring

Note

Circuits for indicator lights which point out dangers or warnings must be equipped with equipment to check the function of the indicator lights.

10.6.3.4 Flashing lights

The use of flashing lights shall be permitted to be used for any of the following purposes:

1. To attract attention
2. To request immediate action
3. To indicate a discrepancy between the command and actual states
4. To indicate a change in process (flashing during transition)

For further, detailed information with regard to flashing frequencies and pulse and pause rates, IEC 61310-1 "Safety of machinery - Indication, marking and actuation" is recommended.

10.6.3.5 Illuminated pushbuttons

If pushbuttons with integral lighting are used, the same colors shall be maintained as for pushbuttons, indicators and warning lights.

The required color specifications can be found in Table 10-9 Colors for indicator lights and icons in color displays (Page 246).



Figure 10-8 Siemens illuminated pushbuttons 3SU1

Note

The warning color red for EMERGENCY STOP devices shall not be dependent on the illumination source. This means that even if the light source fails, EMERGENCY STOP devices are still clearly recognizable.

10.6.3.6 Rotary control devices

When installed in operator consoles or control panel doors, for example, devices having a rotational member, such as potentiometers and selector switches, shall be secured not only by means of the created friction. With diminishing friction, safe fixing would be lost.



Figure 10-9 Handle rotary switch

10.6.4 Devices and requirements for STOP and EMERGENCY STOP

10.6.4.1 General information

It shall be possible to operate and access STOP and EMERGENCY STOP devices at all times. STOP and EMERGENCY STOP devices shall always be located at every operator control station.

EMERGENCY STOP devices shall be installed at other locations where required. An EMERGENCY STOP is required on every machine and is always required at the operator control station. See the figure "Example of operator control station with EMERGENCY STOP" below.

The requirements regarding the positions at which an additional EMERGENCY STOP shall be installed can vary widely for different machines. This is usually derived from the result of the risk analysis based on a standard such as ANSI B11 TR3 and TR4 "Standards for machine tools" or IEC 62061 "Safety of machinery" or ISO 13849-1 /-2 "Safety of machinery"



Figure 10-10 Example of operator station with EMERGENCY STOP

NFPA 79 has no detailed definition for the term "operator control station". Rather, this is a general term for the equipment of a machine that is used by the operator to control the different functions of the machine.

Furthermore, EMERGENCY STOP shall not be used as a replacement for a protective measure or another safety function. The EMERGENCY STOP is rather a supplementary protective measure but not a suitable measure for minimizing a risk. The reason for this is that it cannot necessarily be assumed that a person is always in the immediate vicinity to detect the hazard and actuate the EMERGENCY STOP.

10.6.4.2 Types of EMERGENCY STOP devices

The following device types are always approved for EMERGENCY STOP, but are not limited to this:

- Pushbuttons, palm or mushroom-shaped
- Pull-cord-operated switches
- Foot-operated switches without protective covers
- Push-bar-operated switches
- Rod-operated switches

On EMERGENCY STOP devices, the contacts of pushbuttons shall latch mechanically and have positive opening.

Note

Switches with flat actuation or graphical symbols in software applications are not permitted for EMERGENCY STOP.

10.6.4.3 EMERGENCY STOP actuators

The color combination is a primary recognition feature for the actuators on EMERGENCY STOP devices. The following are mandatory and reserved exclusively for this function:

- Actuator: Mushroom head or gross hand form: Red
- Background: Yellow

Note

- The background can be a yellow enclosure of the HMI device. Optionally also a yellow ring stuck, for example, onto the enclosure behind the actuator.
 - Labeling can be dispensed with on EMERGENCY STOP devices if it is not possible for space reasons, for example.
 - With pull-cord operated switches, a yellow background is usually not available. ISO 13850 recommends suitable identification with marking flags here. See the figure "Symbol for EMERGENCY STOP" below (ISO 13850 Safety of machinery – Emergency stop – Principles for design).
-



Figure 10-11 Symbol for EMERGENCY STOP

10.6.4.4 Local operation of the disconnecting means to effect EMERGENCY STOP

In addition to the devices listed in Chapter Types of EMERGENCY STOP devices (Page 249), the disconnecting means is also permitted to be used for EMERGENCY STOP if all the following conditions for a main control switch are met:

- Corresponding color scheme (actuator red, background yellow)
- Readily accessible
- "ON" and "OFF" positions are available
- Lockable in the "OFF" position
- External actuator capable of being operated regardless of the door position (see Chapter Basic protection (protection against direct touching) (Page 83), Section "3. Protection by door interlock")

There are no specific requirements regarding the shape of the actuator. A toggle lever or rotary lever actuator is usually used here. See the figure "Door coupling rotary operating mechanism for EMERGENCY STOP" below.



Figure 10-12 Door coupling rotary operating mechanism for EMERGENCY STOP

Note

- The requirement for ease of access often means this can only be implemented on smaller machines.
 - Use of the disconnecting means as EMERGENCY STOP leads functionally to uncontrolled stopping! (Category 0 stop, see Chapter Start and stop functions (Page 215)). An assessment is therefore required to decide if this is permissible in the respective application in conjunction with an EMERGENCY STOP.
-

10.6.5 Devices and requirements for the EMERGENCY OFF

10.6.5.1 General requirements and position of the EMERGENCY OFF

EMERGENCY OFF devices are necessary in the case of electrical hazard. Such an electrical hazard includes, for example, the risk of electric shock or other hazards that can be caused by electricity, e.g. fire.

Note

Since this involves disconnection of the electrical supply and thus Category 0 stop (uncontrolled stopping) is applied, it is also necessary here to consider the situation in advance to avoid other resulting hazards.

Position of the EMERGENCY OFF

The EMERGENCY OFF for preventing electrical hazards shall be located wherever required in the respective application. This can vary from case to case and is frequently within the environment of the respective machine (e.g. production hall).

A clear differentiation between EMERGENCY OFF and EMERGENCY STOP is not initially provided for an operator. However, if conditions dictate that an EMERGENCY OFF has to be arranged in the immediate vicinity of an EMERGENCY STOP, additional measures can be taken to avoid priority operation of the EMERGENCY OFF. On pushbuttons, this can be implemented with a folded-edge disk behind which the EMERGENCY OFF is attached.

10.6.5.2 Types of EMERGENCY OFF devices

The following device types are always approved for EMERGENCY OFF but are not limited to this:

- Pushbutton (mushroom head or gross hand form)
- Pull-cord-operated switches

Note

- Switches with flat actuation or graphical symbols in software applications are not permitted for EMERGENCY OFF.
 - After actuating the EMERGENCY OFF; the electrical power may only be restored by manually resetting the EMERGENCY OFF switch.
-



Figure 10-13 Example of an EMERGENCY OFF pushbutton in the application

10.6.5.3 Actuators

The color scheme shall be maintained as follows:

- Actuator: Red
- Background: *may* be yellow

Note

The optional color yellow for the background results from the possibility of confusion with EMERGENCY STOP devices. Placing EMERGENCY OFF and EMERGENCY STOP devices with the same type of construction (e.g. pushbuttons) next to each other shall be avoided. However, if this cannot be avoided, the risk of confusion can be reduced with the help of the following identification methods:

- Color differences
 - Suitable labeling
-

10.6.5.4 Local operation of the disconnecting means to effect EMERGENCY OFF

If the disconnecting means is used for the EMERGENCY OFF function, the disconnecting means shall be readily accessible at all times, and shall meet the same requirements regarding color scheme as described in Chapter Actuators (Page 252).

Cables and conductors

11.1 General information

This chapter focuses on:

- Approvals of cables
- Sizing
- Marking and colors
- Routing of cables

These topics are described comprehensively in the relevant standards, and explained in more detail in the coming chapters.

11.2 Certifications

According to NFPA 79, cables and lines must be approved for the relevant purpose and be selected in accordance with the relevant area of application.

There are the following chapters within the UL508A on this topic:

- Main circuits outside the industrial control panel
- Main circuits inside the industrial control panel
- Control circuits inside the industrial control panel

Additional requirements for industrial machinery:

- Main circuits outside the industrial control panel
- Main circuits inside the industrial control panel
- Control circuits inside the industrial control panel

Within the industrial control panel, this guide refers primarily to the rules of UL 508A, and outside the control panel it refers mainly to the rules of NFPA 79.

11.2.1 Inside the industrial control panel

11.2.1.1 Power circuit

- All conductors or bus bars shall be made of copper.
- The insulation shall be designed for the relevant maximum voltage in the cable duct.

Exception

The voltage rating of conductors connected to a DC circuit shall be the peak equivalence of the rms voltage marked on the conductor ($U_{rms} \times \sqrt{2}$). Example: A DC bus or DC motor circuits supplied from power conversion equipment.

A 600 V DC intermediate conductor of a converter must therefore have a designated test voltage of at least $600V \times \sqrt{2} \geq 850 \text{ V}$.

All internal wiring shall be approved for at least 90 °C (194 °F).

Approved cables/conductors

The following cables/conductors are permitted:

Designation	Standard	CCN
Machine tool wire ("flexing" or "class K") installed in accordance with UL 508A, Chapter 29.3.11	UL 1063	ZKHZ
Thermoset insulated wire	UL 44	ZKST
Thermoplastic insulated wire	UL 83	ZLGR
Appliance wiring material	UL 758	AVLV2
Welding cable	UL 62	ZMAY
Flexible supply cords for heavy-duty and medium-duty use	UL 62	ZJCZ

Exception

Pre-fabricated cables that are a permanent component part of a plug connection do not have to comply with the above requirements if used with UL 498 approved socket outlets.

Plug connection components for main circuits must be checked according to UL2237 and plug connection components in control circuits must be checked according to UL2238. See also Chapter Cable routing (Page 279) for further information.

11.2.1.2 Control circuit

The same cable approvals and requirements apply in the control circuit as in the power circuit. One of the following conditions shall also be met:

- Internal conductors 90 °C (194 °F) or
The exception to the rule are cables $\leq$ AWG 16. They shall be approved for at least 60 °C (140 °F).
- Power limited cable according to UL 13 (CCN: QPTZ) and Communication cable according to UL 444 (CCN: DUZX) are approved for use in class 2 or Low voltage limited energy circuits. They shall be routed separately to internal conductors of other circuits if the conductor has a lower insulation resistance than the maximum occurring voltage of any circuit (see also Chapter Inside the industrial control panel (Page 280)).

NFPA 79 does not make a distinction between the inside and outside of the industrial control panel in terms of the requirements for cables/conductors. For this reason, the following regulations listed under Outside the industrial control panel (Page 256) apply equally to the industrial control panel according to NFPA 79.

Unlike NFPA 79, UL 508A refers more to the relevant approvals in more specific terms and, in some respects, stipulates somewhat stricter requirements (e.g. in relation to the permissible insulation temperature (90 °C)).

On the whole, however, the regulations listed above can be said to cover both standards.

11.2.2 Outside the industrial control panel

11.2.2.1 Fundamental requirements of cables and conductors

NFPA79 covers the area **outside the industrial control panel** (field wiring) for industrial machinery to a great extent. The subject of "Conductors, Cables, and Flexible Cords" is described in Chapter 12 of NFPA79.

Note

a) Conductors shall be insulated.

Exceptions

- Bus bars
- Exposed supply cords for capacitors, resistors, jumpers between terminals, for example
- Grounding conductors and grounding connections for the potential bonding do not have to be insulated.

b) Conductors shall be of copper (UL508A und NFPA79)

Exception

- Bus bars inside the industrial control panel; these may be made of aluminum if this means they are suitable and approved for the relevant application.

NOTICE

UL 508A permits only copper bus bars.

In conjunction with conductors, NFPA 79 usually only describes properties but does not refer to specific testing standards in the way that UL 508A does, for example.

The following table is designed to provide a guide for users. The table shows a selection of "listed" conductors that are suitable for industrial machines. In the case of UL-listed conductors, the Category Control Number (CCN) is specified in a separate column.

Type	Designation	CCN	Approval	Temp. [°C]	
				Dry	Wet
MI cable	Mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cable	PPKV	LISTED	85	85
MTW	Machine tool wire	ZKHZ	LISTED	90	60
THHN	Thermoplastic-insulated wire	ZLGR	LISTED	90	--
THW	Thermoplastic-insulated wire	ZLGR	LISTED	75	75
THWN	Thermoplastic-insulated wire	ZLGR	LISTED	75	75
RHH	Thermoset-insulated wire	ZKST	LISTED	90	--
RHW	Thermoset-insulated wire	ZKST	LISTED	75	75
RHW-2	Thermoset-insulated wire	ZKST	LISTED	90	90
XHHW	Thermoset-insulated wire	ZKST	LISTED	90	75
XHHW-2	Thermoset-insulated wire	ZKST	LISTED	90	90

Figure 11-1 Selection of "UL-listed" conductors suitable for industrial machines

11.2.2.2 Conductors and cables for flexible applications

Conductors and cables that are subject to permanent movement and high bending stresses shall be suitable for the respective application area.

The table below describes the different classes of flexible conductors. Conductors shall be selected according to this table.

Table 11- 1 Single conductor characteristics

Wire size (AWG or kcmil)	Cross-sectional area, nominal (cm / mm ²)	DC resistance at 25 °C (77 °F) (ohms / 1000 ft)	Nonflexing (ASTM class)	Flexing (ASTM class)	Constant flex (ASTM class/AWG size)
22 AWG	640/0.324	17.2	7(I)	7(I)	19(M/34)
20	1020/0.519	10.7	10(K)	10(K)	26(M/34)
18	1620/0.823	6.77	16(K)	16(K)	41(M/34)
16	2580/1.31	4.26	19(C)	26(K)	65(M/34)
14	4110/2.08	2.68	19(C)	41(K)	41(K/30)
12	6530/3.31	1.68	19(C)	65(K)	65(K/30)
10	10380/5.261	1.060	19(C)	104(K)	104(K/30)
8	16510/8.367	0.6663	19(C)	(I)	(-)
6	26240/13.30	0.4192	19(C)	(I)	(-)
4	41740/21.15	0.2636	19(C)	(I)	(-)
3	52620/26.67	0.2091	19(C)	(I)	(-)
2	66360/33.62	0.1659	19(C)	(I)	(-)
1	83690/42.41	0.1315	19(B)	(I)	(-)
1/0	105600/53.49	0.1042	19(B)	(I)	(-)
2/0	133100/67.43	0.08267	19(B)	(I)	(-)
3/0	167800/85.01	0.06658	19(B)	(I)	(-)
4/0	211600/107.2	0.05200	19(B)	(I)	(-)
250 kcmil	- /127	0.04401	37(B)	(I)	(-)
300	- /152	0.03667	37(B)	(I)	(-)
350	- /177	0.03144	37(B)	(I)	(-)
400	- /203	0.02751	37(B)	(I)	(-)
450	- /228	0.02445	37(B)	(I)	(-)
500	- /253	0.02200	37(B)	(I)	(-)
550	- /279	0.02000	61(B)	(I)	(-)
600	- /304	0.01834	61(B)	(I)	(-)
650	- /329	0.01692	61(B)	(I)	(-)
700	- /355	0.01572	61(B)	(I)	(-)
750	- /380	0.01467	61(B)	(I)	(-)
800	- /405	0.01375	61(B)	(I)	(-)

11.2 Certifications

Wire size (AWG or kcmil)	Cross-sectional area, nominal (cm / mm ²)	DC resistance at 25 °C (77 °F) (ohms / 1000 ft)	Nonflexing (ASTM class)	Flexing (ASTM class)	Constant flex (ASTM class/AWG size)
900	– /456	0.01222	61(B)	(I)	(–)
1000	– /507	0.01101	61(B)	(I)	(–)

Notes:

(B), (C), (K): ASTM class designation B and C per ASTM B 8; class designation K per ASTM B 174.

('): A class designation has not been assigned to this conductor but it is designated as 22-7 AWG in ASTM B286 and is composed of strands 10 mils in diameter (30 AWG).

(I): Nonflexing construction shall be permitted for flexing service per ASTM class designation B 174, Table 3.

(–): Constant flexing cables are not constructed in these sizes.

Source: NFPA 79, Table 12.2.2

ASTM classifications are also specified in the table. These are usually specified by cable manufacturers in the technical data.

Cables subjected to severe duties shall be protected against the following influences:

- Abrasion due to sharp edges
- Kinking due to operation without guides
- Stress due to guide rollers, forced guiding, and being wound and rewound on cable drums

The cables shall be handled in such a way that the tensile load is kept to a minimum during operation. The manufacturer's specifications shall be observed.

The service life of cables and conductors is influenced crucially by unfavorable operating conditions such as high tension, small bending radii, unfavorable horizontal/vertical routing in combination with high movement stresses.

11.2.2.3 Cable drums

Cables which are coiled on a cable drum must be reduced with regard to their current carrying capacity depending on the cable drum ventilation and the number of cable layers so that in a completely coiled state the max. permissible operating temperature is not exceeded.

Derating factors according to NFPA 79:

Table 11- 2 Derating factors for cables wound on drums

Drum type	Number of layers of cable				
	Any number	1	2	3	4
Cylindrical ventilated	-	0.85	0.65	0.45	0.35
Radial ventilated	0.85	-	-	-	-
Radial nonventilated	0.75	-	-	-	-

Notes:

- (1) A radial-type drum is one where spiral layers of cable are accommodated between closely spaced flanges. If fitted with solid flanges, the drum is described as nonventilated; if the flanges have suitable apertures, as ventilated.
- (2) A ventilated cylinder drum is one where the layers of cable are accommodated between widely spaced flanges and the drum and end flanges have suitable ventilating apertures.
- (3) It is recommended that the use of derating factors be discussed with the cable and the cable drum manufacturers. This can result in other factors being used.

Source: NFPA 79, Table 12.7.3

11.2.2.4 Cords

Cords

Cords shall have the following properties:

- Suitable for the relevant application
- Maximum current carrying capacity according to Table NFPA 79: 12.8.2 listed

Cords from Table 400.4 of the NEC are permitted if they form part of a tested and listed assembly and are suitable for the intended use.

Exception

Other cord types shall be permitted if they form part of a listed assembly or are otherwise suitable for the intended application.

11.2.2.5 Special cables and conductors

General information

Particularly with machines for special applications, it is often the case that the required cables and conductors are not covered by the conductor types specified in the standard. When using such special conductors, additional factors shall be taken into account to ensure intended use. The following factors shall be taken into account especially: Chemical influences, flexibility, flammability, shielding, cable routing/arrangement. Conductors/cables tested in accordance with ANSI / UL 758 usually have, in addition to the AWM labels, markings referring to their insulation (see Chapter Fundamental requirements of cables and conductors (Page 256)) and their suitability as cords (see Chapter Cords (Page 259)).

Special conductors and cables shall be suitable for the relevant type of use and approved as specified in NFPA 79, Chapter 12.9.

Appliance Wiring Material (AWM)

Cables marked Appliance Wiring Material (AWM) may be used if one of the following requirements has been met:

- Part of a tested application

This means the AWM cable has been identified for use with approved equipment and shall be used in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's instructions as per UL certification.



Figure 11-2 Example of AS-Interface cable as a component of a tested application

- Required for a tested application according to the manufacturer's instructions (UL certification)



Insulated Conductor	40 AWG min., Labeled or <u>complying with Manufacturer's AWM Procedure.</u>
Assembly	Consists of two or more conductors, twisted pairs or groups of twisted conductors twisted together. The conductors or groups of conductors may be laid parallel forming a flat, oval or round cable. The lay of the conductors is not specified. A barrier layer and/or fillers are optional. Manufacturer shall maintain a complete description of each assembly. May use same or mixed AWG size.
Use	<u>External interconnection or internal wiring of electronic equipment.</u>

Figure 11-3 Example of a motor cable on the load side of a variable-speed drive with associated extract from the Guide Info (UL database) of the manufacturer

- If the sizing of the AWM cable corresponds to the requirements of NFPA 79, Chapter 12.9.2 (3) (e.g. insulation properties)

AWM cables are approved in accordance with UL 758 recognized. This means that the "Conditions of Acceptability" shall be adhered to. The approved area of application can be found in the "Table of recognized styles" under UL - Product IQ (<https://www.ul.com/productiq>).

Example

1

UL Product iQ™

REFINE RESULTS

Build or filter your results by keyword and/or adding criteria like document type, file number and country name.

Keyword

Filter by Keyword

Search

UL Category Control Number

AVLV2

Company Name

> Value Contains: Siemens AG

File Number

Click to view and filter values

Location

Click to view and filter values

Add Filter

Cancel

Reset

Save Search

Dashboard / Search

4 Results :: UL Category Control Number: AVL2 :: Company Name: Siemens AG

Action

Display: General

Document Name	Company Name	UL CCN Description
AVLV2.E223748	SIEMENS AG	Appliance Wiring Material - Component
AVLV2.E362278	SIEMENS AG	Appliance Wiring Material - Component
AVLV2.E502506	SIEMENS AG	Appliance Wiring Material - Component

1

1 Enter manufacturer

2 Enter Category Control Number "AVLV2"

2

Single-conductor, thermoplastic insulation.							
1003	1050	1150	1295	1371	1502	1632	10152
1007	1051	1161	1297	1375	1508	1642	10239
1011	1062	1162	1298	1379	1511	1645	10258
1013	1063	1176	1299	1380	1516	1647	10263
1015	1064	1177	1300	1381	1517	1649	10269
1017	1065	1184	1301	1382	1518	1650	10271
1019	1066	1185	1302	1385	1519	1662	10324
1020	1071	1186	1303	1386	1520	1672	10390
1021	1095	1195	1304	1420	1521	1680	10449

4

4 Select desired style number, e. g. style number 1866,

3

APPLIANCE WIRING MATERIAL

Subj. 759

Section 1

Page 1866



Issued:1982-04-10

Revised:2008-08-27

Style 1866 Jacketed Cable.

Rating

90 deg C, 300 V ac, Cable Flame.

Insulation

Labeled or complying with manufacturer's ARI procedure.

Shield

Optional.

Covering

Optional. A 15 mil or heavier PVC covering may be extruded over the conductor assembly.

Jacket

PVC, 30 mils min average, 24 mils minimum at any point.

Standard

Appliance Wiring Material UL 759.

Marking

General.

Use

Internal Wiring or External Interconnection of Electronic Equipment.

Use

Internal Wiring or External Interconnection of Electronic Equipment.

Figure 11-4 Extract from the guide information for style number 1866

262

A Guide for Practical Use
Reference Manual, 09/2021, A5E02118900A/RS-AB/003

Table 11- 3 AWM style number system (4 or 5-digit number)

1xxxx	Single conductors with thermoplastic insulation
2xxxx	Multiple conductors with thermoplastic insulation
3xxxx	Single conductors with thermoset (cross-linked) insulation
4xxxx	Multiple conductors with thermoset (cross-linked) insulation
5xxxx	All others that do not fall between 1xxxx and 4xxxx (e.g. mineral-insulated conductors).

11.3 Sizing

11.3 Sizing

The following chapter of this guide describes the regulations according to UL 508A and NFPA 79 that govern the conductor/cable sizing inside and outside the industrial control panel.

11.3.1 Inside the industrial control panel UL508A

11.3.1.1 Power circuit

Conductor sizing in the power circuit is described in UL 508A, Chapter 29.6.

Conductors in the power circuit shall not be smaller than AWG 14 (2.1 mm²).

Exception for Industrial Machinery

For power circuits that correspond to the requirements of the table below, AWG 16 or AWG 18 cables may be used if the terminals in the industrial control panel components were also certified for this.

Note

Main circuits with a cross-section < 14 AWG are unusual in practice. A minimum conductor cross-section of 14 AWG is therefore recommended.

Table 11-4 Current carrying capacity and protection for power circuits with AWG 16 and AWG 18 conductors

Conductor		Load type	Max. ampere rating for branch circuit protection	Motor overload trip class
Size	Ampacity			
16 AWG	8	Non-motor	10 ^a	-
	8	Motor	Per "UL 508A, Table 31.1 "Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes", Chapter Single Installation (Page 112) ^a	Class 10
	5.5	Motor	Per "UL 508A, Table 31.1 "Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes", Chapter Single Installation (Page 112) ^a	Class 20
18 AWG	5.6	Non-motor	7 ^b	-
	5	Motor	Per "UL 508A, Table 31.1 "Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes", Chapter Single Installation (Page 112) ^b	Class 10
	3.5	Motor	Per "UL 508A, Table 31.1 "Maximum rating of motor branch circuit device percent of full load amperes", Chapter Single Installation (Page 112) ^b	Class 20

^a Inverse time circuit breaker marked for use with 16 AWG or 18 AWG conductors, Class CC, J or T fuse.

^b Inverse time circuit breaker marked for use with 18 AWG conductors, Class CC, J or T fuse.

Source: UL 508A, Table 66.2

The full-load amps shall be determined by adding the nameplate currents for all external loads that are supplied by this conductor. The full-load amps for motors with power specified in terms of horsepower shall be determined according to Feeder circuit (Page 100) (AC motors) or Feeder circuit (Page 100) (DC motors).

Background

As motors can have different levels of efficiency, sizing should be performed using the values in Feeder circuit (Page 100) and Feeder circuit (Page 100). These values represent the worst-case scenario and are generally overdimensioned. However, this ensures that the conductors are not underdimensioned if a motor has to be replaced (e.g. in the event of damage), even if the replacement motor has a lower level of efficiency and carries a higher rated current at the same level of power.

The conductor appropriate to the calculated rated current shall be selected in accordance with the following table "Ampacities of insulated conductors". The table below shows the current carrying capacity of insulated conductors with different cross-sections.

11.3 Sizing

Table 11- 5 Ampacities of insulated conductors

Wire size		60 °C (140 °F)		75 °C (167 °F)	
AWG	(mm ²)	Copper	Aluminum	Copper	Aluminum
14	(2.1)	15	-	15	-
12	(3.3)	20	15	20	15
10	(5.3)	30	25	30	25
8	(8.4)	40	30	50	40
6	(13.3)	55	40	65	50
4	(21.2)	70	55	85	65
3	(26.7)	85	65	100	75
2	(33.6)	95	75	115	90
1	(42.4)	110	85	130	100
1/0	(53.5)	-	-	150	120
2/0	(67.4)	-	-	175	130
3/0	(85.0)	-	-	200	155
4/0	(107.2)	-	-	230	180
250 kcmil	(127)	-	-	255	205
300	(152)	-	-	285	230
350	(177)	-	-	310	250
400	(203)	-	-	335	270
500	(253)	-	-	380	310
600	(304)	-	-	420	340
700	(355)	-	-	460	375
750	(380)	-	-	475	385
800	(405)	-	-	490	395
900	(456)	-	-	520	425
1000	(506)	-	-	545	445
1250	(633)	-	-	590	485
1500	(760)	-	-	625	520
1750	(887)	-	-	650	545
2000	(1013)	-	-	665	560

NOTES –

- 1 For multiple-conductors of the same size (1/0 AWG or larger) at a terminal, the ampacity is equal to the value in this table for that conductor multiplied by the number of conductors that the terminal is able to accommodate.
- 2 These values of ampacity apply only when not more than three conductors are intended to be field-installed in the conduit.
When four or more conductors, other than a neutral that carries the unbalanced current, are intended to be installed in a conduit (occurring because of the number of conduit hubs provided in outdoor equipment, the number of wires necessary in certain polyphase systems, or other reasons), the ampacity of each of the conductors is: 80 percent of these values if 4 – 6 conductors are involved, 70 percent of these values if 7 – 24 conductors, 60 percent of these values if 25 – 42 conductors, and 50 percent of these values if 43 or more conductors.

Source: UL 508A, Table 28.1

The first column contains the cross sections (wire sizes) of the conductors. Columns 60 °C and 75 °C represent the temperature at the terminal.

The maximum permissible terminal temperature is required through the devices. Thus, for example, a maximum permissible terminal temperature of 75 °C is specified for motor starter protectors of the Siemens 3RV2 series. This means that the 75 °C column is to be used for sizing the conductors in this case.

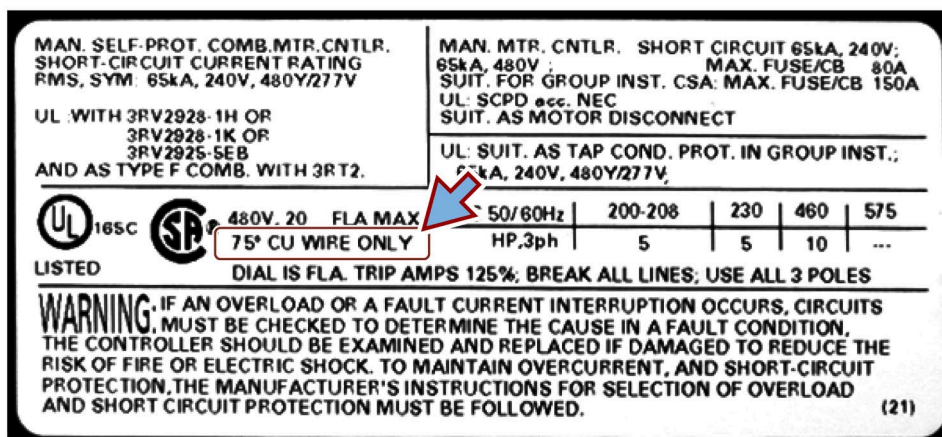


Figure 11-5 Example of a nameplate

Industrial control panels for industrial machines

According to UL 508A, Chapter 66.5.5 and 66.5.6, the following applies to industrial control panels for industrial machines:

1. Power circuit conductors that carry current for a motor or heater load shall be sized for an current carrying capacity not less than 125 % of the calculated rated current.
2. Power circuit conductors that carry current for one or more motors or heaters shall be sized for an current carrying capacity at least as follows:
 - 125 % of the rated current summation of all heater loads
 - 125 % of the rated current of the largest motor
 - The sum of the rated currents of the remaining motors and other loads that can be in operation simultaneously.

11.3 Sizing

11.3.1.2 Control circuit

According to UL 508A, Chapter 38.2, conductors in the control circuit shall be sized as follows:

- According to the overcurrent protection device for a control circuit or the ampere rating on the secondary of a control transformer or power supply.
- According to Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266) (>10 A) or the following table "Ampacities of control circuit conductors" (≤10 A).

Table 11- 6 Ampacities of control circuit conductors

Ampacity, amperes	Conductor size	
	AWG	(mm ²)
10	16	(1.3)
7	18	(0.82)
5	20 ^b	(0.52)
3	22 ^b	(0.32)
2	24 ^b	(0.20)
1	26 ^b	(0.13)
0.8	28 ^{a, b}	(0.08)
0.5	30 ^{a, b}	(0.05)

^a Where these conductors are contained in a jacketed multi-conductor cable assembly.

^b These sizes of conductors are only for connection of control circuits for electronic programmable input/output and static control (having no moving parts).

Source: UL 508A, Table 38.1

According to UL 508A, Chapter 66.9.2 regarding industrial control panels for industrial machinery, the conductors in a control circuit shall have a cross-section of at least AWG 18 (0.82 mm²).

Exception

Control circuit conductors for programmable input/output devices and devices that contain no moving parts may have a cross-section of AWG 18 to 30 (0.82 to 0.05 mm²).

The logic behind this is that with electronic devices, e.g. a PLC, no vibration occurs during operation, but the operational switching of contactors causes vibration due to the moving contacts, and this can result in excessive stress on the control circuit conductors.

If the panel builder or machine manufacturer and the operator of the industrial control panel or machine agree that NFPA 79 should also be applied to the industrial control panel, then the following regulations in accordance with Chapter Outside the industrial control panel (Page 268) shall also apply inside the panel.

11.3.2 Outside the industrial control panel

Outside the industrial control panel, the regulations according to NFPA 79.

11.3.2.1 Power circuit

The table below shows the permissible current carrying capacity of conductors for the different maximum temperatures of the connecting terminals.

Table 11- 7 Conductor current carrying capacity based on copper conductors with 60 °C (140 °F), 75 °C (167 °F) and 90 °C (194 °F) temperature stability of the insulation in an ambient temperature of 30 °C (86 °F)

Conductor size (AWG)	Ampacity		
	60 °C (140 °F)	75 °C (167 °F)	90 °C (194 °F)
30	-	0.5	0.5
28	-	0.8	0.8
26	-	1	1
24	2	2	2
22	3	3	3
20	5	5	5
18	7	7	14
16	10	10	18
14	20	20	25
12	25	25	30
10	30	35	40
8	40	50	55
6	55	65	75
4	70	85	95
3	85	100	110
2	95	115	130
1	110	130	150

Source: NFPA 79, Table 12.5.1

Power circuit conductors to individual motors shall be sized exactly as in the UL508A with at least 125 % of the rated current of the motor.

The current carrying capacity of supply conductors to combined loads shall be calculated at least as follows:

- 125 % of the rated current summation of all heater loads
- 125 % of the rated current of the largest motor
- The sum of the rated currents of the remaining motors and other loads that can be in operation simultaneously

11.3 Sizing

If the ambient temperature $\neq 30\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($86\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$) and/or more than three live conductors are routed in a raceway or cable, the correction factors from the following two tables shall be observed.

Table 11- 8 Ambient temperature correction factors

Ambient temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	Correction factor 75 $^{\circ}\text{C}$	Ambient temperature ($^{\circ}\text{F}$)
21 ... 25	1.05	70 ... 77
26 ... 30	1.00	78 ... 86
31 ... 35	0.94	87 ... 95
36 ... 40	0.88	96 ... 104
41 ... 45	0.82	105 ... 113
46 ... 50	0.75	114 ... 122
51 ... 55	0.67	123 ... 131
56 ... 60	0.58	132 ... 140
61 ... 70	0.33	141 ... 158

Source: NFPA 79, Table 12.5.5(a)

Table 11- 9 Adjustment factors for more than three current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable

Number of current-carrying conductors	Percent of values in table 12.5.5(a) as adjusted for ambient temperature if necessary
4 ... 6	80
7 ... 9	70
10 ... 20	50
21 ... 30	45
31 ... 40	40
41 and higher	35

Source: NFPA 79, Table 12.5.5(b)

The logic behind the correction table for bundling is to reduce heat buildup in the cable raceway. For this reason, only conductors that carry current simultaneously are to be considered.

Insulated conductors for higher temperatures may also be used (e.g. $90\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$), if the maximum permissible current carrying capacity at the connection point is not exceeded after application of all correction factors.

Cross section

The conductors in a power circuit shall not be smaller than AWG 14 according to NFPA 79.

Exceptions:

AWG 16 (~ 1.5 mm²)

AWG 16 (~ 1.5 mm²) conductors may be used if they meet one of the following requirements:

- a. Part of a jacketed conductor, cord, or individual conductors inside the industrial control panel or enclosure
- b. Non-motor loads with max. 8 A
 - Fused against overcurrent with max. 10 A
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 16 AWG
- Motor loads with max. 8 A rated current
 - Fused against overcurrent
 - Class 10 motor overload protection
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 16 AWG
- Motor loads with max. 5.5 A rated current
 - Fused against overcurrent
 - Class 20 motor overload protection
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 16 AWG

11.3 Sizing

AWG 18 (~ 1.0 mm²)

AWG 18 (~ 1.0 mm²) conductors may be used if they meet one of the following requirements:

- a. Part of a jacketed conductor, cord, or individual conductors inside the industrial control panel or enclosure
 - b. Non-motor loads with max. 5.6 A
 - Fused against overcurrent with max. 7 A
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 18 AWG
- Motor loads with max. 5 A rated current
 - Fused against overcurrent
 - Class 10 motor overload protection
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 18 AWG
- Motor loads with max. 3.5 A rated current
 - Fused against overcurrent
 - Class 20 motor overload protection
 - BCPD (branch circuit protection device), Fuse UL 248-4 up to 12 or Circuit Breaker UL 489, when identified with 18 AWG

AWG 16 (~ 1.5 mm²) and AWG 18 (~ 1 mm²)

AWG 16 (~ 1.5 mm²) and AWG 18 (~ 1 mm²) conductors may be used for motor and non-motor circuits if they meet the following requirements:

- Component of a listed power cable kit (e.g. pre-assembled cable with connector)
- Approved for the respective application
- Protected appropriately (see Table 12.5.1)

Supply cables for servo drives

Supply cables for servo drives shall be sized in accordance with NFPA 79 for at least 115 % of the drive input current.

Note

In accordance with NEC, supply cables for variable-speed drives and servo drives shall be sized with at least 125 % of the input current.

11.3.2.3 Control circuit

Cross section

NFPA 79:

- $\geq$ AWG 16 if routed in a raceway
- $\geq$ AWG 18 if part of a jacketed multiconductor cable assembly in enclosures or operating stations

Conductors for control circuits in electronic input/output and control devices

According to NFPA 79 conductors for control circuits in electronic input/output and control devices shall be sized as follows:

- Conductors routed in raceways: $\geq$ AWG 24
Exception: AWG 30, if part of a jacketed, multi-conductor cable assembly or cord
- Conductors routed in raceways: $\geq$ AWG 26
Exception: AWG 30 for jumpers and special applications
- $\geq$ AWG 30 for conductors as part of a jacketed, multi-conductor cable assembly that are identified as suitable for the application and routed according to NFPA 79, (see Chapter Wiring practice (Page 279))

Shielded conductors in subassemblies

Shielded conductors in subassemblies shall be flexible, made from annealed copper, and $\geq$ AWG 25. For all other applications, they shall be $\geq$ AWG 22.

Sizing rules

Both standards are based on the NEC so that the sizing rules of UL 508A and those of NFPA 79 are very similar. UL 508A provides for a maximum ambient temperature of 40 °C outside the control panel, and in contrast to NFPA 79 it has no correction factors for the ambient temperature. In many cases, the same cross-sections would be calculated using the rules of the two standards (see the following Sizing examples (Page 275)).

However, it is always to be recommended that the standards to be used are agreed between the customer and the machine manufacturer. If this is not clearly agreed, the recommendation is to carry out the sizing in accordance with both standards, and to select the larger conductor cross-sections if the results differ.

11.3.3 Sizing examples

Example

- 1 motor with 2 horsepower
- 3 motors with 1 horsepower each
- 3 heater loads at 10 A each
- 2 transformers with an input current of 5 A each
- Voltage 480 Y/277 V
- Ambient temperature 35 °C

Sizing according to UL 508A (inside the industrial control panel)

1. Determine the full-load amps of the motors according to Feeder circuit (Page 100).
⇒ 2 horsepower = 3.4 A
⇒ 1 horsepower = 2.1 A
2. Determine the relevant rated current for the conductor of combined loads according to Chapter Inside the industrial control panel UL508A (Page 264)
⇒ $3.4 \text{ A} \times 1.25 + 3 \times 2.1 \text{ A} + 3 \times 10 \text{ A} \times 1.25 + 2 \times 5 \text{ A} = \mathbf{58.05 \text{ A}}$
3. Determine the required cross section of the conductor according to Table 11-5 Ampacities of insulated conductors (Page 266).
58.05 A is a minimum current carrying capacity, which means the next-highest value shall be selected. According to the 75 °C column, this would be 65 A ⇒ **The required cross section of the conductor is at least AWG 6.**

Sizing according to NFPA 79 (inside and outside the industrial control panel)

1. Determine the rated currents of the motors according to the NEC, Table 430.250 (values analogous to Feeder circuit (Page 100))
⇒ 2 horsepower = 3.4 A
⇒ 1 horsepower = 2.1 A
2. Determine the relevant full-load amps for the conductor in accordance with Chapter Outside the industrial control panel (Page 268)
⇒ $3 \times 10 \text{ A} \times 1.25 + 3.4 \text{ A} \times 1.25 + 3 \times 2.1 \text{ A} + 2 \times 5 \text{ A} = \mathbf{58.05 \text{ A}}$
3. Determine the required cross section of the conductor according to Table 11-7 Conductor current carrying capacity based on copper conductors with 60 °C (140 °F), 75 °C (167 °F) and 90 °C (194 °F) temperature stability of the insulation in an ambient temperature of 30 °C (86 °F) (Page 269) and take into account the derating factors from Table 11-8 Ambient temperature correction factors (Page 270).

58.05 A is the minimum current carrying capacity, which means the next-highest value shall be selected. According to the 75 °C column, this would be 65 A, which would result in a conductor cross section of AWG 6.

However, as the ambient temperature is 35 °C, a correction factor of 0.94 shall also be applied. $65 \text{ A} \times 0.94 = 61.1 \text{ A}$ ⇒ **The required cross section of the conductor remains at least AWG 6, because the current carrying capacity of 61.1 A is higher than 58.05 A.**

11.4 Identification and color

Conductor colors

According to UL 508A, Chapter 17.3, 66.5 and 66.9.1, and NFPA 79, Chapter 13.2, conductors shall have the following colors:

Identification of conductors	Color	
Protective conductor	 	Green or green/yellow
Ungrounded conductors AC & DC -Main circuits (power circuits)		Black
Ungrounded conductors AC control circuits (control circuits)		Red
Grounded conductor of AC & DC - Main circuits and AC control circuits	  	White, gray or three white continuous stripes
Ungrounded conductors DC - control circuits (control circuits)		Blue
Grounded conductor of DC - control circuits		White with blue stripes
Ungrounded conductors of "excepted AC & DC circuits"		Orange
Grounded conductor of "excepted AC & DC circuits"		White with orange stripes

If you deviate from the color recommendation, a corresponding color identification table should be added in the circuit diagram or in the industrial control panel in accordance with UL508A.

Identification of conductor and connection point

Each conductor shall also be identified (termination identification) corresponding with the wiring diagrams. Identification can consist of digits, letters or a combination of both.

Aim

The aim is a unique assignment between the conductor and the connection point.

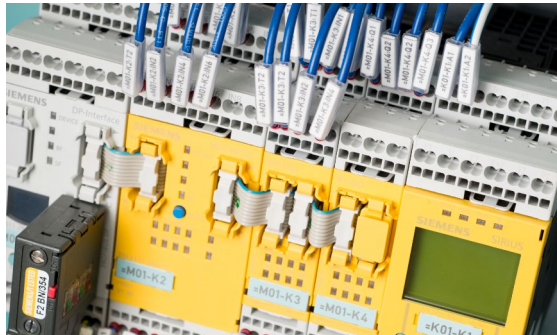


Figure 11-6 Example of conductor identification

11.5 Wiring practice

The wiring practice in industrial control panels and machines is described in great detail in UL 508A and NFPA 79.

While UL 508A is restricted to the control panel only, NFPA 79 describes routing inside and outside the control panel.

The aim of both standards is to protect cables against damage and damaging influences, and thus to contribute towards safe operation of the machine.

a) General requirements (NFPA 79)

NFPA 79 describes general requirements on the topic of "Raceways (ducts) / supports and connection boxes".

- Raceways (ducts), elbows, couplings, and associated fittings shall be listed → UL approval or Plastic Recognition Yellow Card (see Chapter Plastic materials (Page 58))

Exception: Raceways (ducts) fabricated as part of the machine.

- Sharp corners, edges, etc., shall be avoided to protect the conductors. Depending on the operating conditions, flame-retardant and oil-resistant insulating material (Plastic Recognition Yellow Card!) shall be used.
- Drain holes in raceways (ducts), junction boxes, etc., shall not substantially compromise the required enclosure type rating.
- Drain holes ≤ 6.4 mm are permissible for wiring in raceways and connection boxes that are subject to accumulations of oil or moisture.
- Raceways (ducts) shall be securely fastened in place and supported.

Exception: Flexible raceways

b) Percentage fills of raceways (ducts)

To be able to ensure adequate heat dissipation and reasonable handling in the case of changes, the combined cross-sectional area of all conductors shall be ≤ 50 % of the interior cross-sectional area of the raceway (duct).

c) Machine enclosures and supports or pillars

Machine enclosures and supports or pillars for machines may be used as raceways (ducts) in the following cases:

- Separate from cooling liquids and oil containers; completely enclosed
- Secured and protected against damage

→ An identification as electrical enclosure is recommended.



Figure 11-7 Example identification of an electrical enclosure

11.5.1 Inside the industrial control panel

11.5.1.1 UL 508A

UL 508A describes how conductors in the power circuit are to be connected and routed. For control circuit conductors, UL 508A refers to main circuit cables.

→ In accordance with UL 508A, the same rules for connecting and routing conductors thus apply for the power circuit and the control circuit.

Connection

Connection of a conductor to a component shall be carried out using one of the following measures:

- Direct connection to the terminal of a component
- Quick-connect terminal of a component in which the mating part is equipped with, e.g., a spring-type connection or similar such that the connection does not rely solely upon friction between the conductor and the connecting terminal
- Crimped-on supply cord or closed eyelet
- Soldered joints in accordance with UL 508A
- Terminal screws in accordance with UL 508A
- Open-type eyelet in accordance with UL 508A

Wiring ferrules

The topic of "wiring ferrules" frequently arises in this context. According to UL 508A the use of wire end ferrules in chapter 29.3.6 is allowed if they are suitable according to the manufacturer, and if the following requirements are met:

- Only for flexible copper wires
- Connection to a terminal of a component which is suitable for wire end ferrules.
- Crimped using a tool specified by the manufacturer of the wiring ferrules
- The wire end ferrule must be selected fitting to the cross-section and number of conductors of the cables to be crimped.
- The wiring ferrules shall be secured in such a way that the uninsulated part of the conductor is fully surrounded and no individual cores protrude.



Figure 11-8 Manual crimping operation

Note

The UL508A does not necessarily demand the use of UL-tested and certified wiring ferrules, but it recommends the use of UL 486-tested and certified wiring ferrules (CCN: ZMVV2).

Wire end ferrules do not influence the entire control panel SCCR.

Routing of wiring

Wire routing is regulated in UL 508A.

- Cable entries into the enclosure shall be through a smooth, well-rounded bushing or shall have smooth, well-rounded surfaces to avoid damage to the insulation.



Figure 11-9 Cable entry example

- Wires shall be routed properly, and away from sharp edges, screw threads, burrs, moving parts or drawers that are able to abrade the wire insulation. Wires shall also be routed away from heat-producing components, such as heat sinks of power circuit components, power supplies, transformers, cabinet heaters, and resistors.

- Cable clamps, spiral wraps, wire ties, and wiring troughs for stationary internal wiring, either metallic or nonmetallic, shall have smooth, well-rounded edges. The clamping action and bearing surface shall be such that abrasion of the insulation is not able to occur.



Figure 11-10 Cable clamp example

- Wiring that is subject to movement, flexing, or other influences during use, or during mechanical maintenance, shall meet the following requirements:
 - Insulation of at least 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) at every point at which the wire is flexed.
 - Stranded-type conductor
 - Routing such that the wire is not damaged when opening and closing the door or cover.

It shall correspond to these requirements:

- Flexible conductors and supply cords
- Welded cables
- MTW conductors (Machine Tool Wire) with the following cross-sections:
 - Cross-section AWG 8 (8.4 mm²) and larger
 - Cross-section AWG 18 to AWG 10 (0.8 to 5.3 mm²), labeled as "flexing" or "class K"

The same shall be observed when modifying electrical equipment, e.g. wiring from a permanently installed system component to a movable component (e.g. a door or cover).

Separation of circuits

A conductor in the industrial control panel shall be routed separately to other circuits in the following cases:

- If the conductor has a lower insulation resistance than the maximum occurring voltage of any circuit.
- In the case of non-insulated components of other circuits.

Separation can be achieved in accordance with the following specifications:

- **UL 1441:** Electrical sleeving
- **UL 224:** Insulating tubing
- **UL 510:** Wrapping consisting of at least two layers of insulating tape
- Clips, guides, or similar measures

Separation of conductors shall be ensured using separate fixings (e.g. cable clamps), separate routing or similar measures, e.g. barriers in the cable duct.

A conductor shall be provided with strain relief if stresses can result in failure to maintain separate routing as described above.

11.5.1.2 NFPA 79

NFPA 79 deals with the topic of "Wiring Inside Enclosures" in Chapter 13.3.

The following rules are described there:

- Nonmetallic ducts are only permitted when they are made with a flame-retardant insulating material.
→ Verification of plastic materials through a "Yellow Card", for example. See Chapter Plastic materials (Page 58), or further information on flame-retardant materials in IEC 60332-1 (tests on cables, insulated conductors and glass-fiber cables in the event of fire)
- Electrical equipment shall be mounted in such a way as to permit easy access to the wiring.
- Cables used to connect devices mounted on doors shall be of sufficient length, and shall permit full movement of the door. The conductors shall be anchored to the enclosure and to the door to avoid mechanically hampering the electrical connection on the device when the door moves.

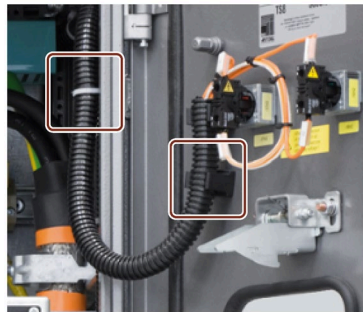


Figure 11-11 Example of cable fixing

- Cables shall be supported if no cable ducts, etc., are used. Supporting can be carried out appropriately using cable ties or cable clamps, for example.



Figure 11-12 Example of supporting using cable clamps

- Industrial control panels with multiple devices shall be equipped with attachment plugs or terminal blocks for all outgoing conductors.

Exception: Wiring for input or output modules of programmable controllers (e.g. PLCs) may be connected directly.

- Direct connection of power cables and cables of measuring circuits to the terminals of the devices for which the connections were intended shall be permitted. An example of this is the disconnecting means where the incoming supply circuit conductor is connected directly for preference.

11.5.2 Outside the industrial control panel

This topic is described in great detail in NFPA 79, Chapter 13.4. The following topics are dealt with in the standard under the heading "Wiring Outside Enclosures":

- External raceways (ducts)
- Connection to moving elements of the machine
- Cable handling systems
- Interconnection of devices on the machine
- Attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations
- Dismantling for shipment
- Rigid, flexible and liquidtight conduits
- Raceways (ducts) and cable trunking systems
- Requirements for the proper routing of cables

Due to the wide scope involved, this guide is restricted to the most important topics. You can find more detailed information in NFPA 79.

A general requirement is that the enclosure type shall not be impaired through the connection of cable ducts and the means of introduction of cables with their individual glands, bushings and so forth into the control panel.

This means cable entries in accordance with UL 514B shall be permitted and shall have the same or a higher Enclosure type Rating than the industrial control panel enclosure. See Chapter Enclosure type ratings (Page 225) for the combination options of enclosure types.



Figure 11-13 Cable entry through a connection receptacle (socket) in accordance with UL 514B

11.5.2.1 External raceways (ducts)

- The conductors of an AC circuit to an item of equipment shall be routed in the same cable raceway.
- The conductors external to the control panel shall be routed in raceways as described in NFPA 79. See Chapter Wiring practice (Page 279).



Figure 11-14 Conductors routed in raceways

Note

Cables and cable connectors are the exception here and do not have to be enclosed in raceways if suitable measures have been taken in accordance with NFPA 79.

- Connection pieces and fittings for raceways and multiconductor cables shall be suitable for the physical environment, and shall be correspondingly identified. The enclosure type rating in particular shall be assigned greater significance here.
- Movable control devices shall be wired with flexible conductors. The conductors shall not be used as mechanical support unless they are approved for that purpose. An appropriate strain relief shall be provided.
- Flexible conductors shall also be used for infrequent and small machine movements. They shall also be permitted to complete the connection to stationary motors, position switches, or externally mounted devices.



Figure 11-15 Cable routing to moving elements of the machine

11.5.2.2 Connection to moving elements of the machine

- Connections to moving elements of the machine shall be made using conductors in accordance with Chapter Conductors and cables for flexible applications (Page 257).
- Flexible cables and conduits shall have vertical connections for preference. The connection pieces in particular shall be protected against excessive movement and straining.
- Horizontal connections shall be permitted where the cables or conduits are adequately supported.
- Flexible cables and conduits shall be installed in such a way as to avoid excessive movement and straining, particularly at the fittings.
- Flexible conductors subject to machine movements shall be supported in such a way that there is neither mechanical strain on the connection points nor any sharp flexing. If this is ensured by generous cable routing providing scope for bending, the radius of the bend shall be at least 10 times the cable diameter.
- Cables with flexible properties shall be installed and protected in such a way as to avoid damage during use or potential abuse. Examples include the following
 - Being run over by the machine itself
 - Being run over by vehicles or other machines
 - Coming into contact with the machine structure during movements
 - Imprecise running in and out of cable baskets or on or off cable drums
 - Excessive rubbing on cable guide systems
 - Exposure to excessive radiated heat sources



Figure 11-16 Drum cable example

- The cable sheath shall be resistant to movement and ambient conditions (e.g. oil, water, coolants, dust).
- Protection of cables to moving parts by means of:
 - Barriers or cable tracks
 - The minimum space shall be 1 inch (25.4 mm).If this distance is not practicable, fixed barriers or cable tracks shall be provided for protection against moving parts.

- Flexible cables and cable tracks shall be protected against damage from moving machine parts.
- Flexible conduits shall not be used for rapid movements unless they are approved for this purpose.

See also Chapter Approvals. (Page 254)

11.5.2.3 Cable handling systems

See NFPA 79.

11.5.2.4 Interconnection of devices on the machine

NFPA 79 provides only general information designed to facilitate commissioning, ongoing maintenance, and possible troubleshooting. For this reason, terminals and measuring points shall be used that are readily accessible but still appropriately protected against the operating and ambient conditions. Terminals and measuring points shall correspond to the associated documentation.

11.5.2.5 Attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations

- On removable equipment it is permitted to use polarized attachment plugs that ensure protection against electric shock and have been tested and listed for the respective application.
- Plugs for 20 A or higher shall be locked against inadvertent disconnection.
- With a voltage of phase to phase or phase to ground of 300 V or more, plug pins shall be skirted so that open arc flashes remain in the enclosure when a connection is made or broken.
- Plugs shall be designed in such a way that the equipment grounding circuit connection is made before current-carrying connections are made and is not disconnected until all current-carrying connections are disconnected.

→ "first make / last break"

Exception: Attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations used in PELV circuits and for assembling and disassembling (not during operation!).

- Attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations used for carrying motor loads need to be able to be disconnected under load (load-break-rating) if the circuit is likely to be opened under load.

- If several attachment plug and receptacle (plug/socket) combinations are used, incorrect insertion shall be prevented by means of mechanical coding or clear identification.

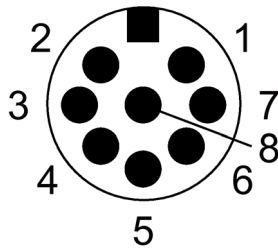


Figure 11-17 Coded receptacle example

- Externally mounted receptacles (machine or control panel enclosure) shall be covered when the plugs are removed.

11.5.2.6 Dismantling for shipment

- Receptacles and terminals shall be used for preference and appropriately covered and protected.
- Enclosure openings shall be closed.
- Connectors shall be designed in such a way as to prevent the danger of electric shock.

11.5.2.7 Rigid, flexible and liquidtight cable conduits

This topic is described in great detail in NFPA 79. Due to the wide scope involved, this guide is restricted to just a few important topics. Please refer to NFPA 79 for additional information.

NFPA 79 permits fixed, non-flexible metal conduits such as "Rigid Metal conduit (RMC)", "Intermediate Metal Conduit (IMC)" and "electrical metallic tubing (EMT)".

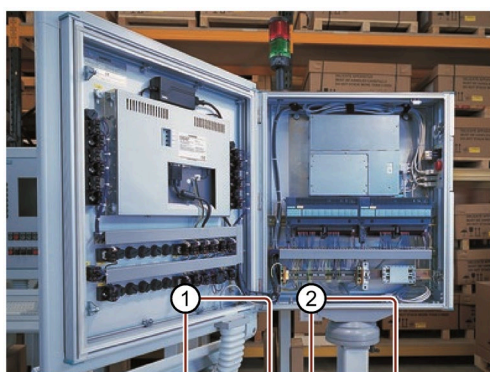
Nonmetallic conduits are also permitted (PVC Sch. 80).

Flexible metal conduits such as Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC) and liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC) are of help when fixed conduits are not suitable or when vibration occurs.

Note

Cable conduits shall be approved for the respective use and environment.

→ UL 1242 – Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit – Steel or UL 651 - Standard for Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit



① Plastic

② Metal

Figure 11-18 Examples of cable conduits

Fixed conduits

The minimum metric size shall be 16 (1/2 in.).

The maximum metric size shall be 155 (6 in.).

Table 11- 11 Metric designators/trade sizes

Metric designator	Trade size
12	$\frac{3}{8}$
16	$\frac{1}{2}$
21	$\frac{3}{4}$
27	1
35	$1\frac{1}{4}$
41	$1\frac{1}{2}$
53	2
63	$2\frac{1}{2}$
78	3
91	$3\frac{1}{2}$
103	4
129	5
155	6

Note: The metric designators and trade sizes are for identification purposes only and are not actual dimensions.

Source: NFPA 79

For problem-free insertion of cables into conduits there shall be no more than four 90° bends between the start and end of the conduit, or the combination of bends shall not exceed 360°.

Table "NFPA 79 Minimum Radii of Conduit Bends" shows the minimum bending radii of cable conduits.

Table 11- 12 Minimum Radii of Conduit Bends

Conduit size		One-shot and full-shoe benders		Other bends	
Metric designator	Trade size	mm	Inches	mm	Inches
16	1/2	101.6	4	101.6	4
21	3/4	114.3	4 1/2	127	5
27	1	146.05	5 3/4	152.4	6
35	1 1/4	184.15	7 1/4	203.2	8
41	1 1/2	209.55	8 1/4	254	10
53	2	241.3	9 1/2	304.8	12
63	2 1/2	266.7	10 1/2	381	15
78	3	330.2	13	457.2	18
91	3 1/2	381	15	533.4	21
103	4	406.4	16	609.6	24
129	5	609.6	24	762	30
155	6	762	30	914.4	36

Source: NFPA 79

Conduits shall be securely positioned and fastened in accordance with the Table "NFPA 79 Support of Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC)". In addition, a conduit with a maximum length of 900 mm (3 ft) shall be securely fastened and connected between the two connection points.

Table 11- 13 Support of Rigid Nonmetallic Conduit (RNC)

Conduit size		Maximum spacing between supports	
Metric designator	Trade size	mm or m	ft
16 ... 27	1/2 ... 1	900 mm	3
35 ... 53	1 1/4 ... 2	1.5 m	5
63 ... 78	2 1/2 ... 3	1.8 m	6
91 ... 129	3 1/2 ... 5	2.1 m	7
155	6	2.5 m	8

Source: NFPA 79

Flexible and liquidtight conduits

- Flexible metal conduit (FMC) and liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LMFC) shall correspond to the minimum size 12 (trade size 3/8).

Exception: Flexible conduit for cable routing to thermocouples and other sensors

- The maximum size corresponds to metric size 103 (trade size 4)

11.5.2.8 Raceways (ducts) and cable trunking systems

Cable raceways (ducts) may be used as well as conduits. Cable raceways (ducts) provide protection against damaging external influences. The metallic strength and design of raceways shall be in accordance with ANSI / UL 870 Wireways, Auxiliary Gutters and associated fittings .

11.5.2.9 Requirements for the proper routing of cables

The following measures are described in NFPA 79:

- Exposed cables are permitted if they are installed along the structure of the machine or the chases of the machinery. Exposed cables shall be installed to closely follow the structural members of the machinery.



Figure 11-19 Example of exposed cables

- Cables shall be supported as follows:
 - In such a manner that the cable will not be damaged by normal equipment use.
 - Every 305 mm (12 in.) in a nonvertical run.
Exception: The supporting distance may be increased to up to 914 mm (36 in.) if the structure of the machine or system makes support impractical every 305 mm (12 in.).
 - Every 914 mm (36 in.) in a nonvertical run.
Exception: The supporting distance may be increased up to 2.44 m (96 in.) if the structure of the machine or system makes support impractical every 914 mm (36 in.).
 - When suspended in air spanning a distance of 457 mm (18 in.).
Exception: The span distance may be increased up to 914 mm (36 in.) if the structure of the machine or system makes support impractical every 457 mm (18 in.).
- Cables shall not be supported by machinery guards that have to be removed for maintenance access.
Exception: Wiring for components that are an integral part of the guard and designed to remain on the guard when the guard is removed for maintenance access.
- Multiple cables may be fastened together in a bundle provided the method of fastening is sufficient to support the mechanical weight and strain of the bundle.

- Cable shall be fastened to the cable runs.

Exceptions:

- Where horizontal runs are inherently supported by the machine or system structure, or by floors or decks, fastening is not required.
- Where run at $\leq 45^\circ$ from the horizontal, fastening is not required.
- The ends of cable ties shall be cut flush. Reusable cable ties that can be opened again shall not be used as permanent fastenings.
- Cables subjected to physical damage shall be protected by means of the following measures:
 - Alternative routing
 - With additional guarding or railings
 - When laid on the floor, additional protective measures are required with walk-over or drive-over cable protective devices.
 - By installation in a wireway
 - By installation in a floor or trapezoidal walk-over raceway specifically designed for cable protection.
- Bends in cables shall not result in undue stress. The radius of the curve on the inside edge of the bend shall be $\geq 5 \times$ the cable diameter.
- If a cable is used in a length longer than required, the excess cable shall be coiled in loops. The coil shall be fastened to itself and to the machinery structure.

Exception: When excess cables are associated with a horizontal cable run that is inherently and fully supported, the solenoids do not have to be fastened to the machine structure.

Accessories and lighting

12.1 Receptacle for accessories and maintenance

12.1.1 Requirements from UL508A

The requirements listed below apply equally for receptacles in the power circuit and the control circuit.

However, receptacles in the control circuit may only be used for the operation of programming and diagnostics devices, and they shall therefore be correspondingly marked. See Chapter Receptacles (Page 328).

Exception: Receptacles in the control circuit for Class 2 or in Low voltage limited energy circuits.

12.1.1.1 UL tests and certifications

Receptacles for general purposes shall be approved in accordance with the standard UL 498 "Standard for Plugs and Receptacles" or also in accordance with the standard UL 60320-1 "Standard for Appliance Couplers for Household and Similar General Purposes".

The following additional requirements apply for receptacles mounted through the enclosure of the industrial control panel and therefore accessible from outside:

- The receptacle shall be provided with a metal enclosure or comply with UL 508 Standard for Industrial Control Equipment for enclosures with polymeric materials.
- The receptacle shall have no exposed contacts (receptacle is a female type)
- The receptacle shall be appropriately marked. See Chapter Device marking on the industrial control panel acc. to UL 508A (Page 326).

Receptacles for which the mating part is connected to a flexible cord may only be used for portable loads or for equipment parts that are frequently changed.

For receptacles provided for the permanent connection of a specific load, there shall be equipment available that permits the connection of conduit if required.

In the following cases, the connection shall be protected by means of mechanical measures:

- Rated current of the receptacle of more than 20 A for general purposes
- Use of multi-pin connectors

A bracket lock is often found here, for example. Furthermore, a marking shall be provided permitting disconnection only in the no-load state. Disconnection under load is not permissible. You can find the specifications for the marking and an example in Chapter Device marking on the industrial control panel acc. to UL 508A (Page 326).

12.1.1.2 Ground fault circuit interrupters on receptacles

Receptacles with a rated current of 15 amperes or 20 amperes and up to 120 V shall be equipped with a ground fault circuit interrupter if they are located in the industrial control panel and the enclosure of the control panel has "enclosure type 3" or "enclosure type 3RX", and is designed for outdoor operation (e.g. enclosure types 4, 4X, 6, 6P).

The ground fault circuit interrupter shall be a Class A – Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) approved in accordance with UL 943.

These trip at a residual current of 4 to 6 mA and thus also meet the requirements for operator protection.

Note

There are many ground fault circuit interrupters available that are not approved for operator protection. Thus, UL-listed ground fault circuit interrupters according to UL 1053, for example, are suitable for plant and fire protection, but not for operator protection. IEC-certified ground fault circuit interrupters used in Europe for protecting receptacles sometimes also have UL approval. However, since the tripping current on these devices is 30 mA, they are approved in the USA according to UL 1053 for plant protection but not for operator protection. European panel builders frequently mix this up.

12.1.2 Requirements of NFPA 79

12.1.2.1 Receptacles for associated equipment parts of the machine

Machines and their associated equipment parts (e.g. control panels) are frequently provided with receptacles to enable the operation of additional equipment when required. Examples include measuring devices, electric tools, and test equipment. (See the figure below "Siemens 5TE6 800 receptacle in accordance with UL 498, with cover")

In this case, the receptacles, which are accessible from the outside or only from the inside, shall be protected using a residual-current circuit breaker for operator protection.

Such devices for operator protection are called Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter (GFCI) and are UL 943-listed. (See Figure 12-2 Siemens GFCI, class A according to UL 943, 2-pole, $I_{\Delta N} = 5 \text{ mA}$ (Page 296) in this respect)

Note

These devices are only designed and available for the North American market. For importers it is recommended to include a space for the devices in the industrial control panel and attach a corresponding note in the installation and commissioning documentation that these devices have to be installed on site.

The supply voltage is limited to max. 120 V in receptacle circuits and the neutral conductor must be grounded. The receptacle itself shall fulfill the following requirements:

- Rated voltage of 125 V
- Rated current of 15 or 20 A
- Tested and listed for the intended voltage. Receptacles listed in accordance with UL 498 are usual here.

In cases where the circuit for supplying the receptacle is connected upstream of the disconnecting means, and can thus still carry power despite the disconnecting means being switched off, the receptacle circuit shall be treated and marked as an "excepted circuit". See Chapter Excepted circuits (Page 76).

A suitable enclosure type rating shall be provided for receptacles installed in the machinery field or outside the industrial control panel, and that are thus exposed to shavings, dust, oil or other contaminants. After removing the plug, a cover shall be attached. (See the figure below "Siemens 5TE6 800 receptacle in accordance with UL 498, with cover")



Figure 12-1 Siemens 5TE6 800 receptacle in accordance with UL 498, with cover

12.1.2.2 Receptacles for maintenance purposes

Machines and associated plant parts are frequently equipped with receptacles to enable the operation of further equipment while performing maintenance work.

These receptacles shall **always** be protected with a ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI in accordance with UL 943), regardless of whether this is installed inside or outside the industrial control panel.



Figure 12-2 Siemens GFCI, class A according to UL 943, 2-pole, IΔN = 5 mA

Note

The requirements for receptacles for maintenance and the operation of accessories are partially not identical in UL508A and NFPA79. It is therefore generally recommended to provide a GFCI for these receptacles.

12.2 Control panel lighting and machine lighting

12.2.1 General information

The requirements described in UL 508A and NFPA 79 refer only to the electrical supply for lighting circuits in the control panel and the machine environment. As well as the supply for control panel lighting, other lighting circuits are included here too (e.g. workplace lighting). Lighting requirements are not included here. The grounding of lighting circuits is described in Chapter Requirements of NFPA 79 for grounding machinery (Page 207).

12.2.2 Requirements for the industrial control panel in accordance with UL 508A

12.2.2.1 Components in the lighting circuit and their certification

- Lampholders for incandescent lamps shall be certified in accordance with UL 496
- Fluorescent lighting shall be certified in accordance with UL 1598
- When using such lighting as accessories for control panels, approval in accordance with UL 508 is required.

12.2.2.2 Configuration and overcurrent protection in accordance with UL 508A

- Lampholders shall be connected to the grounded conductor.
- Max. supply voltage of ≤ 150
- Protection against overcurrent takes place according to the requirements for power circuits. See Chapter Non-motor loads (Page 147).

Exception

Lighting circuits with a supply voltage ≤ 120 V can be supplied by an isolation transformer for control circuits. Protection is carried out here in accordance with the relevant rules for control circuits and control transformers. See Chapter Overcurrent protection of control circuits (Page 187).

It is also permissible to supply LED lightings of control circuits and design and protect them according to the chapters for control circuits.

12.2.3 Requirements for machines and equipment parts in accordance with NFPA

12.2.3.1 General information

Grounding

The grounding of lighting circuits for machines and their equipment parts is described in Chapter Requirements of NFPA 79 for grounding machinery (Page 207).

Enclosure types

When selecting lighting, the enclosure type rating for protection against external influences shall be taken into account.

Lighting for machines and in the environment of machinery can be exposed to harsh conditions (e.g. condensing mist, spraying liquids). Lighting that is equipped with switches and receptacles shall not be used here unless a correspondingly suitable enclosure type rating is available. For information about enclosure types, see Chapter Enclosure type ratings (Page 225).

Note

When using lighting in humid ambient conditions, ground fault protection shall be provided. Ground fault protection shall meet the requirements for operator protection here. (GFCI – Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter according to UL 943)

Cables

$A \geq 18 \text{ AWG } (\approx 1 \text{ mm}^2)$

Minimum cross-section for supply cables to stationary, permanently installed lighting

The following flexible supply cords or cable types are approved for the supply:

SO, STO, STOW, SJO, SJOW or SJTO

UL Category Code Number (CCN): ZJCZ; ELBZ

You can find additional information on cable types in Chapter Certifications (Page 254).

Note

In-line ON/OFF switches shall not be incorporated.

Stroboscopic effects

Stroboscopic effects refer primarily to the illusion of motion that does not correspond to the actual movement. This illusion can result, for example, in an incorrect response from operating personnel.

This effect is caused in particular in the case of oscillations and rotary movements at high frequency while simultaneously using fluorescent lamps for lighting. The remedy is often simply another type of lighting.

12.2.3.2 Supply

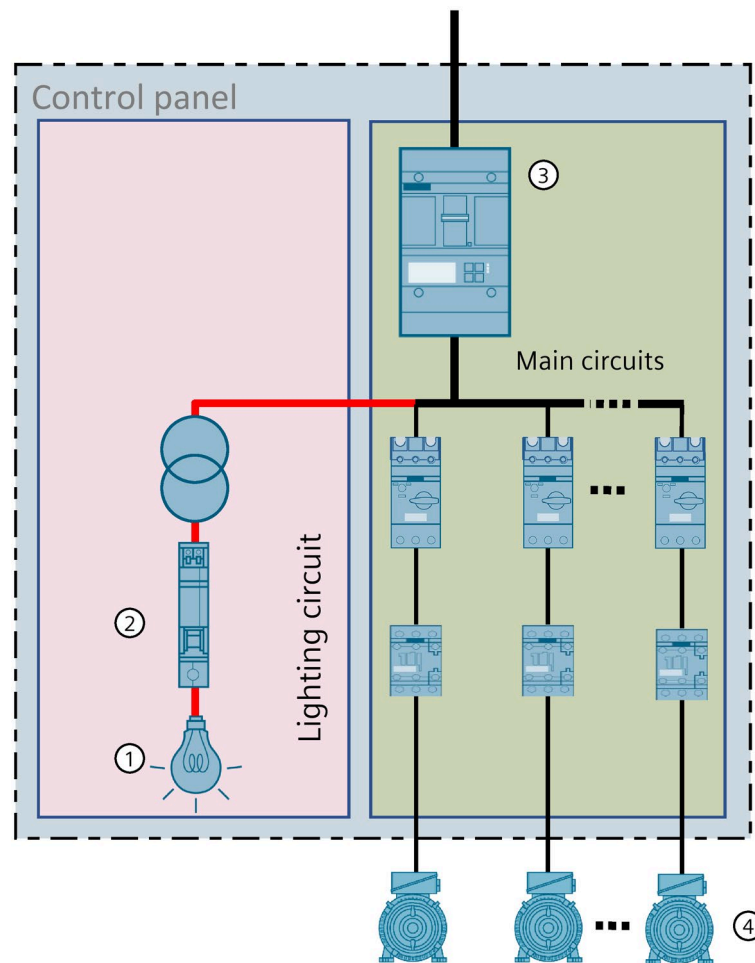
The following maximum values apply for lighting circuits:

- **Max. supply voltage:** $U \leq 150 \text{ V}$
- **Max. protection:** $I \leq 15 \text{ A}$

The following two requirements must be fulfilled if lighting circuits with an operating voltage $> 150 \text{ V}$ are required:

- All components must be checked and listed for the operating voltage.
- All manufacturer specification must be fulfilled during the installation.

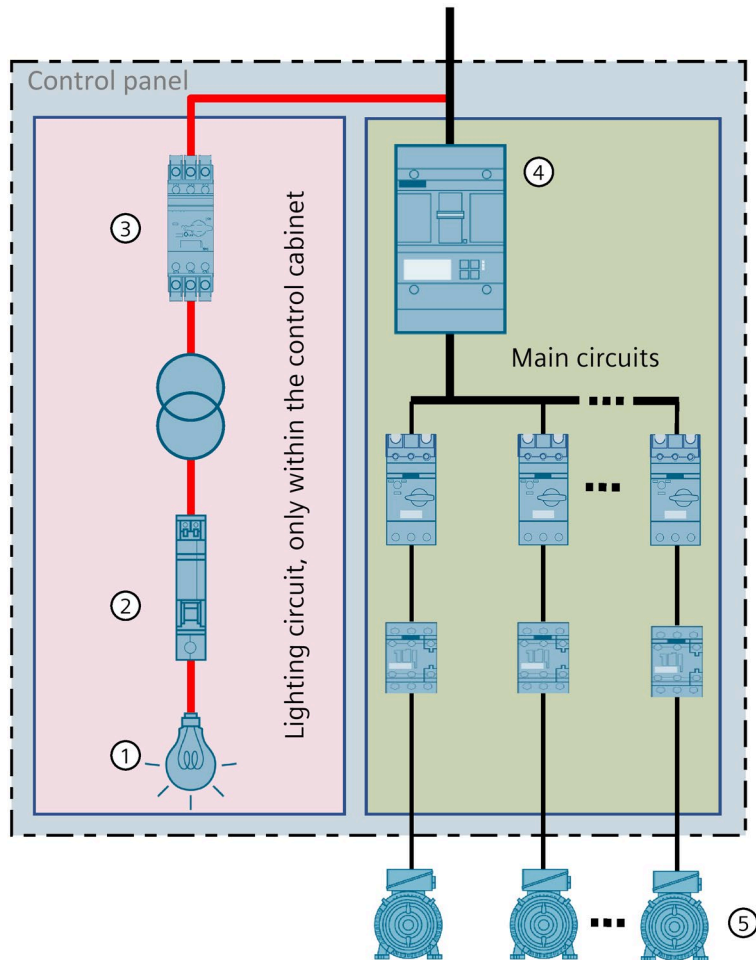
1. The lighting is supplied via the secondary side of an own isolating transformer with overcurrent protection. The transformer is connected to the load side of the supply disconnecting means.



- ① Lighting
- ② Secondary overcurrent protection
- ③ Supply disconnecting means
- ④ Machine circuits

Figure 12-3 Design of machine lighting option 1

A separate isolation transformer is connected to the line side of the supply disconnecting means. Overcurrent protection is provided on the secondary side of the transformer. Although primary-side overcurrent protection is not required by the standard, it is nevertheless recommended.



- ① Lighting
- ② Secondary overcurrent protection
- ③ Primary overcurrent protection
- ④ Supply disconnecting means
- ⑤ Machine circuits

Figure 12-4 Design of machine lighting option 2

Note

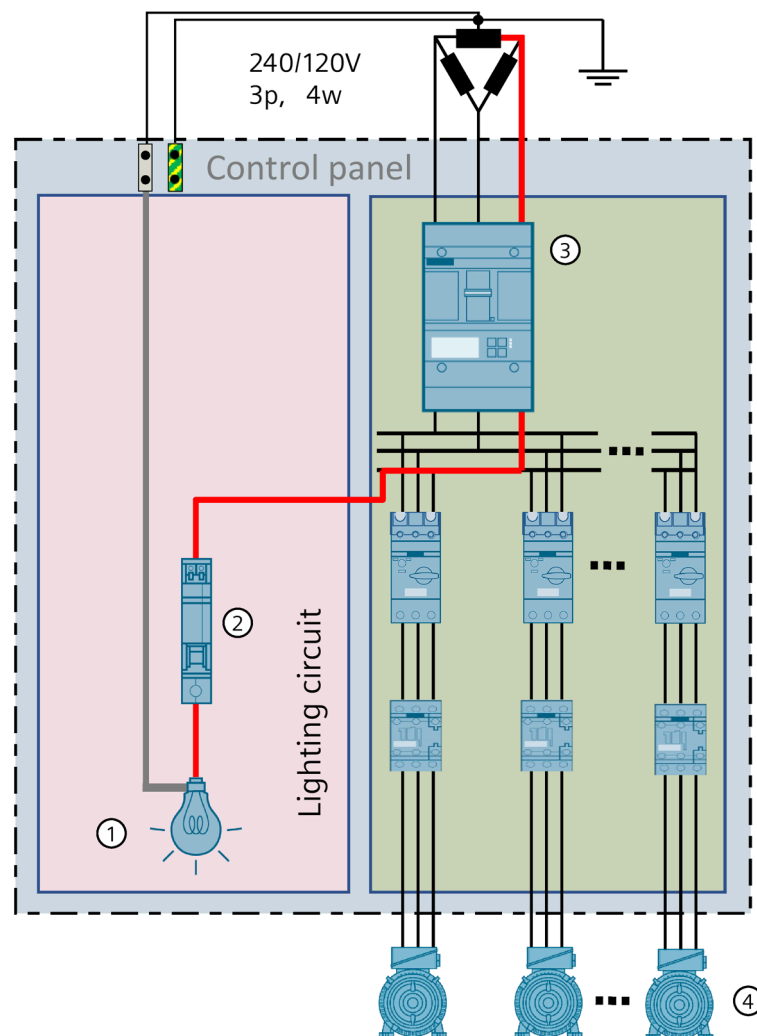
Use is only permitted for control panel lighting.

2. A grounded circuit of the actual machine supply shall be permitted. The following conditions shall be fulfilled for this purpose:

- $U \leq 150 \text{ V}$
- Separate overcurrent protection

As an application example you can imagine an infeed with mid-point-grounded delta which supplies 3-phase machine circuits with 240 V.

- From the busbar you can then use one of the two 120 V phase-to-ground voltages for lighting.



- ① Lighting 120 V
- ② 1-phase overcurrent protection
- ③ Supply disconnecting means
- ④ Machine circuits

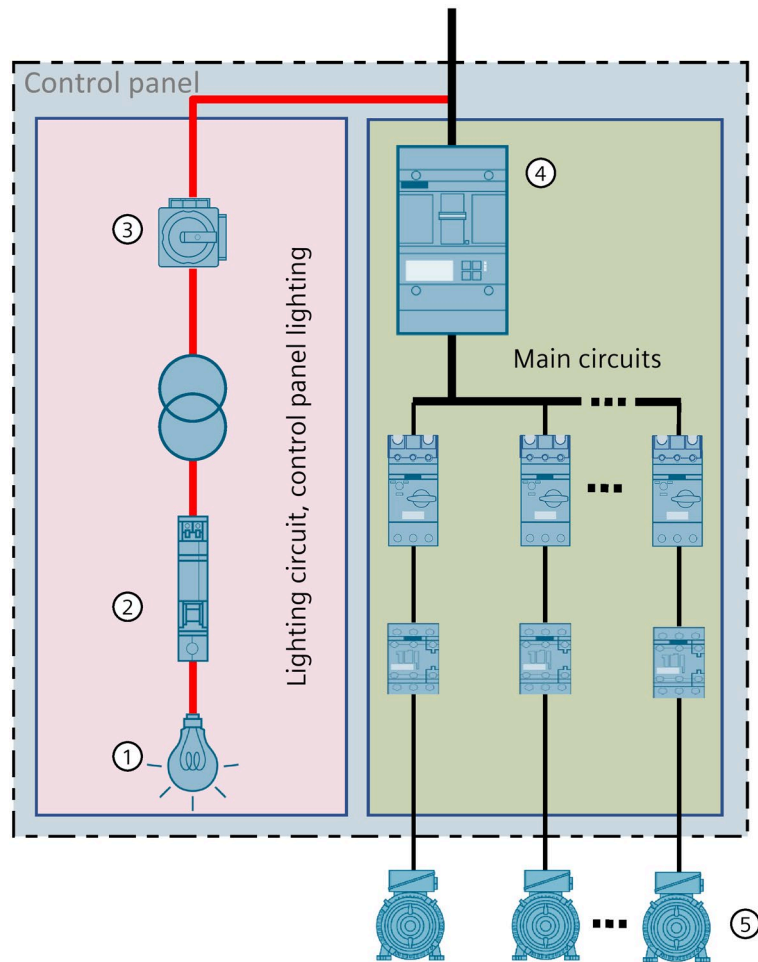
Figure 12-5 Design of machine lighting option 3

12.2 Control panel lighting and machine lighting

3. A separate isolation transformer is connected to the line side of the supply disconnecting means, where a separate disconnecting means shall be provided for the circuit on the primary side.

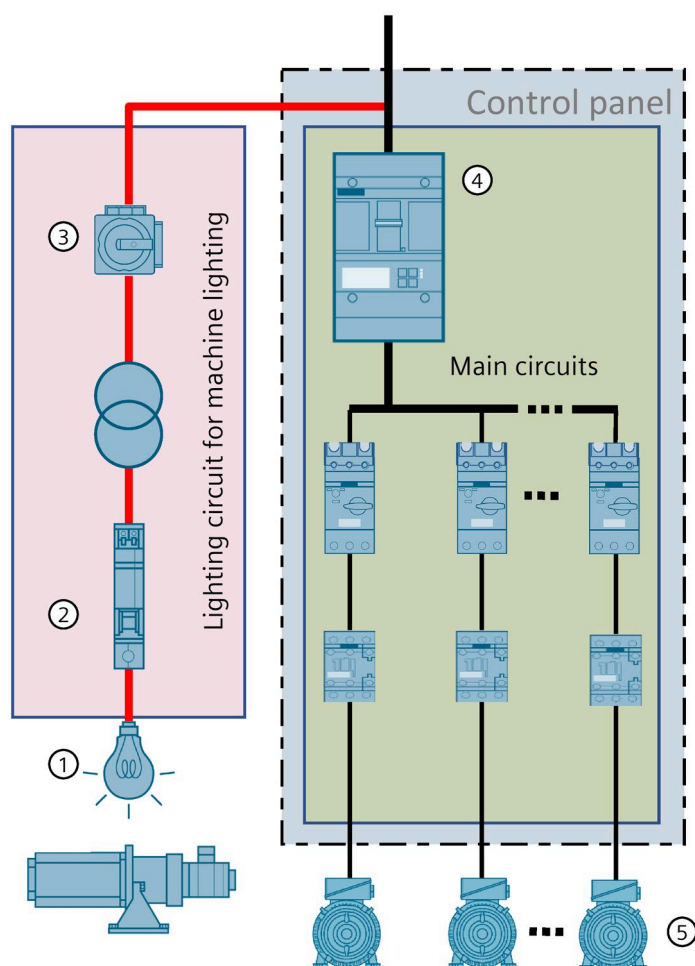
and where overcurrent protection shall be provided on the secondary side. The overcurrent protection shall meet one of the following conditions:

- Inside the control panel enclosure adjacent to the supply disconnecting means
- Outside the control panel, but immediately adjacent to control panel enclosure



- ① Lighting
- ② Secondary overcurrent protection
- ③ Primary overcurrent protection
- ④ Supply disconnecting means
- ⑤ Machine circuits

Figure 12-6 Supply disconnecting means



- ① Lighting
- ② Secondary overcurrent protection
- ③ Primary overcurrent protection
- ④ Supply disconnecting means
- ⑤ Machine circuits

Figure 12-7 Supply disconnecting means A

4. An externally supplied control circuit (e.g. via the factory lighting supply). This shall be permitted both for the control panel enclosure and for the machine lights. The permissible power rating is restricted to $P \leq 3 \text{ kW}$. This minimizes the risk if there is a failure, or if someone other than the machine operating personnel switches off, or it ensures that the personnel still have a clear overview of the machine since the machine lighting cannot be relied on alone due to its limited lighting power.

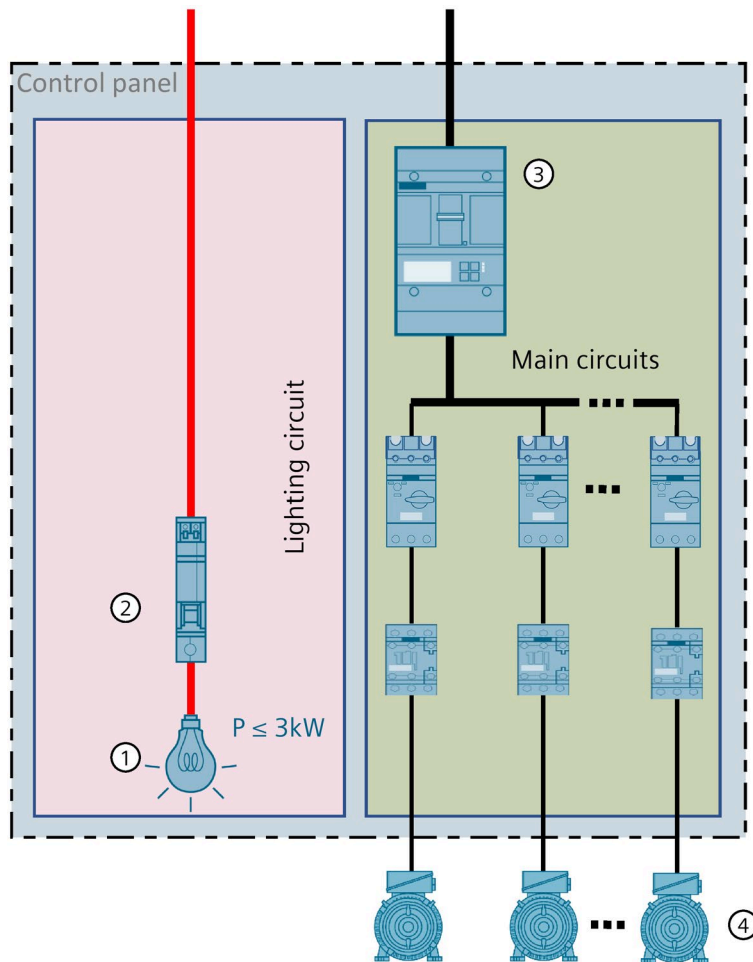


Figure 12-8 Structure machine lighting, using the example inside industrial control panel option 5

Marking the control panel and the machine

13.1 General requirements

When attaching labels and warning plates, the expected ambient conditions shall always be taken into account. The ambient conditions can affect the material and the method of fixing.

The attachment of labels and markings is used to provide adequate information for the connection and commissioning of the machine and its associated equipment parts. On the other hand, markings can provide adequate information for the operation, for the operator, and for the service personnel.

The markings shall be provided before any possible testing and commissioning, and before adjustments and maintenance work.

It is also important for machine operators that function markings are provided on operator controls, visual indicators and displays. Some of the requirements for marking in the standards NFPA 79 and UL 508A go beyond the minimum requirements of the NEC.

13.2 Nameplate

Industrial control panel enclosures and the electrical equipment of machinery shall be provided with a readable nameplate. The nameplate shall be permanently attached and shall remain visible following installation and commissioning.

13.2.1 Requirements of NFPA 79

The nameplate shall be attached either to the enclosure or to the machine immediately adjacent to the enclosure. On smaller machines, this data can also be included in the nameplate for the machine.

The following information is required on the nameplate:

- Manufacturer's name or trademark
- Serial number / production number
- Rated voltage, number of phases, and frequency (if AC voltage), and full-load current for each supply
- Ampere rating of the largest connected motor load or consumers
- Maximum ampere rating of the short-circuit and ground fault protective device (if provided in the electrical equipment)
- SCCR of the control panel
- Designation of electrical circuit diagram documentation

Information regarding the machine nameplate data

- **Rated voltage**

If overcurrent protective devices with a slash rating are used (e.g. 120 / 240 V, 480 Y / 277 V, 600 Y / 347 V), either the lower voltage or the complete slash rating shall be specified on the nameplate.

- **Full-load current**

Specification of the full-load current does not have to include the total of all rated currents of all installed loads or circuits. A capacity factor (e.g. for oversized motors) or a simultaneity factor (max. possible operation) may be used.

- **Incoming supply**

Where more than one incoming supply circuit is to be provided, there shall be a marking on the nameplate for each incoming supply circuit

- On small machines where only a motor branch circuit is used, the motor nameplate shall be permitted to serve as the electrical equipment nameplate where it is plainly visible.
- **Overcurrent protection in the incoming supply circuit**

If the infeed cable and the associated overcurrent protection are part of the machine equipment, this must be marked accordingly. A separate label shall be permitted to be used for this.

Requirement of NFPA 79:

Supply conductor and machine
overcurrent protection provided
at machine supply terminals

Figure 13-1 Marking of the incoming supply circuit conductor with overcurrent protection

13.2.2 Requirements according to UL 508A

The nameplate for control panels must be attached externally on the enclosure.

Screws, rivets or adhesive can be used to fasten the nameplate. The information on the nameplate shall be applied either by means of die-stamping, silkscreening, or etching in metal or plastic. Optionally, indelible ink on adhesive-backed labels is also permissible.

The requirements for nameplate information are very similar to the specifications in NFPA 79 as described in the previous section "Requirements of NFPA 79".

The nameplate shall also provide the following information:

- Enclosure Type Rating – against external influences
- Place of manufacture (for those cases where industrial control panels of one manufacturer are assembled at different sites)
- Greatest connected heater load in amperes

Additional information shall be added to the nameplate if the control panel is part of the equipment of a machine and thus NFPA 79 can be required.

"Industrial control panel for Industrial Machinery"

13.2.3 Example

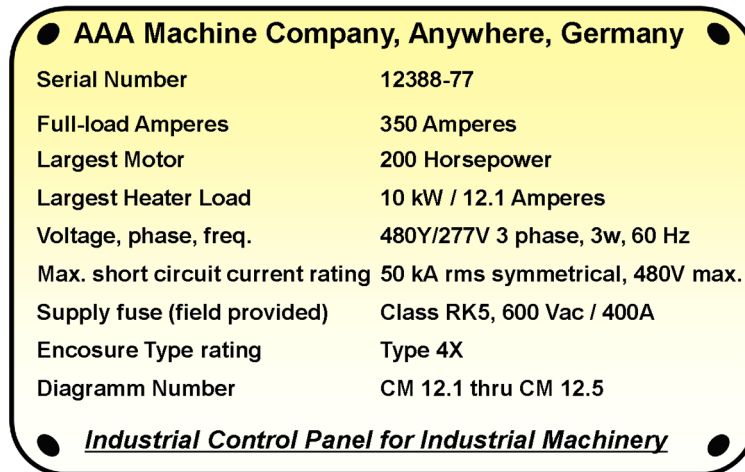


Figure 13-2 Example of a nameplate

13.3 Marking of the enclosure type rating on enclosures

As well as the marking of the enclosure type rating on the enclosure (see Chapter Requirements according to UL 508A (Page 307)), UL 508A stipulates further requirements with regard to openings and cable entries in enclosures.

Openings for the following components shall be correspondingly marked:

- Conduits
- External connections
- Pushbuttons
- Cable entries
- Cable distributors

This information is for the electrical installation engineer on-site and shall ensure that the desired enclosure type rating is observed even after completion of the wiring work.

You can find detailed information about this in UL 508A.

Furthermore, suitable markings are required on each section of several industrial control panels that are assembled and connected on-site.

Example:

Section ____ of ____, see diagram No. ____ for
interconnections

Figure 13-3 Marking of industrial control panel sections

13.4 Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)

13.4.1 General information

All terminals in the industrial control panel provided for the connection of field wiring shall be appropriately marked.

Information about the following shall be provided:

- Connection of the incoming supply circuit conductor
- Loads
- Control circuits

A terminal marking consisting of an alphanumeric code used shall correspond to markings on the field wiring diagram.

13.4.2 Markings for all field wiring terminals

All terminals in the industrial control panel used for field wiring shall be provided with the following information:

- Inside the industrial control panel, in proximity or directly on the terminal itself,
- Or in the circuit diagram
-

Note

If you decide to enter these terminal markings into the circuit diagram, you have to reference the type plate on this circuit diagram.

- Type of conductive material to be connected
- Only suitable for connection of copper conductors → **"Use Copper Conductors only"**
- Only suitable for connection of aluminum conductors → **"Use Aluminum Conductors Only"**
- Suitable for copper or aluminum conductors
 - **"Use Copper or Aluminum Conductors"** or
 - **"Use Copper, Copper-Clad Aluminum or Aluminum Conductors"**
- Suitable for copper or copper-clad aluminum conductors
"Use Copper or Copper-clad Aluminum conductors"

- Permissible temperature range (**applies only to terminals in the power circuit!**)
 - **60 °C (140°F)** for terminals with a rated current less than 100 A
 - **75 °C (167°F)** for terminals with a rated current less than 100 A and approval for the 75 °C temperature range
 - **75 °C (167°F)** for terminals with a rated current greater than 100 A

Exception: Specification of the temperature is not required for non-motor loads with a rated current less than 15 A.

- Tightening torque for terminals with screw-type terminals
 - Marking in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications, the installation instructions, or the markings on the product.

Example:

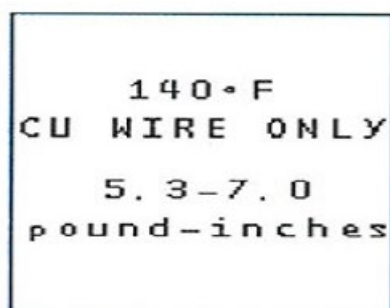


Figure 13-4 Example of terminal marking

- Or in accordance with the table values of the **UL 508A standard**. In the tables below, the values are specified depending on the screw type:

Table 13-1 Tightening torque for screws (Page 313)

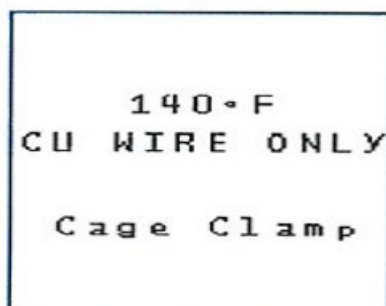
Table 13-2 Tightening torque for slotted head screws smaller than No. 10 intended for use with 8 AWG (8.4 mm²) or smaller conductors (Page 314)

Table 13-3 Tightening torque for socket head screws (Page 314)

Components that are already visibly marked with the required torque (e.g. on the nameplate of motor protection devices, contactors, or fuse holders) do not require any further separate marking.

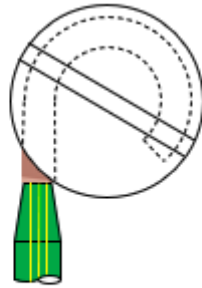
If spring-loaded connections (Cage Clamp) are used, there is no need for marking the required tightening torque. A "Cage Clamp" indication can be attached instead.

Example:



13.4 Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)

Figure 13-5 Example of terminal marking with spring-loaded terminals



Wire-binding screw

Figure 13-6 Example of terminal marking with "wire binding screw"

Exceptions to marking with the tightening torque:

- Terminal screws for wire connections, "wire-binding screw"
- Terminals for control circuits with a rated tightening torque of 7 inch-lb (0.8 Nm)

13.4 Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)

Table 13- 1 Tightening torque for screws

Test wire size installed in connector		Tightening torque, pound-inches (Nm)							
		Slotted head No. 10 and larger				Hexagonal head-external drive socket wrench			
AWG or kcmil	(mm ²)	Slot width – 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) or less and slot length 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) or less		Slot width – over 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) or less and slot length 1/4 inch (6.4 mm)		Split-bolt connectors		Other connectors	
18 ... 10	(0.82 ... 5.3)	20	(2.3)	35	(4.0)	80	(9.0)	75	(8.5)
8	(8.4)	25	(2.8)	40	(4.5)	80	(9.0)	75	(8.5)
6 ... 4	(13.3 ... 21.2)	35	(4.0)	45	(5.1)	165	(18.6)	110	(12.4)
3	(26.7)	35	(4.0)	50	(5.6)	275	(31.1)	150	(16.9)
2	(33.6)	40	(4.5)	50	(5.6)	275	(31.1)	150	(16.9)
1	(42.4)	–	–	50	(5.6)	275	(31.1)	150	(16.9)
1/0 ... 2/0	(53.5 ... 67.4)	–	–	50	(5.6)	385	(43.5)	180	(20.3)
3/0 ... 4/0	(85.0 ... 107.2)	–	–	50	(5.6)	500	(56.5)	250	(28.2)
250 ... 350	(127 ... 177)	–	–	50	(5.6)	650	(73.4)	325	(36.7)
400	(203)	–	–	50	(5.6)	825	(93.2)	375	(36.7)
500	(253)	–	–	50	(5.6)	825	(93.2)	375	(36.7)
600 ... 750	(304 ... 380)	–	–	50	(5.6)	1000	(113.0)	375	(36.7)
800 ... 1000	(406 ... 508)	–	–	50	(5.6)	1100	(124.3)	500	(56.5)
1250 ... 2000	(635 ... 1010)	–	–	–	–	1100	(124.3)	600	(67.8)

NOTE – For values of slot width or length not corresponding to those specified, the largest torque value associated with the conductor size shall be marked. Slot width is the nominal design value. Slot length shall be measured at the bottom of the slot.

Source: UL 508A, Table 54.1

13.4 Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)

Table 13- 2 Tightening torque for slotted head screws smaller than No. 10 intended for use with 8 AWG (8.4 mm²) or smaller conductors

Slot length of screw ^a		Tightening torque, pound-inches (Nm)			
		Slot width of screw ^b , in (mm)			
Inches	(mm)	Smaller than 0.047 (1.2)		0.047 (1.2) and larger	
Less than 5/32	(4)	7	(0.79)	9	(1.0)
5/32	(4)	7	(0.79)	12	(1.4)
3/16	(4.7)	7	(0.79)	12	(1.4)
7/32	(5.6)	7	(0.79)	12	(1.4)
1/4	(6.4)	9	(1.0)	12	(1.4)
9/32	(7.1)	–	–	15	(1.7)
Above 9/32	(7.1)	–	–	20	(2.3)

^a For slot lengths of intermediate values, torques pertaining to the next shorter slot length shall be utilized. For screws with multiple tightening means, the largest torque value associated with the conductor size shall be marked. Slot length shall be measured at the bottom of the slot.

^b Slot width is the nominal design value.

Source: UL 508A, Table 54.2

Table 13- 3 Tightening torque for socket head screws

Socket size across flats		Tightening torque	
Inches	(mm)	Pound-inches	(Nm)
1/8	(3.2)	45	(5.1)
5/32	(4.0)	100	(11.3)
3/16	(4.8)	120	(13.6)
7/32	(5.6)	150	(16.9)
1/4	(6.4)	200	(22.6)
5/16	(7.9)	275	(31.1)
3/8	(9.5)	375	(42.4)
1/2	(12.7)	500	(56.5)
9/16	(14.3)	600	(67.8)

^a For screws with multiple tightening means, the largest torque value associated with the conductor size shall be marked. Slot length shall be measured at the bottom of the slot.

Source: UL 508A, Table 54.3

Marking of grounding terminals for the connection of field-installed equipment grounding (protective) conductors

Terminals for connecting field-installed equipment grounding (protective) conductors shall be marked with the following information in contrast to other terminal blocks **on site in close proximity** at the terminal itself:

1. Green hexagonal screw that cannot be readily removed from the terminal.
2. Green hexagonal nut that cannot be readily removed from the terminal.
3. With the words "Ground"
4. With the letters "G", "GRD", "GND"

Note

The UL508A also allows the marking with Grounding, GR and GRND.

5. With the symbol from IEC 60417 
6. If the terminal is within an enclosure (e.g. terminal block), identification is made either with designations/abbreviations (see Point 3 or 4) or with the symbol in accordance with Point 5.

The color combination green/yellow can also be optionally used.

Example: Green/yellow marked grounding terminals together with other through-type terminals

Note

According to NFPA 79 the IEC marking "PE" can in addition be applied with the points 3, 4, and 5. Because of the low degree of familiarity of the abbreviation "PE" and because the NFPA 79 of the green-yellow conductor for protective conductors must also have a "dominant" green element, it is recommended to mark the terminals according to points 3, 4 and 5.

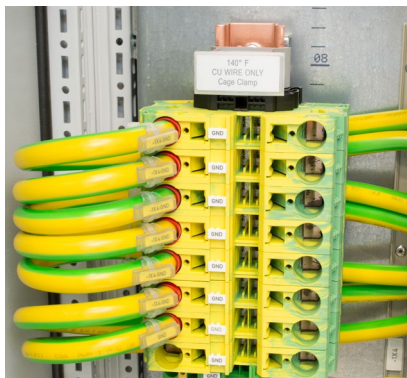


Figure 13-7 Siemens 8WH grounding terminals

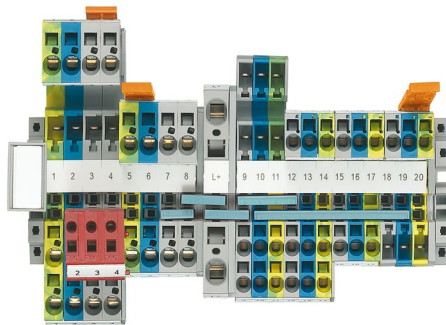


Figure 13-8 Siemens 8WH terminal arrangement

13.4.3 Other markings for terminals in control circuits

In accordance with UL 508A, the following terminals in control circuits shall be appropriately marked for the connection of field conductors. All the following markings may be attached either on site next to the terminals or drawn in the circuit diagram.

1. Terminals in "Low-voltage limited energy circuits" or control circuits with a voltage ≤ 30 Vrms shall be marked with one of the following:

- "Class 1 control circuit"
- "Use Class 1 conductors"
- "For connection to a Class 1 remote Control Circuit"

Background: Since neither the NEC nor NFPA 79 describe a Low-voltage limited energy circuit, this is regarded as a Class 1 control circuit when it leaves the control panel.

2. Terminals in Class 2 control circuits shall be marked with one of the following:

- "Class 2 control circuit"
- "Use Class 2 conductors"
- "For connection to a Class 2 remote control circuit"

3. Industrial control panels that contain Class 2 control circuits as well as Class 1 control circuits and/or power circuits" shall be provided with instructions on how to ensure the minimum distance of 2 inches to other terminals if the isolation of the terminals is not ensured by means of barriers. (UL 508A, Chapter 28.4.2)
4. When using conductor cross-sections less than 14 AWG (2.1 mm^2), marking shall be carried out dependent on the connectable cross-section in accordance with the table "Current carrying capacity of field wiring conductors smaller than 14 AWG (2.1 mm^2)" below.

13.4 Terminal markings for connecting external circuits (Field Wiring)

Table 13- 4 Current carrying capacity of field wiring conductors smaller than 14 AWG (2.1 mm²)

Maximum control circuit terminal ampacity, amperes	Minimum terminal wire range		Marking required
	AWG	(mm ²)	
10	16	(1.3)	Yes
10	16 ... 14	(1.3 ... 2.1)	No
7	18	(0.82)	Yes
7	18 ... 14	(0.82 ... 2.1)	No
5	20 ... 18	(0.52 ... 0.82)	Yes
5	20 ... 14	(0.52 ... 2.1)	No
3	22 ... 18	(0.32 ... 0.82)	Yes
3	22 ... 14	(0.32 ... 2.1)	No
2	24 ... 18	(0.20 ... 0.82)	Yes
2	24 ... 14	(0.20 ... 2.1)	No
1	26 ... 18	(0.13 ... 0.82)	Yes
1	26 ... 14	(0.13 ... 2.1)	No
0.8	28 ... 18	(0.08 ... 0.82)	Yes
0.8	28 ... 14	(0.08 ... 2.1)	No
0.5	30 ... 18	(0.05 ... 0.82)	Yes
0.5	30 ... 14	(0.05 ... 2.1)	No

Source: UL 508A Table 37.1

13.5 Warning and safety instructions

The standards UL 508A for Industrial Control Panels and NFPA 79 for Industrial Machinery contain a host of requirements regarding warning and safety information.

The UL 508A requirements are dealt with first below, and then the requirements of NFPA 79 separately.

13.5.1 Warning information in accordance with UL 508A

13.5.1.1 General information

Warning information is used on one hand to provide the operator with information on safe operation and operator control. On the other hand, it is used to inform service and maintenance personnel of the electrical hazards involved with the machines and plants. For this reason, the information shall be easy to read in the respective application, easily visible, and permanently attached without impairing the user of the machinery and associated equipment. For the operator, the information shall be easy to read under normal operating conditions, and it shall be attached at appropriate positions where service and maintenance work is carried out.

Warning information shall always start with the preface "**Caution**" or "**Warning**", depending on the potential hazard. The minimum size of the letters shall be 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).

The letters for the remaining text of the warning notice shall have a minimum height of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).



Figure 13-9 Example of warning information on the industrial control panel enclosure

ANSI Z535

The ANSI Z535 series of standards offers comprehensive information for marking safety labels.

ANSI Z535 offers support in deciding on which signal is to be used.

Each signal word represents initially a specific hazard potential and the consequences of the hazard.



DANGER indicates a hazardous situation that will result in death or severe injury if the hazard situation is not prevented.



WARNING indicates a hazardous situation that can result in death or severe injury if the hazard situation is not prevented.



CAUTION indicates a hazardous situation that can result in minor or moderate injury if the hazard situation is not prevented.



NOTICE is used for practical information outside the context of possible personal injury.



Safety instructions or similar terms indicate specific safety-related instructions or processes.

Table 13- 5 Selection guide for signal word when death or injury can occur

		Probability of an accident if the hazardous situation is not prevented	
		Will occur	Could occur
Probability of death or severe personal injury in the event of an accident	Will occur		
	Could occur		

Source: ANSI Z535 Ed. 2011

Table 13- 6 Selection guide for signal word in the case of minor or moderate injury

For all occurrences	
---------------------	--

Source: ANSI Z535 Ed. 2011

Table 13- 7 Selection guide for signal word if there is no risk of injury

For all occurrences	
---------------------	--

Source: ANSI Z535 Ed. 2011

Flowchart for the process of selecting signal words

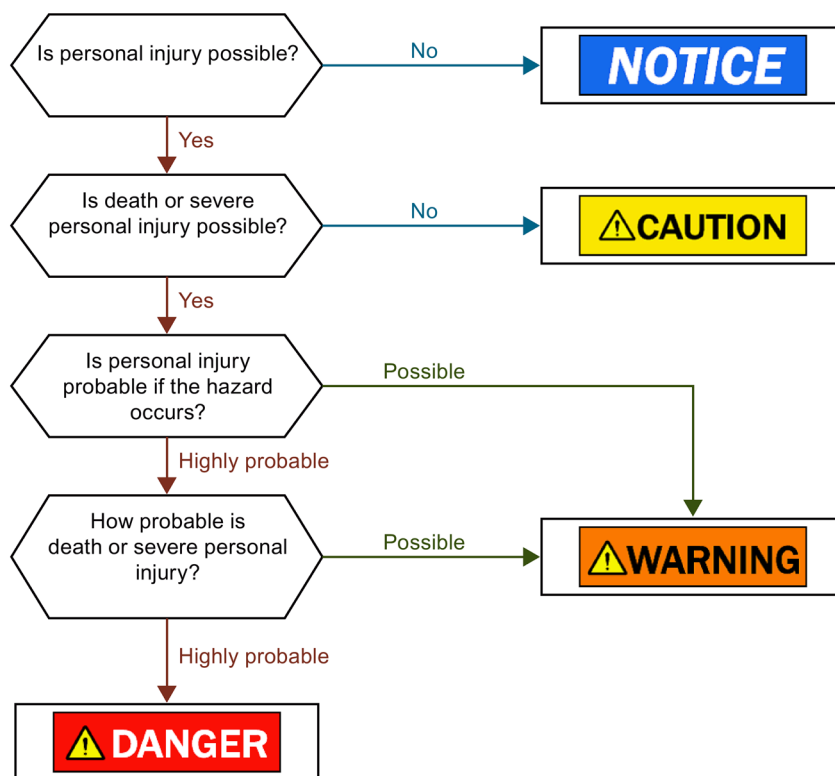


Figure 13-10 Flowchart for selecting signal words

According to ANSI Z535, safety information has several features.

The figure below describes the features of safety information:

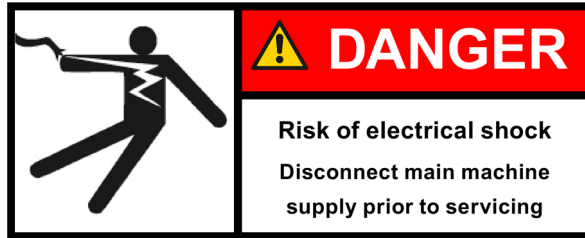


Figure 13-11 Notes on security

13.5.1.2 Multiple incoming supply circuits

If multiple incoming supply circuits are available for an industrial control panel and multiple disconnecting means have been provided for them, this shall be indicated.

Exception: This requirement does not apply for galvanically isolated, separately supplied control circuits. An example of this would be an "excepted control circuit". See Chapter Excepted circuits (Page 76).

Example of marking:

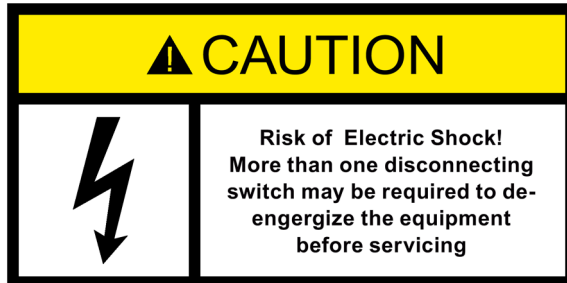


Figure 13-12 Example marking for multiple incoming supply circuit conductors

13.5.1.3 Separate markings for circuit breakers and motor circuit breakers

Instantaneous trip circuit breakers without overload protection

If Instantaneous trip circuit breakers are used for branch circuit protection in combination with motor controllers and motor overload protective devices (e.g. contactor-overload assembly), the following two notes shall be attached adjacent to the circuit breaker.



Figure 13-13 Example of warning notice for Instantaneous trip circuit breaker

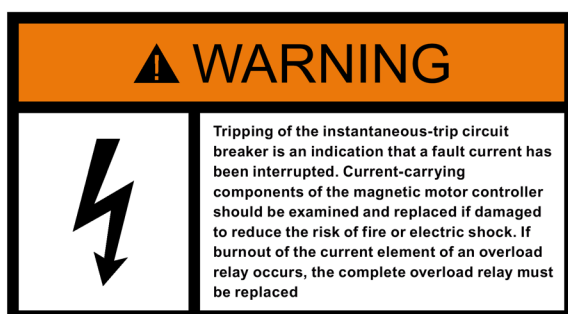


Figure 13-14 Example of warning notice for instantaneous trip circuit breaker

Motor circuit breakers tested as "Self-protected combination motor controller"

Motor circuit breakers tested as Self-protected combination motor controller shall be marked with the following information in the control panel. The marking shall be attached adjacent to the motor circuit breaker.

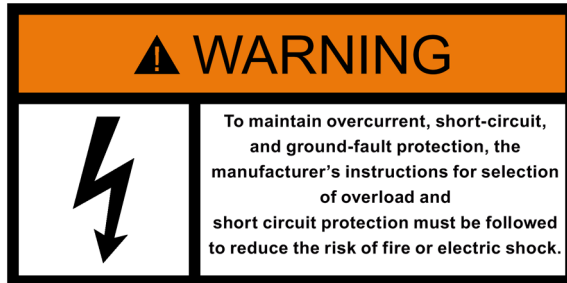


Figure 13-15 Example of warning notice for motor circuit breakers

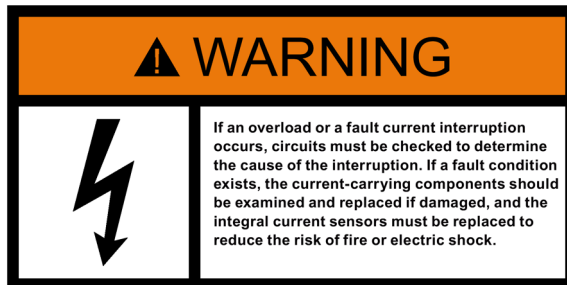


Figure 13-16 Example of warning notice for motor circuit breakers

13.5.2 Safety signs in accordance with NFPA 79 for enclosures with electrical components

13.5.2.1 General information

Safety signs shall always be clearly recognizable and permanently attached. Ambient conditions such as possible contamination, liquids or UV radiation shall also be included.

Machines and associated equipment parts can contain a host of electrical components. In some cases this is not clearly recognizable. For this reason, such enclosures shall be provided with appropriate safety signs. This information shall be attached to the door or the cover. The IEC symbol is an example of an appropriate marking.

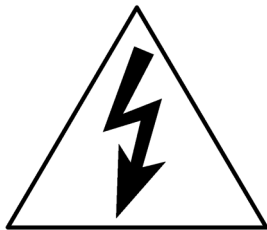


Figure 13-17 IEC symbol for the use of electrical components in enclosures

13.5.2.2 Hazard warning for electric shock and arc flashes

Furthermore, on electrical equipment such as industrial control panels and enclosures containing a main disconnecting means, the hazard of electric shock and the potential hazard of arc flashes (see Chapter Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing) (Page 95)) shall be correspondingly marked. Here too, care shall be taken that the marking is clearly and easily visible. The aim is to alert qualified persons to potential hazards before starting service and maintenance work and to provide them with suitable information. It shall be permitted to omit safety signs where the size of the enclosure precludes placement of the label on the enclosure. Examples in this case are control stations, human-machine interface touch panels (HMI panels), position sensors, etc.

13.5.2.3 Safety sign for disconnecting means

It is not the case that all circuits are always de-energized by the disconnecting means, see Chapter Excepted circuits (Page 76). If disconnect switches or circuit breakers are used in this case as the disconnecting means for the incoming supply circuit conductor, and if they are interlocked with the enclosure, safety signs shall be provided adjacent to the operating handle for the disconnecting means. This sign indicates that not all live parts are de-energized when the disconnecting means is in the open (off) position.

Example sign:



Figure 13-18 Example of safety sign for disconnecting means

When an attachment plug is used as the disconnecting means (see Chapter Devices (Page 72)), a safety sign shall be attached to the control panel enclosure. This shall indicate that the incoming supply circuit conductor shall be disconnected before the enclosure is opened.

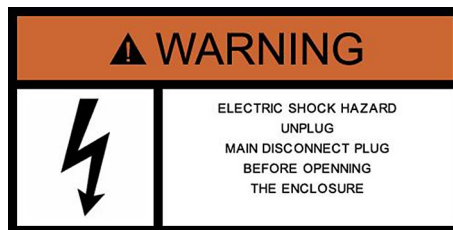


Figure 13-19 Example of safety sign when using attachment plugs as the disconnecting means

The disconnecting means does not necessarily have to be in the same enclosure as the associated electrical equipment. In some cases, this is located in its own enclosure adjacent to the industrial control panel. In such cases, there shall be a sign on the control panel providing the following information:

- The power shall be disconnected from the equipment before the enclosure is opened.
- The enclosure door shall be closed or the cover attached before the power is restored.

13.5.2.4 Arc flash hazards

In addition to the above-mentioned warning notices, the enclosure shall be provided with a sign indicating potential arc flash hazards. This shall be located on the enclosure adjacent to the operating handle for the disconnecting means.

You can find more detailed information and an example of a marking in Chapter Arc flash hazard (protection against arc flashing) (Page 95).

13.6 Device marking on the industrial control panel acc. to UL 508A

13.6.1 Fuse holders

Fuse holders used in the power circuit for branch circuit protection shall be marked.

If the fuse holder is also designed for larger fuses than the rated current of the circuit, the marking shall include details of the following:

- **Fuse type**
- **Voltage**
- **Current rating**

Fuse holders for overcurrent protection of control circuits shall always be marked with the replacement fuse.

The marking shall be provided either immediately adjacent to the respective fuse holder, or as information on the door, or visibly inside the control panel.

Example of marking for fuse holders:

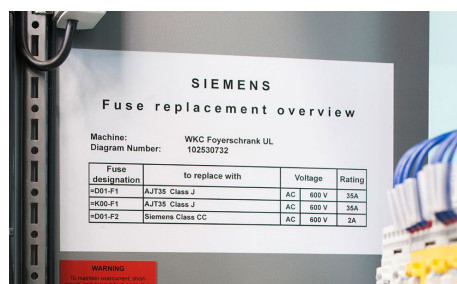


Figure 13-20 Example of marking for fuse holders

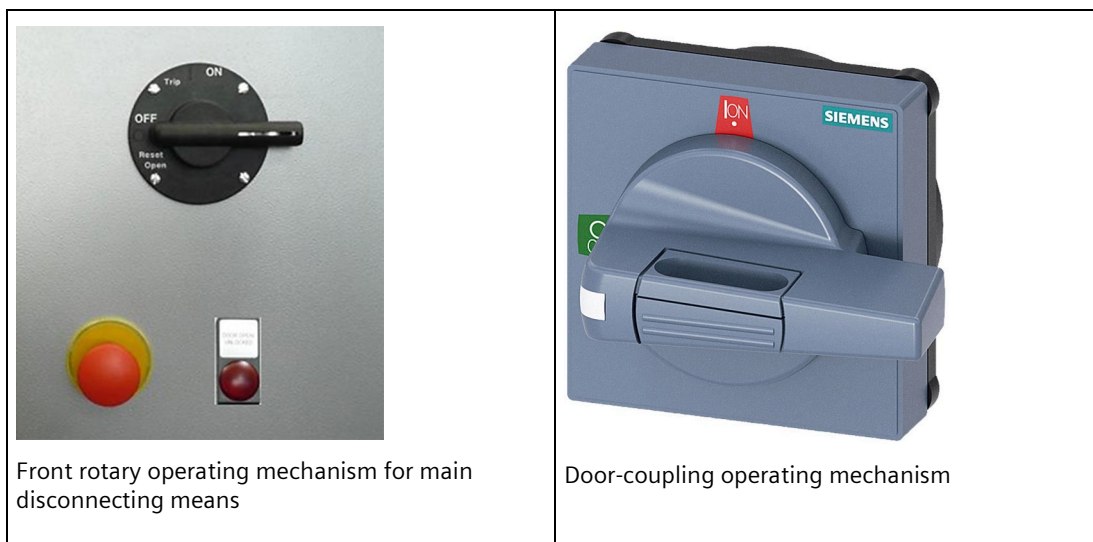
13.6.2 Switches

The "ON" and "OFF" positions on the operating handle of each disconnecting means shall be marked. This is usually provided for in the manufacturer's accessories.

Examples of marking the disconnecting means:



Figure 13-21 Toggle lever for main disconnecting means



A manual switch not intended to be operated under load shall be provided with an appropriate marking in the vicinity of the switch.

Example of marking:

Do not operate under load

Figure 13-22 Example of the marking indicating that switching under load is prohibited

In some cases, it may be necessary to back-feed the disconnecting means. This may be the case where space is restricted in the control panel, for example, to meet the minimum requirements for wire bending space (see Chapter Incoming supply circuit conductor and power terminals (Page 68)).

Back-feeding of the disconnecting means is permissible when:

- The switch is *not* provided with the marking "line" and "load"
- A marking is provided with unambiguous information concerning the location of the disconnect switch. The marking shall be visible on the outside of the control panel without the need to open the door.

13.6.3 Receptacles

Receptacles for general use **in the power circuit** provided with overcurrent protection rated less than the rating of the receptacle shall be clearly marked to this effect immediately adjacent to the receptacle.

Receptacles supplied via a control circuit shall also be marked with the following information:

- Rating of the overcurrent protective device
- The intended use for the devices/receptacles



Figure 13-23 Example of the marking of receptacles for control circuit devices

Multiple pin type receptacles or receptacles for general use rated more than 20 A shall be provided with a marking that they are only permitted to be used for disconnecting and not for current rupturing.

For disconnecting use only,
not for current rupturing

Figure 13-24 Example of text for the marking

13.6.4 Field-installed devices

It is often the case that devices such as disconnecting means, overcurrent protective devices for branch circuits, or also motor overload protective devices are not installed components of the industrial control panel, or the panel builder requires that they are to be provided on-site by the installer.

Another example for this is the use of disconnect switches as the supply disconnecting means without any overcurrent protection or terminals for connecting the incoming supply circuit conductor. These require separate overcurrent protection usually approved by the manufacturer or stated on the UL certificate. The installer or operator of the electrical equipment is thus responsible for installing these field provided devices.

In this case, a suitable marking shall be provided containing sufficient information about the required device and sizing.

The marking shall be included in the relevant documentation (see the documentation reference on the nameplate, in Chapter Marking of the enclosure type rating on enclosures (Page 309)). These are usually the installation diagrams and the assembly instructions used for connecting to the system supply, and for commissioning the equipment.

13.6.5 Separately supplied control circuits

Control circuits in the industrial control panel that are not supplied within the control panel but via a separate incoming supply circuit conductor, and that are not provided with their own overcurrent protection and/or disconnecting means in the control panel, shall be provided with a marking. The marking shall indicate the devices to be provided by the installer. The marking is also provided in the installation diagrams or assembly instructions.

13.6.6 Marking in circuit diagrams / wiring diagrams

All circuit diagrams and wiring diagrams shall always be provided for the respective industrial control panel. These diagrams shall also include information on all devices that may have to be provided on-site by the installer.

The documentation can either be provided separately, in its own document storage area in the industrial control panel, or within the respective control panel.

Optional circuits and components in the circuit and wiring diagrams shall be marked as being not included in the actual scope of supply.

This marking shall be provided separately for each individual component and circuit.

13.6.7 Function identification

Electrical equipment of control panels and machinery often contain a host of visual indicators, control devices, displays, and operator interfaces.

Each individual device shall be provided with a function identification. The function identification can be provided either directly on the device or immediately adjacent to the device. Many devices (e.g. twin pushbuttons, see the figure below) already have a function identification. On other devices (e.g. pendant pushbuttons, see the figure below), marking is provided directly on the enclosure adjacent to the actuating element.

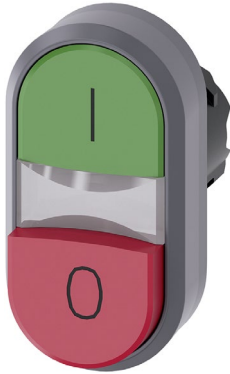


Figure 13-25 Siemens twin pushbutton with 3SB31 00 indicator light function identification on the actuator



Figure 13-26 Siemens 3SB3 38 pendant pushbutton with customized components, function identification adjacent to the actuator

NFPA 79 recommends that manufacturers and customers agree on the symbols for function identification. The following standards are recommended for information on possible symbols:

- IEC 60417 Graphical Symbols for Use on Equipment
- ISO 7000 Graphical Symbols for Use on Equipment

Special attention shall be paid here to pushbuttons and the associated IEC symbols.

13.7 Marking of equipment in accordance with NFPA 79

General information

All electrical equipment and machinery components shall comply with the relevant documentation and be marked accordingly.

The marking shall be durable and easy to read in the installed state.

The markings shall not be removed, even after installation and commissioning of the electrical equipment.

All devices and components in the control panel and in the machinery field shall be plainly marked. The type designation used shall be the same as that used in the circuit diagrams and the relevant documentation. The identification shall be attached immediately adjacent to the equipment, not on the device or component itself.

Exceptions

1. A group identification can also be used in place of an individual identification. This can be necessary where an individual identification is not practicable due to the size or location of the devices.
2. Detailed identification can be omitted on small machines. The scope of the components and devices is restricted in this case to a single motor and controller, and the associated pushbuttons and work lights.

Technical documentation

14.1 General requirements and information

Introduction

The two standards considered in this guide differ widely with regard to the documentation; both with reference to the type and scope of the documentation.

The number of requirements for industrial control panels is considerably lower in UL 508A. The requirements for control panels are dealt with in Chapter Documentation according to UL 508A for machine control panels (Page 335).

The requirements and background principles of NFPA 79 are explained in Chapter Documentation according to NFPA 79 for the electrical equipment of machines and systems (Page 336).

General information on electronic documentation for industrial control panels and machines

Since electrical equipment for machines and their associated industrial control panels is often of a unique nature and varies in terms of its complexity, sufficient documentation shall be provided to cover all the eventualities presented by this.

The purpose of the documentation is to provide the necessary information for:

- **Installation**
- **Operation**
- **Maintenance**

This information may differ considerably due to the varying complexity of the machines and their associated electrical equipment. For relatively basic electrical equipment parts or machines, it shall be permitted to even contain the information in a single document. This document shall still show all the electrical equipment, however, and enough information shall be provided to ensure that the equipment can be connected without difficulty.

The NFPA 79 therefore has a minimum requirement that the technical documentation shall contain information on the following:

- Normal operating conditions
- Electrical supply
- Required ambient conditions
- Handling, transport, and storage
- Inappropriate operation and use of the equipment

Information to be provided

The documentation shall be provided in the form of drawings, diagrams, tables, graphics, and appropriate instructions. The machine manufacturer shall ensure that the machine is supplied together with this documentation. The standards do not specify whether the documentation shall be in hard copy or on a data storage medium. The type and medium of the information provided shall be agreed between the manufacturer and the equipment user, particularly in the case of export trade.

Language

The agreed language for clients and operators in North America is predominantly English. However, simply assuming this will be adequate is not advisable. A second language (such as Spanish or French) is often desirable. This is not restricted to the documentation itself, but may also apply to the markings (such as warning notices).

In addition, many "American English" expressions are used in the standards and these are often completely different to the relevant IEC standards, which strongly favor "British English". If the information is being translated, this aspect shall be taken into account in order to avoid misunderstandings.

General note

Both the UL 508A and the NFPA 79 standards refer to the electrical equipment of machines. If a machine manufacturer obtains the electronic equipment (e.g. the industrial control panel) from a third-party panel builder, the documentation format and level of detail should be agreed in advance. This is particularly important in the case of overlapping documents (e.g. mechanical overview diagrams) that contain electrical components. When exporting to North America in particular, it is crucial to ensure that both partners are aware of the necessary standards and requirements.

14.2 Documentation according to UL 508A for machine control panels

Requirement according to UL508A

General information

The following documentation requirements refer exclusively to the electrical components and functions of the respective industrial control panel.

The following complete set of documents shall be provided for the industrial control panel:

- Circuit diagram
- Installation diagram
- Wiring diagram

The components used by the manufacturer shall be clearly shown.

Components external to the industrial control panel

If the diagrams referred to above include field components that are connected to the industrial control panel, these shall be identified clearly and visibly, and they shall correspond to the marking of the terminals (see also notes on the identification of conductor and connection point in the Chapter Identification and color (Page 277)). Based on this identification, it should be clear that the components shall be provided and installed by the installer.

Standardized industrial control panel diagrams

Some manufacturers use standardized industrial control panel diagrams to achieve the best possible coverage for the various types of panel available.

If these standardized industrial control panel diagrams contain components and circuits that are **optional** and **usually provided by the manufacturer/panel builder**, the diagrams shall be adapted accordingly. They shall be limited to those components and circuits that are actually provided by the manufacturer or panel builder.

The modifications shall be made for each individual device and/or circuit.

14.3 Documentation according to NFPA 79 for the electrical equipment of machines and systems

Information and documents to be provided

The following table summarizes the required information that shall be provided with the electrical equipment according to NFPA 79.

Some requirements are optional and identified as such in the "Comments" column.

Table 14- 1 Summary of the required information and specifications

Information/Documents	Comments
Clear and comprehensive description of the equipment. Including installation, mounting, and connecting to the electrical supply (or supplies)	-
Requirements for the electrical supply	-
Overview diagrams, block diagrams	If appropriate and applicable
Information on: • Programming • Sequence of operation • Frequency of inspections • Frequency and methods of function tests • Adjustments, maintenance, and repair • Interconnection diagrams • Industrial control panel layout • Manual with instructions and servicing information • Required ambient conditions (e.g. lighting, vibration, noise levels, atmospheric contaminants)	Where appropriate and applicable
Description of the safety monitoring features, interacting functions, and function interlocking	-
Description of the safety monitoring measures if the primary safety functions are overridden (e.g. manual programming, program verification)	-
Measures to check dangerous energies	-
Explanation of unique conditions/terms	-
Parts list and list of recommended spare parts	-
Maintenance instructions and adjustment procedure	-
Reference information for: • Lubrication diagrams • Pneumatic diagrams • Hydraulic diagrams • Diagrams for miscellaneous equipment (coolant, refrigerator, etc.)	If relevant and applicable

Requirements applicable to all documentation

The information required in the table "Summary of the required information and data" shall be provided in a set format. For referencing of the different documents, NFPA 79 offers some leeway and offers the following two selection options:

- Every document shall carry as cross-reference the document numbers of all other documents belonging to the electrical equipment of the machine. This method is limited to a maximum of 4 documents.
- All documents shall be listed with a document number and title in a drawing or document list.

A table of contents with references to the main sections of the electronic documents (e.g. terminal diagram, parts list, control system, circuit diagram, assembly drawing, etc.) shall appear on the first page where helpful.

Recommendation

Where appropriate, the documents shall also contain information regarding current ratings, peak starting currents, and the maximum permissible voltage drop. Preferably, this data shall be provided in the wiring diagram or layout diagrams.

14.3.1 Installation diagrams according to NFPA 79

To enable the electrical equipment to be assembled on site, sufficient information shall be provided. This is ensured by providing installation and set-up diagrams. In more complicated cases, it is recommended that the assembly drawings are referred to for further details.

The installation site and position of the incoming power supply shall be clearly identified. The operator shall normally provide overcurrent protection for the incoming power supply circuit and supply conductor(s) to the machine. The overcurrent protection shall be adapted in line with the electrical equipment for the machine.

Clear specifications shall be provided regarding the required overcurrent protection for the incoming supply circuit conductor, in the form of the following:

- Nature and type of the protective device (e.g. fuse, circuit breaker)
- Characteristics (selectivity behavior, time delay, overload behavior)
- Rated currents of the protective device

Where necessary, a requirement for raceways and ducts shall be detailed; to be provided as follows:

- In the foundations, provided by the user
- Outside the machine, between the machine and the associated equipment parts, or in the factory, by the user

This generally forms part of the agreement between the manufacturer and the user; it is essential that this is agreed on. The inquiry form Checklists (Page 372) in the Annex provides some assistance here.

If necessary, data relating to space required for removal or servicing of electrical equipment and components shall be provided. Pay particular attention to Chapter Working space (Page 232).

If necessary, data relating to all external connections shall be provided. In addition to the supply-side connection, other connections may be required (e.g. for interlocking with other machines, emergency power supplies).

Where the machine is intended to be operated from more than one source of electrical supply, this shall be noted in the interconnection diagram. This information shall indicate all the modifications for every possible supply and specify the required modifications.

14.3.2 Layout diagrams, block diagrams, and function diagrams

Layout diagrams and block diagrams for the interaction of functions are particularly useful for gaining a quick introduction to machines and an understanding of the principles of operation.

Block diagrams

Block diagrams shall only represent the functional interrelationships as symbols and do not necessarily need to show all interconnections.

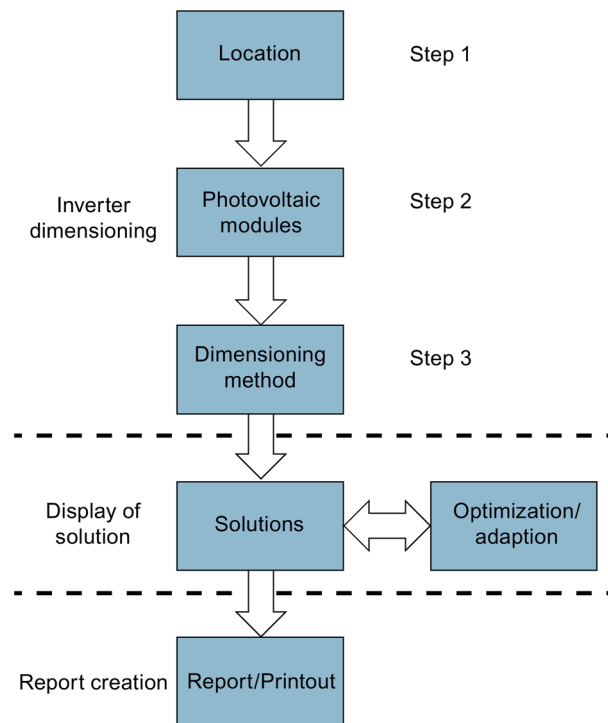


Figure 14-1 Example of a block diagram

Function diagrams

Function diagrams are particularly appropriate for showing logical interconnections. These diagrams are often very useful when it comes to commissioning and troubleshooting; for this reason, they shall not just be used for complex functional interrelationships.

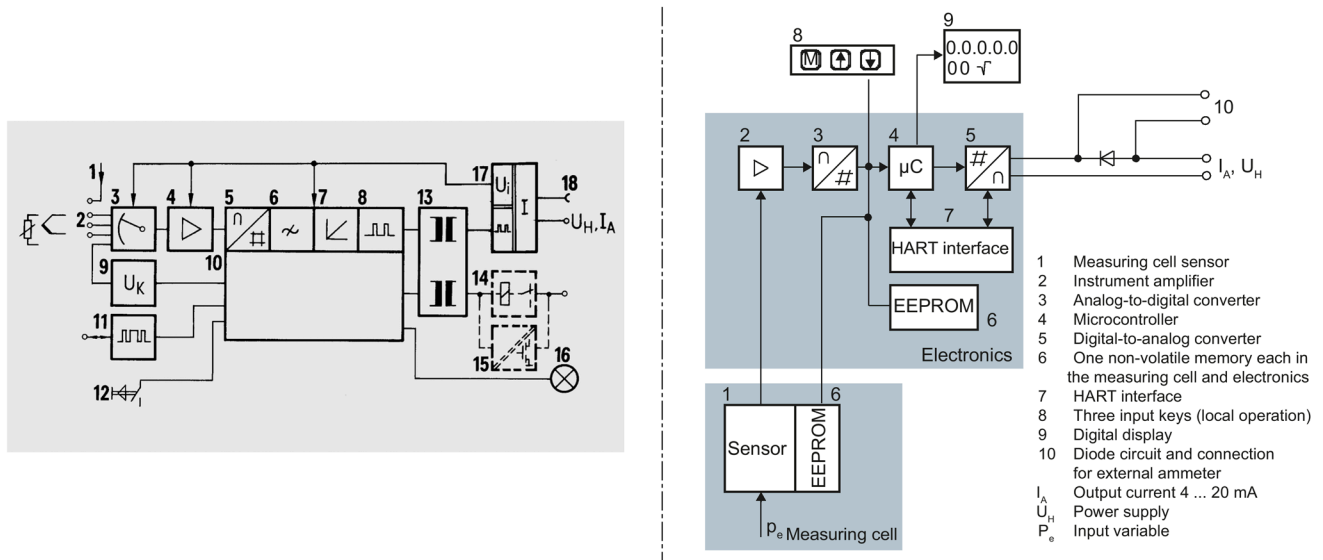


Figure 14-2 Examples of function diagrams

Circuit diagrams

Circuit diagrams are the most important documents for qualified persons working with electrical equipment for machines. NFPA 79 accordingly contains comprehensive requirements for the layout of these diagrams.

Circuit diagrams shall show the electrical circuits of the machine itself and of the associated equipment.

Exception

Commercially available products or field replaceable components do not require circuit diagrams that have been specially prepared for the documentation.

Symbols

All electrical symbols that are included shall be listed in accordance with the IEEE 315/315A standard "Graphic Symbols for Electrical and Electronics Diagrams".

If symbols that are not included in IEEE 315 are used, these shall be described separately in the circuit diagrams. The symbols used shall be applied consistently throughout. Switching between symbols that have the same meaning but different representations is not permitted.

A comprehensive list of the IEEE 315 symbols can be found in the Annex under Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA (Page 377).

Relevant information, such as the motor horsepower, frame size or speed, shall be listed adjacent to its symbols.

Where appropriate, a diagram showing the terminals for the connection interfaces shall be provided. Circuit symbols shall be shown in electromechanical diagrams with all supplies turned "off".

Examples of these include the electrical power supply, pneumatic and hydraulic components, and lubricating devices.

For the sake of simplicity, terminal diagrams are permitted to be provided in conjunction with the circuit diagrams if document references are made to the detailed circuit diagram.

Starting condition

Specifications for the machine and the associated electrical equipment shall be provided in the circuit diagrams in normal starting condition at an ambient temperature of 20 °C (68 °F). Settings shall be indicated in the circuit diagram.

Marking of conductors

Conductors shall be marked in a logical, comprehensible order.

The standard recommends identifying them according to one or a combination of the following methods:

- Numbers
- Letters
- Colors

For more detailed information, refer to Chapter Identification and color (Page 277).

Circuit characteristics

Circuits are intended to display functions and facilitate understanding. They are also particularly helpful for troubleshooting as well as service and maintenance work. For this reason, they should be created with the relevant users in mind and in a useful format.

A cross-referencing scheme shall be used in conjunction with relays, output devices, limit switches, and pressure switches. This allows any contact associated with the device to be found easily on the circuit diagram.

Note

Classification and function identification

As referred to in the section on "Symbols", the symbols in the circuit diagram are based on IEEE 315. However, the classifications and function identification methods from IEEE 315 are not intended to be used for marking the devices or components.

Examples of equipment designations according to NFPA 79 are shown in the figure "Examples of equipment designations".

NFPA 79, Annex E, offers an overview of device and component designations. Below is an extract. You can find the complete overview in the Annex under Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA (Page 377).

Table 14- 2 Examples of equipment designations

Designation	Device
ABE	Alarm or Annunciator Bell
ABU	Alarm or Annunciator Buzzer
AH	Alarm or Annunciator Horn
AM	Ammeter
AT	Autotransformer
CAP	Capacitor
CB	Circuit Breaker
CI	Circuit Interrupter
CNC	Computerized Numerical Controller
CON	Contact
COs	Cable-Operated (Emergency) Switch
CPU	Central Processing Unit

Source: NFPA 79, Table E.1 "Device and Component Designations"

Control circuits

Control circuits shall be displayed between two vertical lines. These represent the AC or DC supply for the control circuit.

The left line (from the perspective of the reader) represents the DC positive supply (phase L+), while the right line represents the DC negative (N, ground).

The control circuit devices shall be shown on horizontal lines (rungs) between the two vertical lines.

Parallel control circuits shall be shown on separate horizontal lines, either above or below the control circuits that supply them.

The following figure, "Example of control circuit diagram", shows example of a control circuit to facilitate understanding.

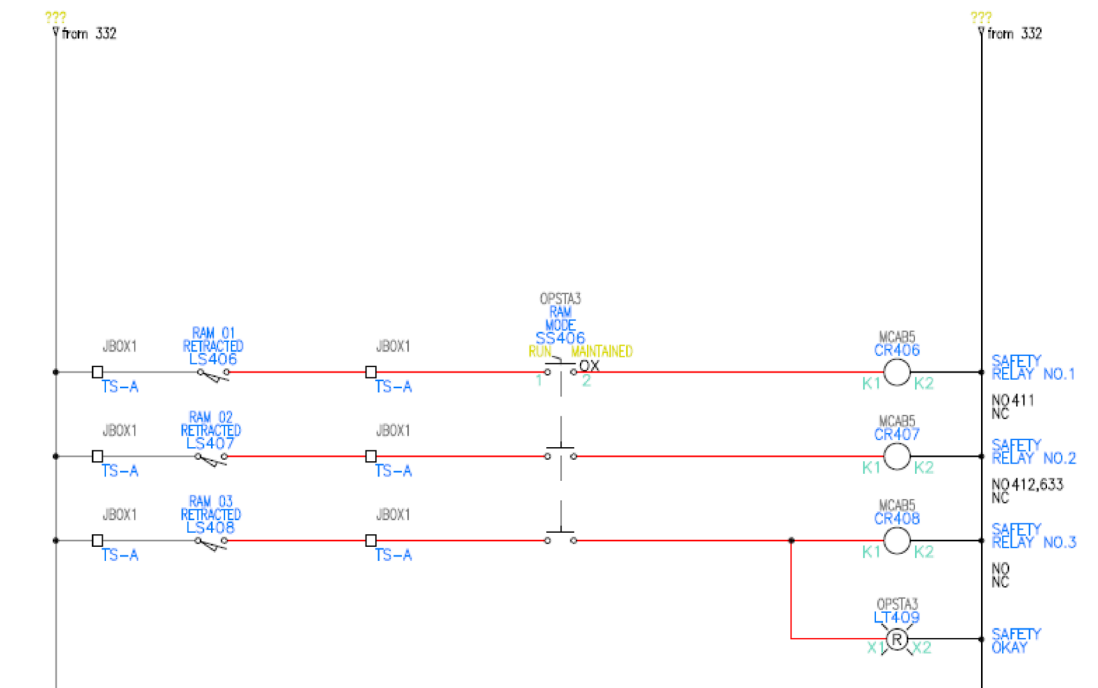


Figure 14-3 Example of control circuit diagram

Exception

Alternative conventions for circuit diagrams may be used, provided this has been agreed between the manufacturer and the user.

14.3 Documentation according to NFPA 79 for the electrical equipment of machines and systems

Diagrams according to IEC standards

Diagrams that comply with IEC standards are a very common alternative. Example: IEC 60617 "Graphical Symbols for Diagrams", for the symbols in electrical circuit diagrams.

See also the examples in the figure "Power circuit according to IEC representation", and the figure "Control circuit according to IEC representation".

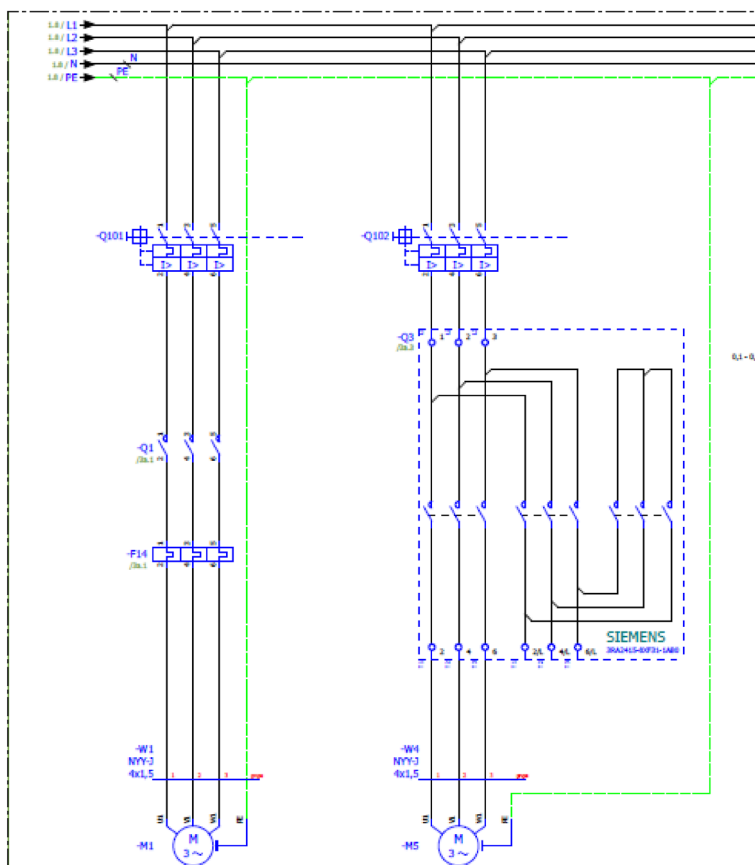


Figure 14-4 Power circuit according to IEC representation

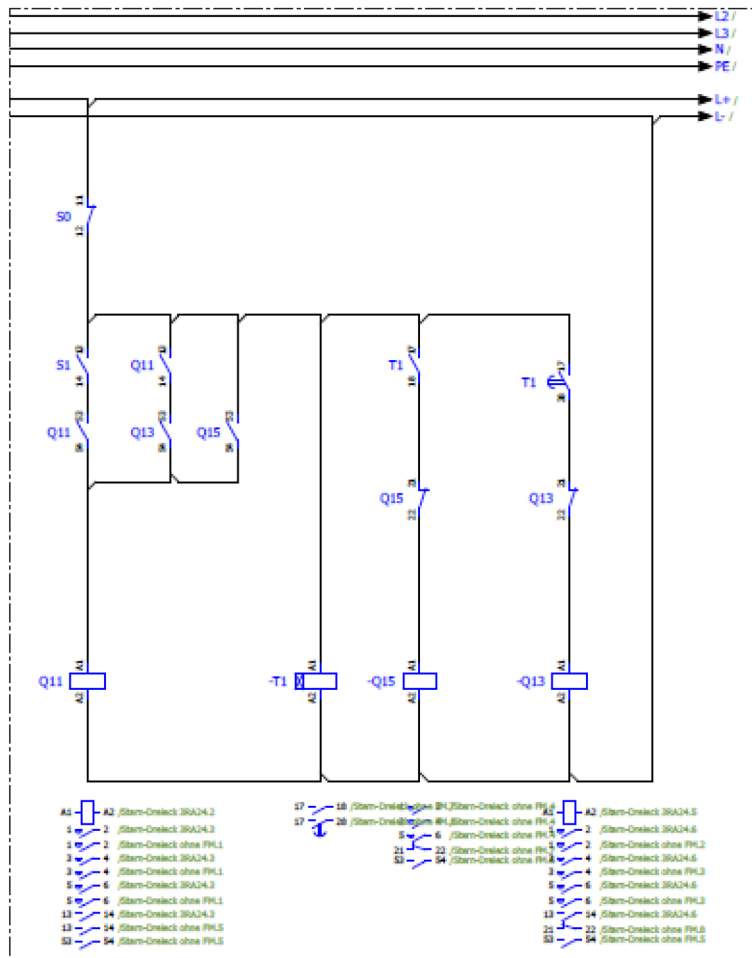


Figure 14-5 Control circuit according to IEC representation

For large systems and machines, a diagram shall be provided for all the connections between the individual system parts and the enclosures. This shall include all external connections for the electrical components.

Interlocking wiring diagrams shall show the devices, relevant functions, and conductors used in each circuit.

If plug/receptacle connections are used, the circuit diagram shall show the pin identification.

14.3.3 Operating manual

The operating manual is intended to provide a description of the machine, its processes, and its associated parts, on the basis of which the electrical equipment has been designed and developed. This also includes the set-up, installation, and operation of the machine.

Where the operation of the equipment is programmable, detailed information on programming methods and program verification shall be provided. Safety procedures shall be provided, where necessary.

Recommendation

Particular attention should be paid to safety measures. This also includes **foreseeable unintended** use and operation.

14.3.4 Maintenance manual

Maintenance manuals are intended to enable systems and machines to achieve a high level of availability. Many components are subject to natural wear during operation. This means that the affected devices and components need to be regularly serviced or replaced (e.g. at specific intervals or after a defined number of operating cycles).

Information on the following shall be included:

- Repairs
- Settings
- Routine inspections
- Service intervals

If verification of proper operation is provided (e.g. test software), a description of the method for obtaining this verification shall be included in the maintenance manual.

Recommendation

The maintenance manual shall include recommendations on how to record maintenance and servicing work. It shall also include information on aspects such as:

- Troubleshooting
- Fault localization
- Replacing defective components
- Preventive maintenance schedules

Performing work while the equipment is energized

It may be necessary to carry out maintenance, adjustment, and servicing work on machines and systems while the electrical equipment is energized.

If this is the case, the maintenance manual shall include information on how to perform these tasks safely and properly.

The standard NFPA 79 contains a reference to the following standards and regulations of the relevant authority (OSHA CFR):

- **NFPA 70E - Standard for Electrical Safety Requirements for Employee Workplaces**

See also the information in Chapter Standards (Page 33), Section "NFPA 79 (Standard for Industrial Machinery)"

- **Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR Part 1910.331 – 335 "Safety related work practices"**

- 1910.331 - Scope
- 1910.332 - Training
- 1910.333 - Selection and use of work practices
- 1910.334 - Use of equipment
- 1910.335 - Safeguards for personnel protection

Web address: OSHA Law & Regulations (<http://www.osha.gov/law-regs.html>) → Subpart S – Electrical

See also Chapter Laws, general requirements, and rules (Page 30).

14.3 Documentation according to NFPA 79 for the electrical equipment of machines and systems

14.3.5 Parts list

Parts lists that include the electrical components are part of the technical documentation.

The parts list should, as a minimum, contain information on the following topics:

- Ordering spare and replacement parts (e.g. components, devices, software, testing equipment, technical documentation, etc.), which are required for preventive maintenance or servicing work.
- Recommendations of materials which, from experience, are difficult to obtain and should therefore be kept in stock.

The following information shall be included with every item on the parts list:

- Reference designation used in the documentation
- Equipment identifiers
- Manufacturer and/or supplier, and the associated order number
- A short description of the device characteristics, where appropriate
- Number of components with the same reference designation

Parts list for machine from "Siemens Industry Inc."						
Serial no.	Qty.	Identification	Mounting location	Manufacturer	Order No.	Description
1	2	Q3	Panel 1	SIEMENS	3RV202...	MSP, xx Amp, 65 kA, 480 V
2	2	K2	Panel 2	SIEMENS	3RT201	Cont. xx hp
3	3	Q5	Subpanel	SIEMENS	3RV27	C.B. xx Amp, 50 kA, 480 Y/277 V
4	1	Q1	Machine	SIEMENS	3VL4...	C.B. xx Amp, 65 kA, 480 V
...	...	...	...	...	...	...
...	...	...	...	...	...	...

Testing and verification

15.1 General information

The testing and verification requirements described in this chapter refer in full to the requirements of NFPA 79, Chapter "Testing and Verification".

The primary intention is to detect and correct any faults/errors occurring during assembly of the machine and the associated electrical components. Depending on their complexity, machines can contain a host of interfaces at which the most diverse machine components come together, such as the power supply from the building to the actual machine, the associated industrial control panels, up to the individual components (e.g. cables, conductors, switching and protective devices, programmable controllers, motors).

The tests required in NFPA 79 are to be regarded as routine tests. In other words, these tests are to be carried out on every machine, regardless of whether it is a series product or a one-off product. The aim is to detect and correct any quality defects and installation and assembly faults.

15.2 Testing and verification

The following tests and verifications shall be carried out in accordance with NFPA 79:

1. Verification that the electrical equipment is in compliance with the technical documentation (see Chapter Technical documentation (Page 333))
2. Verification of the continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit
3. Insulation resistance test
4. Voltage test
5. Protection against residual voltages test
6. Functional test

Verification that the electrical equipment is in compliance with the technical documentation

The electrical equipment shall comply with the technical documentation. This is essential not only for assembly and commissioning, but also for ongoing operation of the machine, as well as for maintenance and troubleshooting.

Details of this technical documentation requirement are described in Chapter Technical documentation (Page 333).

Verification of the continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit

The continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuits shall be verified. The resistance of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) conductor connections shall not exceed a specific maximum value here. The actual aim of this testing and verification is protection against automatic shutdown in the event of a fault.

The following two testing methods are available for verification:

1. Measuring the resistance in the circuit using an impedance measuring device

Measuring the resistance in the respective equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit taking into account all possible impedances.

The measured resistance shall amount to no more than $R \leq 0.1 \Omega$.

2. Calculation of the resistance with current-voltage measurement

The voltage drop is measured using a measuring current of at least $I \geq 10$ amperes, at 50 or 60 Hz.

This establishes whether a continuous connection exists between the input terminal of the equipment grounding (protective) conductor and all parts of the protective conductor system, or if the measured resistance takes on impermissibly high values. The focus shall be above all on equipment wye-connected with the equipment grounding (protective) conductor system and possibly containing long supply cables.

An SELV source shall be used for the supply. In comparison with PELV, with which grounding is permitted, these power sources are not grounded on the secondary side, reducing the probability of a measuring error.

The measured voltage value between the grounding terminal and the respective equipment shall not exceed the values in the following table "Verification of continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit".

Table 15- 1 Verification of continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit

Minimum equipment grounding (protective bonding) conductor cross-sectional area of the branch under test (AWG)	Maximum measured voltage drop [V] *
18	3.3
16	2.6
14	1.9
12	1.7
10	1.4
> 8	1.0

* Values are given for a test current of 10 amperes

Source: NFPA 79, Table 18.2

Insulation resistance test

According to NFPA 79, the insulation resistance test is not one of the mandatory tests for electrical equipment. Rather, it is left to the manufacturer's discretion to carry out the test if it is considered necessary.

If the test is carried out, the required high DC test voltage could result in damage to the components that are not designed for this high voltage. For this reason, these components shall be disconnected before and during the test.

The actual aim is to detect any contamination that could result in creepage paths. The test shall be carried out between the power circuits and the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit. Control circuits that are not supplied directly via the system supply but via power supply devices or control circuit transformers do not have to be subjected to this test.

The test is not mandatory for the entire machine, but may be carried out separately on individual sections of the machine.

Overview of the required test parameters:

Test voltage: $U = 500 \text{ V DC}$

Minimum insulation resistance: $R \geq 1 \text{ M}\Omega$

Measuring points: L1, L2, L3 – PE

Voltage test

According to NFPA 79, the voltage test, like insulation resistance measurement, is not one of the mandatory tests for electrical equipment. Rather, it too is left to the manufacturer's discretion to carry out the test if it is considered necessary.

The aim of the test is to detect any insufficient through air paths and insulation damage occurring during assembly and installation.

Either an AC or DC voltage is used for the test. This voltage shall be increased gradually and applied for at least 1 second when the maximum value is reached. The test is carried out between all conductors of the power circuit and the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit.

The test is passed if no flashovers occur during the test.

The supply source for generating the test voltage shall have a rating of at least $S \geq 500 \text{ VA}$.

For this test too, components that are not rated to withstand the high test voltage shall be disconnected in advance.

Overview of the required test parameters:

AC: 0 to 1500 V

DC: 2121 V

Holding time of $U_{\max} \geq 1 \text{ s}$

Measuring points: L1, L2, L3 – PE

Measuring process: incremental increase of the voltage

Power supply: $S \geq 500 \text{ VA}$

 CAUTION

Danger of injury due to high voltage

Due to the high test voltage, this test shall be carried out with the relevant precautionary measures by qualified persons only.

Note

NFPA 79 lists the circuits to be tested, referring to "Primary Circuits with the supply voltage of the machine. Primary Circuits" can also be circuits connected to the primary side of transformers. "Primary Circuits" $\neq$ "Power circuits", since main circuits carry different voltages, they can deviate from the supply voltage.

Protection against residual voltages

Residual voltages can occur after disconnection of electrically operated components, if the relevant capacitors are available.

This inevitably results in the stipulation that the test only has to be carried out if capacitors are installed in the electrical equipment. This involves in particular electronic motor control devices (e.g. variable-speed drives).

The test ensures that the maximum permissible values for protection against direct contact are not exceeded. See Chapter Protection against residual voltages (Page 94).

Functional test

Fundamentally, NFPA 79 requires the electrical equipment to be subjected to a functional test to verify proper functioning.

As well as the operational functionality of the machine, value shall be placed above all on the safety functions.

It is recommended to begin with those protective measure tests that are also relevant to the protection of testing personnel. These are, for example:

- Protective measures against electric shock in the event of a fault; see the section "Verification of the continuity of the equipment grounding (protective bonding) circuit".
- Testing of supplementary protective measures, e.g. residual current protective devices, ground fault protective devices and insulation monitoring devices

Safety-related equipment shall then be tested, e.g.:

- Limit switches
- Equipment for operations in the event of an emergency (EMERGENCY OFF, EMERGENCY STOP)
- Safety interlocks and safety switches

Following these safety-related tests, testing of the operational functionality and the intended use of the machine is recommended.

Retesting

The retests required in NFPA 79 do not refer to regular tests within the scope of the intended use of the machine. Rather, they refer to retesting in the event of changes or modifications to the machine or parts of the machine.

Modifications that can be carried out within the scope of intended use of the machine by the operator and the maintenance personnel shall be recorded accordingly in the documentation. See Chapter Technical documentation (Page 333).

Furthermore, it should be mentioned here that in the case of *essential modifications* to the machine, that is, modifications that also affect the functionality of the machine, new risks can arise that were perhaps not taken into account in the original design and dimensioning of the machine. In this case, a new risk assessment needs to be carried out. This can also mean that parts of the machine, or in some circumstances even the entire machine, need to be adapted to new or modified standards. Since this can often stimulate far-reaching discussions, you are recommended in cases of doubt to consult the local inspector, or also the professional association OSHA in the USA.

Examples of essential functional modifications:

- Additional degrees of freedom
- Additional drive axes
- Increasing of power rating and/or speed, for example
- Each additional function that was not available before the change
- Addition of, or changes to, potential hazards, e.g. by changing the protective equipment

16.1 Market access and general conditions

Market access and general conditions

In Canada, it is not just various laws that must be complied with, but also local regulations and standards. If these standards and laws are not complied with, authorities will not issue an operating permit. Without this permit, the equipment or machinery is not permitted to be connected or put into operation.

The most important standard in Canada for an electrical installation is the Canadian Electrical Code, or CEC for short. The CEC has the effect of law, and its use is mandatory. It can be seen as the counterpart to the National Electrical Code (NEC) in the United States.

Conformity with national safety standards does not release the manufacturer from product liability, but does document that the manufacturer has complied with their duty of care, which can prove useful to the manufacturer in a possible product liability case.

16.2 Important Canadian authorities and organizations

Compliance with laws and codes is inspected by the authorities having jurisdiction in the respective provinces, districts and counties. The Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) refers to these generally as **Inspection Departments**. In Ontario, Canada's most important industrial province, all inspection departments are administered by the **Electrical Safety Authority (ESA)**.

On behalf of the inspection departments, "**Electrical Inspectors**" approve equipment before their initial connection. According to the CEC definition, an electrical inspector is any person who has been lawfully appointed to apply or implement the requirements of the CEC.

The Standards Council of Canada (SCC) certifies accredited testing laboratories – the "accredited certification organizations" in Canada. These accredited certification organizations test products and certify panel builders and even complete control panels. They are always approved only for tests or preliminary approvals according to specific standards. By applying their certification marks to an item of equipment, they declare its conformity with the CEC. For this reason, they are very helpful to electrical inspectors of the inspection departments when deciding whether to authorize the commissioning of equipment. You can find the list of accredited testing laboratories on the SCC homepage (www.scc.ca). There, you will also see the standards for which the respective accredited testing laboratory is permitted to test.

The **Standards Council of Canada (SCC)** certifies accredited testing laboratories – the "accredited certification organizations" in Canada. These accredited certification organizations test products and certify panel builders and even complete control panels. They are always approved only for tests or preliminary approvals according to specific standards. By applying their certification marks to an item of equipment, they declare its conformity with the CEC. For this reason, they are very helpful to electrical inspectors of the inspection departments when deciding whether to authorize the commissioning of equipment. You can find the list of accredited testing laboratories on the SCC homepage (www.scc.ca). There, you will also see the standards for which the respective accredited testing laboratory is permitted to test.

CSA is the **Canadian Standard Association**. Among other things, it publishes various standards – both user standards including the Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) and product testing standards recognized in Canada. For products to be used in Canada, they must be tested according to the specifications of the product testing standards. Testing is done by accredited testing laboratories in Canada, which include CSA itself. CSA also certifies panel builders for the Canadian market.

Approval options

According to the CEC, equipment must be approved by an electrical inspector of the inspection department having jurisdiction, or it can be approved by a specially certified testing laboratory under certain conditions.

Approval by the electrical inspector

A preliminary test for export to Canada is not required by law. Thus, you have the option of exporting the control panel to Canada without a preliminary test. This is the lowest-cost solution but also the most risky one with regard to successful approval, and we only recommend it if you have sufficient experience with the Canadian standards.

If you are not familiar with the standards in Canada and have entered into a contract with the customer that stipulates time conditions for commissioning (e.g. contractual penalties), you can have a customized preliminary test performed by an accredited testing laboratory in your own factory before delivery of your equipment. In case of objections, you can implement the required rework relatively easily in your own factory. After a passed preliminary test, the accredited testing laboratory will mark your equipment with a label that indicates to the electrical inspector that the equipment conforms to all applicable Canadian standards. As a rule, the electrical inspector will readily approve the equipment.

If large quantities of identical control panels are to be produced in series production, it may be beneficial to have a preliminary series test performed by the accredited testing laboratory. As a result, all structurally identical control panels of the series will be provided with a label. In this case as well, the advantage lies in the faster and more straightforward approval by the electrical inspector. However, a disadvantage is that subsequent changes to the control panel are not possible.

Alternatively, a control panel manufacturer can itself be certified by an accredited testing laboratory. It is then periodically audited by the testing organization. After a certain amount of time, it is able to apply certification marks on its own. This approach also simplifies approval by the electrical inspector.

Special field inspection: Final approval by a testing laboratory certified by the SCC

In addition to the final approval by the inspection department, the CEC also provides for approval of equipment by an accredited testing laboratory under the following two conditions:

1. The chosen testing organization is not only a testing laboratory certified by the SCC, but is also authorized to approve equipment according to SPE-1000 (Model code for the field evaluation of electrical equipment).
2. The inspection department having jurisdiction recognizes the special field inspection by the testing laboratory.

Before the equipment is exported, it is already designed, tested, inspected and approved at the manufacturer's factory. The equipment is marked with a "SPECIAL INSPECTION SERVICE" label and the inspection department receives the inspection report.

Once the equipment has been transported and installed at the customer's facility, the final approval by the certified testing laboratory takes place.

16.3 The most important Canadian standards

Changes in Canadian user standards

Until recently, the standards to be considered when building industrial control panels and machinery for Canada were quite straightforward. To successfully pass inspection by the electrical inspector, an industrial control panel had to consist of components approved for the Canadian market and meet the relevant requirements from the Canadian Electrical Code (CEC) and the CSA C22.2 No. 14 (Industrial Control Equipment) standard, which in reality is merely a product testing standard.

In practice, this often led to uncertainty, as there were no statements to be found in the applicable standards regarding the implementation of many industrial control panel and machinery applications. In the past, control panels were certified only in accordance with C22.2 No.14. This industrial control equipment standard is formulated primarily for switchgear and not for control panels.

Canada's standards and inspection organization, the Canadian Standard Association (CSA), remedied this situation with the publication of two new standards:

- February 2015: Publication of CSA C22.2 No. 286-15 Industrial control panels and assemblies (updated in 2017 as CSA C22.2 No 286-17)
- January 2016: Publication of the standard CSA C22.2 – No. 301-16 Industrial electrical machinery

Both standards have been listed in Appendix A of the 2018 CEC since January 2018. They will become mandatory after a transition time (by 2022 for C22.2 No. 301).

As a result, the following standards in Canada are of vital importance to panel and machine builders:

- CEC (Canadian Electrical Code) for electrical installation on site (required by law)
- CSA C22.2 No. 286 for industrial control panels and assemblies

CSA C22.2 No. 286

CSA C22.2 No. 286 is defined as a user standard for the design of control panels with a maximum voltage of 1,500 V AC or DC, but is not to be applied to the rest of the equipment. The scope excludes control panels in hazardous locations and is limited to ambient temperatures of 0 °C to 40 °C.

The standard is structured as follows:

INTRODUCTION: Contents, technical and integrated committee, preface, etc.

Chapter 1: SCOPE Chapter 2: REFERENCES, LITERATURE Chapter 3: DEFINITIONS Chapter 4: DESIGN REQUIREMENTS Chapter 5: MARKINGS chapter 6: SPECIFIC APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

Appendix A: French translations of cautions, warnings and safety instructions

Appendix B: Examples of wiring space and wire-bending space

Appendix C: Calculating available fault current

Appendix D: Guidelines for the use of supplementary protectors Appendix E: Manufacturing test of the voltage dielectric strength. Chapter 4 is particularly important as it describes design requirements.

CSA C22.2 No. 301

CSA C22.2 No. 301 is the relevant standard in Canada for electronic components of industrial machinery and equipment up to 1,000 V in normal ambient conditions.

The most important subjects addressed by the standard are as follows:

Chapter 5: Supply circuit, main switch, excepted circuits

Chapter 6: Personal protection, enclosures, door interlocking

Chapter 7: Equipment protection, main/control circuit ratings

Chapter 10/11: Operator interfaces, control equipment

Chapter 12/13: Conductors and cables/wiring methods

Chapter 14/15: Motors and associated equipment, mechanical brakes, servo drives and motors, motors in combination with converters

Chapter 16: Receptacles and lighting

Chapter 17: Nameplate marking, safety information

Product testing standards and product selection

These are important primarily for component manufacturers because components must comply with certain product standards, depending on their application use, before they may be used in equipment in Canada. However, it is not just the component manufacturer that must ensure that requirements applicable to the components are met. The panel builder must also ensure this through proper selection of components. In the latter case, the use of certified ("listed" or "labeled") devices alone is not enough.

Depending on their application use, components that are installed in the control panel must be tested according to product testing standards referenced in the user standards. As a consequence, components are subject to use limitations that must be taken into account.

This can be done by explicitly assigning components to their application use based on their designation, the applicable product testing standard and the class number. You can find this information in the general product approvals for the Canadian market (Certificate of Compliance) that you receive from the manufacturer or in the CSA database for listed products (CSA Group Product Listing, www.csagroup.org).

To deal with the variety of products efficiently, you should know engineering-relevant information about the equipment in addition to the relevant product testing standards. This information must be requested from the customer.

16.4 Units, definitions and other specifics

Units

Although Canada officially switched to the metric system many years ago, the CSA standards still use many imperial system units, such as horsepower for motors and AWG/kcmil for wire cross-sections. In other cases, physical units from the metric system, such as temperature in °C, torque in Nm, and length in mm, are used.

Line system configurations

There are a variety of system configurations in Canada whose designations do not correspond to the usual designations in IEC standards (e.g. TN-S, IT, TT, TN-C systems). You can find an overview of Canadian system configurations in the CEC, Appendix B, and in C22.2 No. 301, Annex B, Grounding and Bonding. Because knowing the system configuration is essential for selecting the overcurrent protective devices, you should agree on this with the equipment owner in the run-up to the planning phase. In the Canadian CoC of the protective devices, you can see the voltage for which the protective devices are approved.

Primary and secondary circuits

C22.2 No. 286, Section 3, distinguishes between the primary circuit and the secondary circuit. A primary circuit is defined as the complete wiring and all the components up to the load that are connected directly to the supply circuit. A secondary circuit refers to the wiring and components connected to a circuit whose power is isolated from the primary circuit by a transformer or similar device and is limited to a maximum of 1500 VA.

Grounding

The Canadian standards use the terms grounding, bonding and neutral when addressing the grounding system. Detailed procedures, e.g. for dimensioning, design and marking, are described in all three relevant standards:

- CEC, Section 10 Grounding and Bonding
- C22.2 No. 286, Section 4.3
- C22.2 No. 301, Section 8

Important: C22.2 No.286, Section 3 distinguishes between a primary equipment bond and secondary equipment bond.

Primary equipment bond

"The bonding means that maintains the non-current carrying parts of the equipment at the same equipotential the supply system ground." (Definition C22.2 No. 286) This involves bonding with a continuous connection of all non-current-carrying parts from the ground potential of the system connection up to the supply system ground of the control panel.

Secondary equipment bond

"All other bonds within the equipment that maintain the non-current- carrying parts of the individual components and devices within the equipment at the same equipotential as the main bond, and is supplied as part of the final assembly." (Definition C22.2 No. 286)

This is understood to include all remaining continuous bonding conductors in the equipment that connect all conductive non-current-carrying parts of devices, components and loads together to the supply system ground.

Motor load feeders

According to CSA 22.2 No.14, Table 42, a motor load feeder (combination motor controller) may be designed in six different standardized ways (Construction Types A to F):

Table 16- 1 Various constructions of combination motor controllers

Component parts ¹⁾	Construction type					
	A	B	C	D	E ²⁾	F ³⁾
Disconnecting means	Manual disconnect ⁴⁾	Manual disconnect ⁴⁾	Circuit breaker	Circuit breaker	Self-protected control device	Self-protected control device
Short-circuit protective device	Fuse	Motor short-circuit protector	Instantaneous-trip circuit			Self-protected control device
Motor controller	Magnetic or solid state	Magnetic or solid state	Magnetic or solid state			Magnetic or solid state
Overload protection	Overload relay	Overload relay	Overload relay			Self-protected control device

¹⁾These are certified components in accordance with the applicable CSA standards.

²⁾The manual disconnect shall comply with clause 4.9.12.

³⁾The type E self-protected control device performs the functions of all four component parts.

⁴⁾See definition in clause 4.11.1.10.

The motor feeder is then configured based on the motor values, ideally working backwards from the load.

Markings

The most important requirements for marking an industrial control panel for Canada can be found in Section 5 of C22.2 No 286.

A specific marking requirement that applies generally in Canada is that all warning signs shall be implemented in both English and French. The French translations of the warning signs can be found in Annex A of C22.2 No. 286.

Example of a required marking of a supply terminal for connection of a grounded wye system in English and French:

5.20	Warning. For connection to a solidly grounded WYE system only
	Avertissement: Doit être relié seulement à un système branché en étoile et solidement mis à la terre

16.5 Short-circuit current ratings in Canada

General information regarding short-circuit current rating

Section 4.13 of C22.2 No. 286, the user standard for industrial control panels, describes how the short-circuit current rating (SCCR) of a control panel is determined. The important thing here is that the SCCR corresponds to the maximum possible short-circuit current in the supply circuit, which is specified by the owner of the equipment.

The SCCR is determined in the following 3 steps:

Step 1: Determination using standard SCCR of the relevant components

The standard SCCR of all components in the main circuit must first be determined. The SCCR-relevant components include circuit breakers, contactors, overload relays and semiconductor switching devices as well as terminals, busbars, the incoming side of control transformers and frequency converters.

You can find the standard SCCR values for contactors in Table 9 of C22.2 No. 286 and for all other components in Table 10. In general, of all the SCCR-relevant components, the one with the lowest SCCR value determines the combined SCCR value for the industrial control panel. In other words: All the SCCR-relevant components must have at least a short-circuit current rating that corresponds to the maximum short-circuit current occurring in the supply circuit.

Step 2: Increase of the SCCR of components through use of tested combinations, so-called "High Capacity Short Circuit Ratings"

If components whose SCCR is less than the maximum occurring short-circuit current in the supply circuit are identified in the main circuit, the most useful approach in practice is to check whether the component involved has been tested with an upstream protective device for a high capacity short circuit rating.

For many devices such as contactors, soft starters, solid-state contactors and overload relays, these specifications can be found in the "Certificate of Compliance (CoC)". The CoC is prepared by CSA for the manufacturer of the respective component and must be made available to the user by the device manufacturer. You can find the CoCs of Siemens' devices in Siemens Industry Online Support.

Step 3: Reduction of the maximum possible short-circuit by current-limiting devices

In contrast to the specifications of UL 508A in the USA, for example, only transformers are permitted as current-limiting devices in Canada.

The possible approach is described in Annex C.1: There you will find a table from which you can take standard values for the transformers. Alternatively, a calculation method is also specified here.

Technical inquiries and hotline

Technical Support

Support enquiry for low-voltage technology, power distribution or components of the medium voltage

Input of an ONLINE support inquiry (<http://www.siemens.com/support-request>)

Appendix

B.1 Conversion tables and factors

Temperature (Celsius / Fahrenheit)

Table B- 1 Conversion of Fahrenheit to Celsius, and Celsius to Fahrenheit

Fahrenheit → Celsius	$(F - 32) * 5/9 = C$
Celsius → Fahrenheit	$(C * 9/5) + 32 = F$

Table B- 2 Celsius vs. Fahrenheit

Celsius	Fahrenheit t		Celsius	Fahrenheit t		Celsius	Fahrenheit t		Celsius	Fahrenheit t
-18	0		1	34		20	68		39	102
-17	1		2	36		21	70		40	104
-16	3		3	37		22	72		41	106
-15	5		4	39		23	73		42	108
-14	7		5	41		24	75		43	109
-13	9		6	43		25	77		44	111
-12	10		7	45		26	79		45	113
-11	12		8	46		27	81		46	115
-10	14		9	48		28	82		47	117
-9	16		10	50		29	84		48	118
-8	18		11	52		30	86		49	120
-7	19		12	54		31	88		50	122
-6	21		13	55		32	90		51	124
-5	23		14	57		33	91		52	126
-4	25		15	59		34	93		53	127
-3	27		16	61		35	95		54	129
-2	28		17	63		36	97		55	131
-1	30		18	64		37	99		56	133
0	32		19	66		38	100		57	135

Power classes (kW / HP / PS)

The following factors are designed to help in converting the HP (horsepower) specifications usual in the USA to kW (kilowatts) and PS (German horsepower) and vice versa.

Table B- 3 Converting different power specifications

Unit	PS	kW	HP
1 PS (horsepower)	1	0.735499	0.98632
1 kW (kilowatt)	1.35962	1	1.34102
1 HP (horsepower)	1.01387	0.7457	1

Cross-sections (in metric units and North-American units)

AWG	Cross section		Metric equivalent (mm ²)
	kcmil	mm ²	
0000 (4/0)	212	107.2	120
000 (3/0)	168	85.01	95
00 (2/0)	133	67.43	70
0 (1/0)	106	53.49	
1	83.7	42.40	50
2	66.4	33.62	35
3	52.6	26.67	
4	41.7	21.15	25
5	33.1	16.75	
6	26.2	13.30	16
7	20.8	10.55	
8	16.5	8.37	10
9		6.63	
10	10.4	5.26	6
11		4.17	
12	6.53	3.31	4
13		2.62	
14	4.11	2.08	2.5
15		1.65	
16	2.58	1.31	1.5
17		1.038	
18	1.62	0.823	1
19		0.653	0.75
20	1.02	0.518	0.75
21		0.410	0.5
22	0.64	0.326	0.34
23		0.258	
24	0.404	0.205	0.25
25		0.162	
26		0.129	0.14
27		0.102	
28		0.0810	0.09
29		0.0642	
30		0.0510	
31		0.0404	
32		0.0320	

B.2 Control Panel Design in the TIA Selection Tool: Automatic dimensioning of the electrical system according to North American standards

Control Panel Design are special functions in the TIA Selection Tool for electrical planning, which allow you to design and dimension the main electrical system of a machine in compliance with the applicable standards.

The Control Panel Design allows the control panel designer - after selection of the infeed parameters relevant to configuration, such as the line system configuration (see chapter Operating and ambient conditions (Page 61)), the prospective short-circuit current (see chapter Short-circuit current ratings and calculation (SCCR (Page 156))) - to enter the data of the electrical loads and automatically dimension switchgear assemblies.

After starting the calculation, he receives the following results in addition to a clear single-line diagram:

- Selection of suitable protection and switchgear under consideration of their certificates
- Cable sizing according to UL 508A and NFPA 79 inside and outside the industrial control panel
- Comprehensive documentation of all specified feeder circuits.
- Output of all current certificates via current ONLINE links in SIOS.

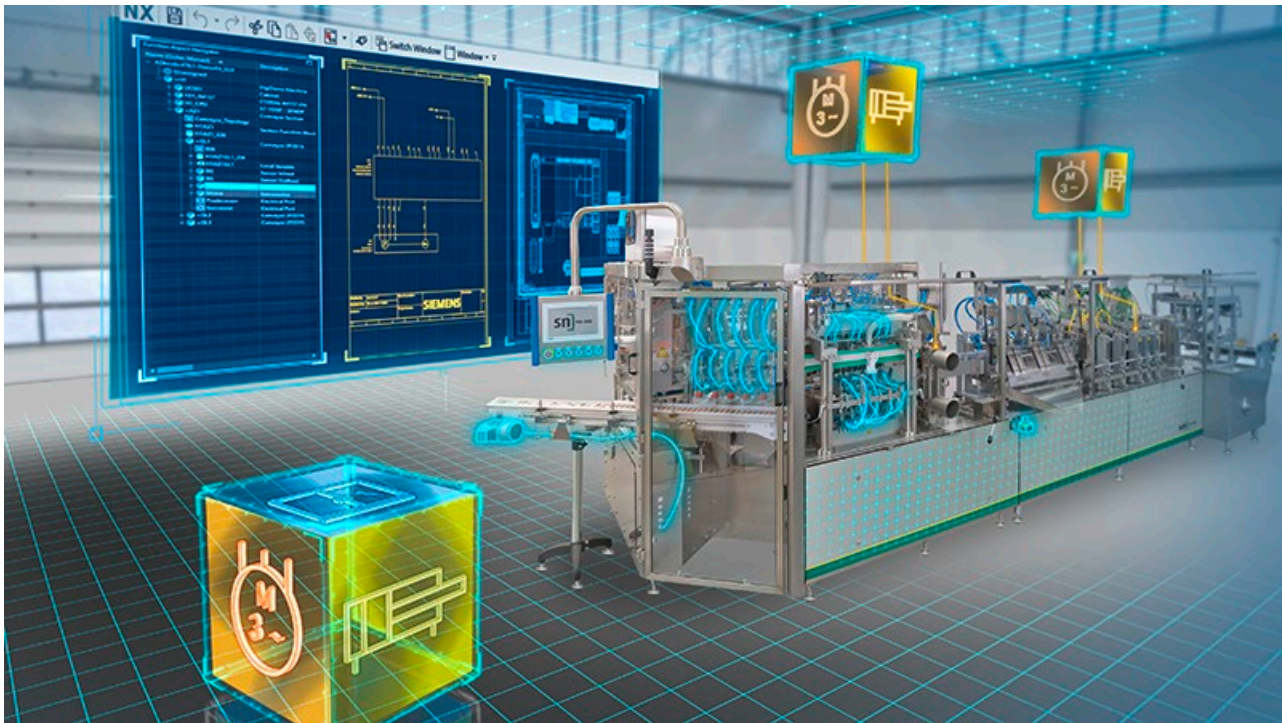
Download and installation

Via the web address [www.siemens.de/CPD](https://www.siemens.com/CPD) (<https://www.siemens.com/CPD>) you can download the offline version of the TIA Selection Tool (including Control Panel Design functions) for free and the install it on your PC.

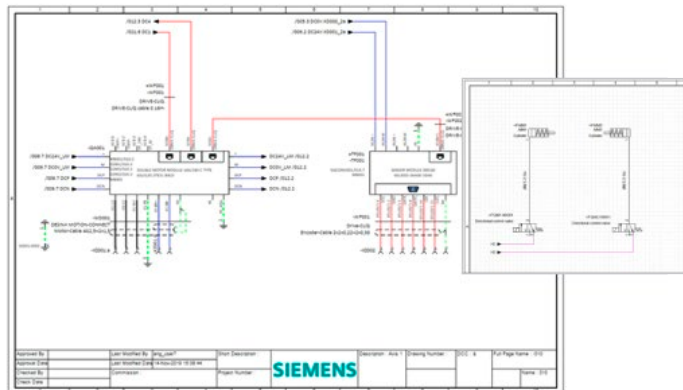
Then start the TIA Selection Tool with a double click on "SelectionTool.exe".

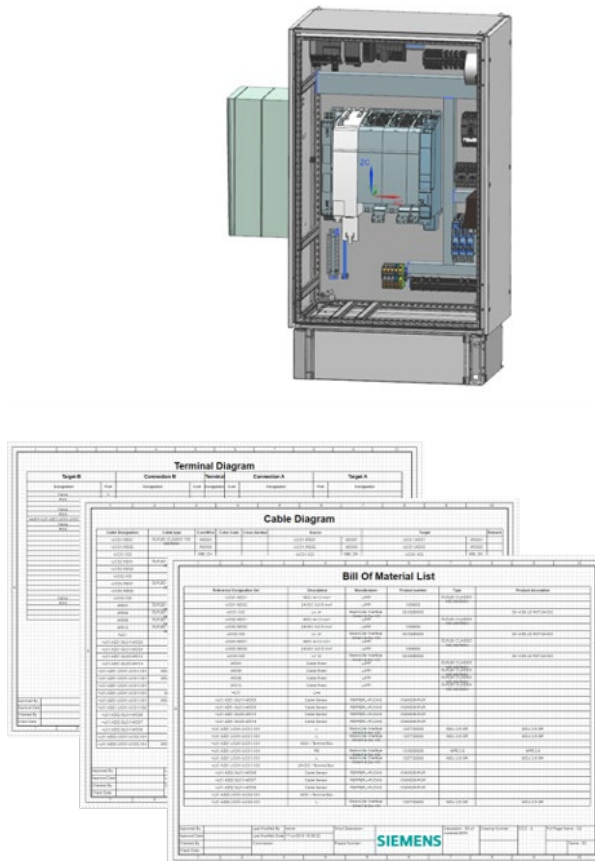
When you first start it, you can decide whether to create a link or icon on the desktop.

B.3 NX Industrial Electrical Design



1. The complete ECAD environment for highest efficiency
 - Complete industrial ECAD functionality to finish planning in the quickest time possible
 - Electrical wiring diagram according to IEC / ANSI and fluid diagrams according to ISO 1219 standard
 - Switchgear cabinet planning in 2 D and 3D for the production
 - Standard evaluation for quick documentation



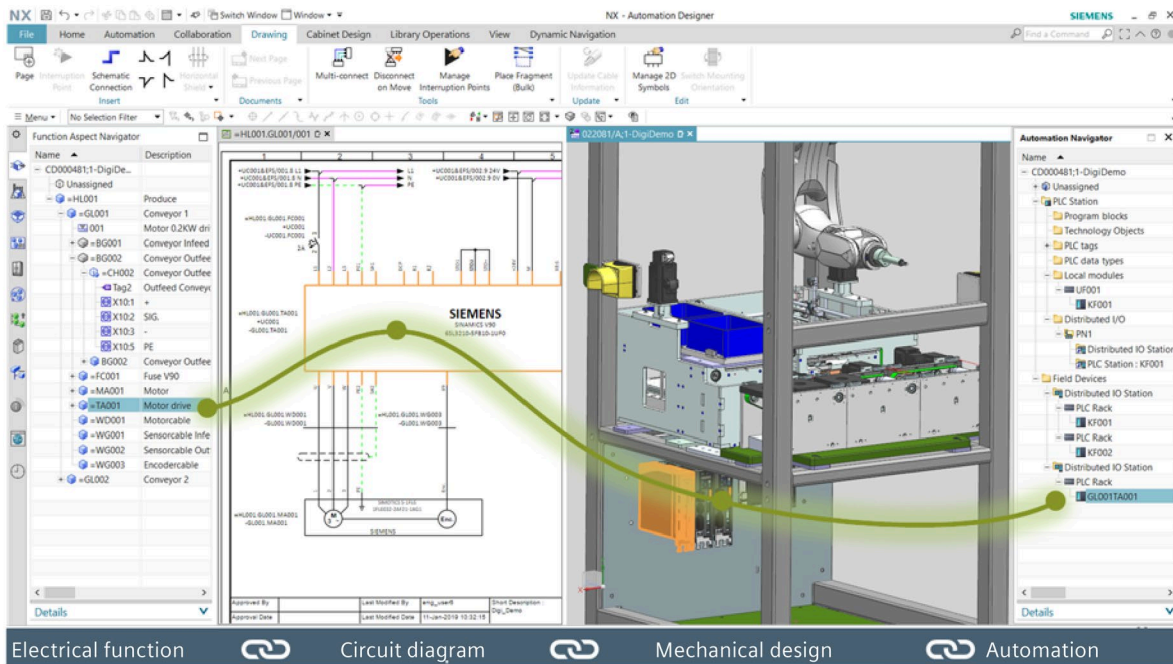


2. Maximization of the design re-use and configuration

- Ensuring that the modularization through function engineering
- Maximization of re-use
- Simple creation and management of variants
- Automation of recurring design tasks

3. Simple synchronization with other disciplines to avoid errors and double work

- Integration mechanical CAD data directly into the electrical planning environment
- Automation of engineering tasks beyond disciplines
- Shared electrical and software data model for parallel engineering, change and removal of double efforts



Unique possibilities to simplify communication and avoid coordination errors arise by merging our proven PLM and CAD, PLC and ECAD systems.

All modules of a project can this way be developed seamlessly integrated. In the process up to 50 % of the effort required for electrical planning can be saved.

NX Industrial Electrical Design results in the following advantages during the construction:

- Shortest development times and change cycles
- Parallel, multidisciplinary engineering possible
- Re-usage of engineering know-how with mechatronic templates

Improved cooperation between the disciplines in a central application and with standardized interfaces to other applications:

- Higher quality and low risk for technical solutions (lower NC costs)
- Rule-based engineering for electrical schematic and automation software and hardware
- Consistency of technical data in all disciplines

More information, webinars and videos on the NX Industrial Electrical Design & NX Automation Designer can be found under the following web addresses:

Industrial Electrical Design

(<https://www.plm.automation.siemens.com/global/en/products/mechanical-design/machine-electrical-design.html>)

NX Industrial Electrical Design & NX Automation Designer (<https://blogs.sw.siemens.com/nx-electrical-automation-design/>)

B.4 Checklists

B.4.1 Checklist for industrial control panels and the electrical equipment of machinery for North America (UL 508A and NFPA 79)

INQUIRY FORM FOR THE ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT OF MACHINES

Name of manufacturer/supplier			
Name of end user			
Tender/Order No.		Date	
Type of Machine/Serial Number			

1.	Are there to be modifications as allowed for within this standard?		☐ Yes	☐ No
Operating Conditions – Special requirements				
2.	Ambient temperature range			
3.	Humidity range			
4.	Altitude			
5.	Environmental (e.g., corrosive atmospheres, particulate matter, EMC)			
6.	Non-ionizing radiation			
7.	Vibration, shock			
8.	Special installation and operation requirements (e.g. additional flame-retardant requirements for cables and conductors)			
Power supply(ies) and related conditions				
9.	Anticipated voltage fluctuations (if more than $\pm 10\%$)			
10.	Anticipated frequency fluctuations			
	Specification of short-term value			
11.	Indicate possible future changes in electrical equipment that will require an increase in the electrical supply requirements			
12.	Indicate for each source of electrical supply required:			
	Nominal voltage (V)	AC	DC	
	If AC, number of phases	frequency	Hz	
	Prospective short-circuit current at the point of supply to the machine	kA rms (See also Question 15)		
	Fluctuations outside values given			
13.	Type of power supply system grounding:			
	Wye phases midpoint grounded		Delta phases midpoint grounded	
	Delta phases corner grounded		High impedance grounded	
	Wye phases midpoint ungrounded		Delta phases ungrounded	

14.	Is the electrical equipment to be connected to a grounded supply conductor?		☐ Yes	☐ No
15.	Does the user or the supplier provide the overcurrent protection of the supply conductors?		☐ Yes	☐ No
	Type and rating of overcurrent protective devices			
16.	Supply disconnecting device			
	• Is the disconnection of the grounded conductor required?		☐ Yes	☐ No
	• Is a link for the grounded conductor permissible?		☐ Yes	☐ No
17.	Type of disconnecting device and associated external operating means (e.g. handle) to be provided			
18.	Limit of power up to which three-phase AC motors can be started directly across the incoming supply lines?			HP
19.	Can the number of motor overload detection devices be reduced?			☐ Yes ☐ No
20.	Where the machine is equipped with local lighting:			
	• Highest permissible voltage			V
	• If lighting circuit voltage is not obtained directly from the power supply, state preferred voltage			V
Other considerations				
21.	Functional identification			
22.	Inscriptions/special markings			
23.	Mark of certification	☐ Yes ☐ No	If YES, which one?	
	On electrical equipment?		In which language?	
24.	Technical documentation			
	On what media?		In which language?	
25.	Size, location and purpose of ducts, open cable trays, or cable supports to be provided by the user (additional sheets to be provided where necessary)			
26.	Are locks with removable keys to be provided for fastening doors or covers?			☐ Yes ☐ No
27.	Indicate if special limitations on the size or weight affect the transport of a particular machine or control equipment to the installation site:			
	• Maximum dimensions			
	• Maximum weight			
28.	In the case of machines with frequent repetitive cycles of operation dependent on manual control, how frequently will cycles of operation be repeated?			per hour
29.	For what length of time is it expected that the machine will be operated at this rate without subsequent pause?			minutes
30.	In the case of specially built machines, is a certificate of operating tests with the loaded machine to be supplied?			☐ Yes ☐ No
31.	In the case of other machines, is a certificate of operating-type tests on a loaded prototype machine to be supplied?			☐ Yes ☐ No
32.	For cable-less control systems, specify the time delay before automatic machine shutdown is initiated in the absence of a valid signal.			seconds
33.	Do you need a specific method of conductor identification to be used?		☐ Yes ☐ No	
	Type			

B.4.2 Flexible cords and cables

Trade name	AWG or kcmil	Number of conductors	Insulation	Use		
Lamp cord	18 ... 16 15 ... 10	2 or more	Thermoset or thermoplastic	Pendant or portable	Dry locations	Not hard usage
Elevator cable	20 ... 2	2 or more	Thermoset	Elevator lighting and control	Unclassified locations	
				Hazardous (classified) locations		
				Hazardous (classified) locations		
Electric vehicle cable	18 ... 500	2 or more plus grounding conductors, plus optional hybrid data, signal communications , and optical fiber cable	Thermoset, optionally with nylon	Electric vehicle charging	Wet locations	Extra-hard usage
	18 ... 12		Thermoplastic elastomer with optional nylon			Hard usage
	18 ... 500					Extra-hard usage
	18 ... 12					Hard usage
	18 ... 500					Extra-hard usage
	18 ... 12					Hard usage
Portable power cable	12 ... 500	2 ... 6 plus grounding conductor(s)	Thermoset	Portable and extra-hard usage		
		3 ... 6 plus grounding conductors 1 ground check conductor				
Heater cable	18 ... 12	2, 3 or 4	Thermoset	Portable heaters	Dry locations	Not hard usage
Parallel heater cord	18 ... 12	2 or 3	Oil-resistant thermoset	Portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
Thermoset jacketed heater cords	18 ... 12	2, 3 or 4	Thermoset	Portable or portable heater	Damp locations	Hard usage
			Oil-resistant thermoset		Damp and wet locations	
					Damp locations	
Non-integral parallel cords	20 ... 18	2 or 3	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	18 ... 16		Thermoplastic elastomer			
	20 ... 18					
	18 ... 16					
	20 ... 18					
	18 ... 16					
Twisted portable cord	18 ... 16 14 ... 10	2 or more	Thermoset or thermoplastic	Pendant or portable	Dry locations	Not hard usage
	Portable power cable	12 ... 500	1 ... 6 plus optional grounding conductor(s)	Thermoplastic elastomer	Portable, extra-hard usage	
Hard service cord	18 ... 2	2 or more	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra-hard usage
Flexible stage and lighting power cables	8 ... 250	1 or more	Thermoset	Portable, extra-hard usage		
			Thermoplastic elastomer			
			Thermoplastic			

Trade name	AWG or kcmil	Number of conductors	Insulation	Use		
Hard service cord	18 ... 2	2 or more	Thermoplastic elastomer	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra-hard usage
					Damp and wet locations	
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
Junior hard service cord	18 ... 10	2 ... 6	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Hard usage
					Damp and wet locations	
			Thermoplastic elastomer		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
			Oil-resistant thermoset		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
			Thermoplastic		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
Hard service cord	18 ... 2	2 or more	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra-hard usage
					Damp and wet locations	
			Oil-resistant thermoset		Damp locations	
					Damp and wet locations	
All thermoset parallel cord	20 ... 18	2 or 3	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	18 ... 16					
	18 ... 10			Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)		
All elastomer (thermoplastic) parallel cord	20 ... 18	2 or 3	Thermoplastic elastomer	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage
	18 ... 16					
	18 ... 10			Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)		

Trade name	AWG or kcmil	Number of conductors	Insulation	Use			
All thermoplastic parallel cord	20 ... 18	2 or 3	Thermoplastic	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage	
		2			Damp and wet locations		
	18 ... 16	2 or 3			Damp locations		
		2			Damp and wet locations		
	18 ... 10	2 or 3		Refrigerators, room air conditioners, and as permitted in 422.16(B)	Damp locations		
Range, dryer cable	10 ... 4	3 or 4	Thermoset	Portable	Damp locations	Ranges, dryers	
			Thermoplastic elastomer				
			Thermoplastic				
Hard service cord	18 ... 12	2 or more	Thermoplastic	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Extra-hard usage	
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic		Damp and wet locations		
					Damp locations		
					Damp and wet locations		
Vacuum cleaner cord	18 ... 16	2 or 3	Thermoset	Pendant or portable	Damp locations	Not hard usage	
			Thermoplastic elastomer				
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic elastomer				
			Oil-resistant thermoset				
			Thermoplastic				
			Oil-resistant thermoplastic				
Parallel tinsel cord	27	2	Thermoplastic	Attached to an appliance	Damp locations	Not hard usage	
Jacketed tinsel cord	27	2	Thermoplastic	Attached to an appliance	Damp locations	Not hard usage	
Portable power cable	12 ... 500 501 ... 1000	1 ... 6 1	Thermoset	Portable, extra-hard usage			

B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

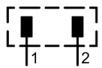
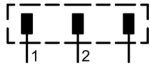
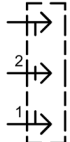
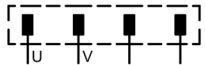
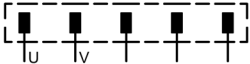
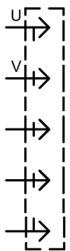
Terminals and connectors, terminal

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Terminal with 1 connection without plug-and-receptacle (socket) connections	-X1 	
Receptacle of a plug-in connection	-X2 	
Socket (receptacle) and plug	-X3 	
Plug of a plug-in connection	-X4 	

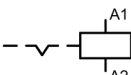
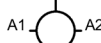
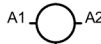
Socket outlet (receptacle)

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Receptacle without PE, two-pin		
Receptacle with PE, three-pin		
Receptacle with PE, three-pin		
Receptacle, four-pin with PE		
Receptacle, five-pin (CEE)		

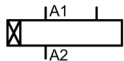
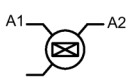
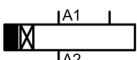
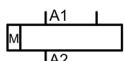
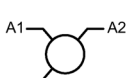
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Plug, two-pin		
Plug, three-pin		
Plug, four-pin		
Plug, five-pin (CEE)		

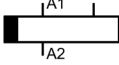
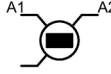
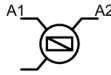
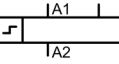
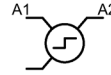
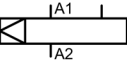
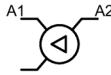
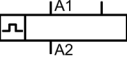
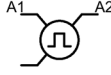
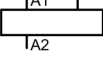
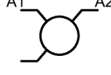
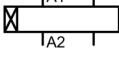
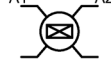
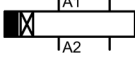
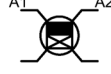
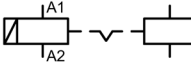
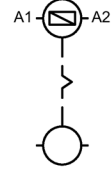
Coils

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism, general / relay coil, general		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay/returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a residual current release		
Second coil for remanent relay (exploded representation)		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a multifunction relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a resonance relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a remanent relay		

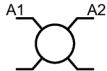
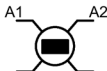
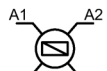
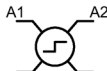
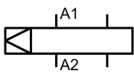
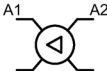
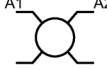
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a current impulse relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of an extremely fast-switching relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a backup relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a flasher relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of an AC relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism, impervious to AC		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay/returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a multifunction relay		

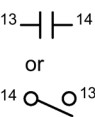
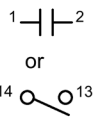
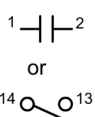
Coils (3 connections)

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism with returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a remanent relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a current impulse relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a backup relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a flasher relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with response delay/returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a remanent relay, exploded representation		

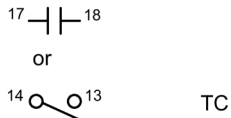
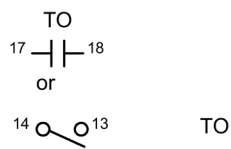
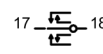
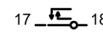
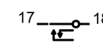
Coils (4 connections)

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a multifunction relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism with returning time		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a remanent relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a current impulse relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a backup relay		
Electromechanical operating mechanism		

Contacts – NO contacts

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
NO contact		
NO power contact of a contactor		
NO power contact of a contactor with automatic release		
NO contact, closes with delay		
NO contact, opens with delay		
NO contact, closes and opens with delay		

B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
NO contact with automatic return		
NO contact, electrothermal release		
NO contact, leading		
NO contact, lagging		
NO contact, pulse contact element with contacting on actuation and on release (to the right)		
NO contact, pulse contact element with contacting on release (to the left)		
NO contact, pulse contact element with contacting on actuation (to the right)		

Contacts – NC contacts

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
NC contact		
NC power contact of a contactor		
Mirror contact (auxiliary NC contact for main current NO contacts)		
NC contact, opens with delay		
NC contact, closes and opens with delay		
NC contact, closes with delay		

B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
NC contact, lagging		TO  or TC 
NC contact, leading		TO  or TC 
NC contact, electrothermal release, inhibit / reset		
NC contact with automatic return		
NC contact, electrothermal release		

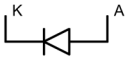
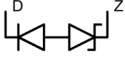
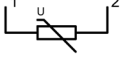
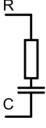
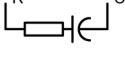
Changeover contacts

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Change-over contact with interruption (2-path)		
Change-over contact (2-path), ON and OFF-delay		
Change-over contact (2-path), ON-delay		
Change-over contact (2-path), OFF-delay		
Change-over contact (2-path), with automatic thermal actuation		
Change-over contact (2-path), closes lagging to other contacts of the contact set		
Change-over contact (2-path), closes leading to other contacts of the contact set		

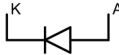
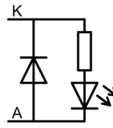
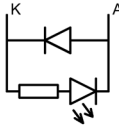
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Change-over contact without interruption, subsequent changeover contact element (2-path)		
Change-over contact, pulse contact element with contacting on release (to the right and left)		
Change-over contact (2-path), pulse contact element with contacting on actuation and return (to the right and left)		
Change-over contact, pulse contact element with contacting on release (to the left)		
Change-over contact (2-path), pulse contact element with contacting on return (to the left)		
Change-over contact, pulse contact element with contacting on actuation (to the right)		
Change-over contact (2-path), pulse contact element with contacting on actuation (to the right)		

Surge suppressor

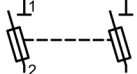
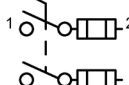
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Protective circuit of a coil using a diode		
Protective circuit of a coil using a diode and Z diode		
Protective circuit of a coil using a varistor		
Protective circuit of a coil using an RC element		

B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

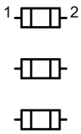
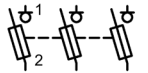
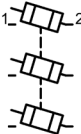
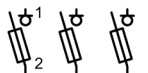
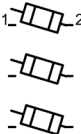
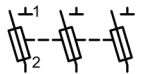
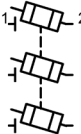
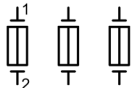
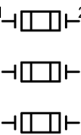
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Protective circuit of a coil using an avalanche diode		
Protective circuit of a coil using a suppressor diode		
Protective circuit of a coil using a diode		
Protective circuit of a coil using a combination of diode, LED+R		
Lightning conductor		
Surge arrester		

Protective devices

Fuse

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Fuse, single-pole, general		
Fuse switch disconnecter, single-pole		
Fuse switch, single-pole		
Fuse switch disconnecter, single-pole		
LV HRC fuse switch disconnecter, single-pole, general		 
Fuse, two-pole, general		
Fuse switch disconnecter, two-pole		

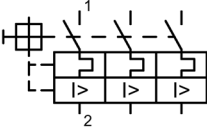
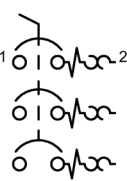
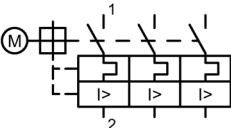
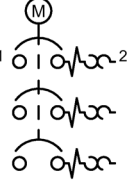
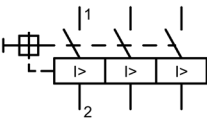
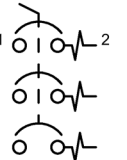
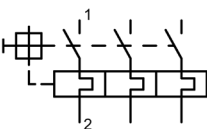
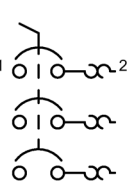
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

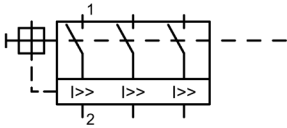
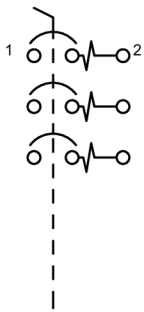
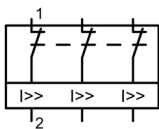
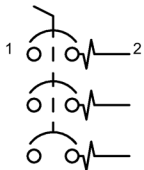
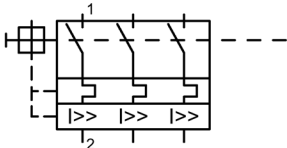
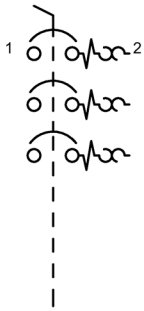
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Fuse, three-pole, general		
Fuse switch disconnector, three-pole		
Fuse switch disconnector, three-pole, can be switched singly		
Fuse switch disconnector, three-pole		
LV HRC fuse switch disconnector, three-pole, general		

Miniature circuit breaker

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Miniature circuit breaker, single-pole		
Miniature circuit breaker, single-pole, tripping through thermal or electromagnetic overcurrent protection		
Miniature circuit breaker, two-pole		
Miniature circuit breaker, three-pole		
Miniature circuit breaker, four-pole		

Motor circuit breaker

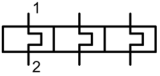
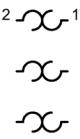
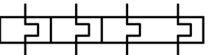
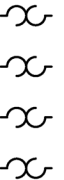
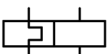
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism without line		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism, motorized operating mechanism		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with magnetic trip unit and breaker latching mechanism without line (three-pole)		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism, thermal trip unit, without line		

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Limiter, without thermo contacts, with breaker latching mechanism and line		
Limiter, without thermo contacts		
Limiter, with thermo contacts, with breaker latching mechanism and line		

B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism and line		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism without line		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a shunt release		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism without line		
Circuit breaker / motor starter protector with breaker latching mechanism without line		

Protective relay

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a thermo relay, three-pole		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a thermo relay, single-pole		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a thermo relay, four-pole		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of a protective relay (thermo relay)		

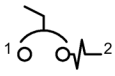
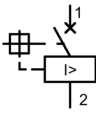
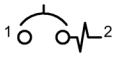
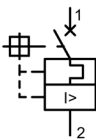
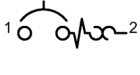
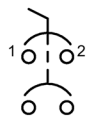
Ground fault circuit interrupter

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Residual current circuit breaker, two-pole		
Residual current circuit breaker, 2-pole (1-pole protected, 2-pole switching)		
Residual current circuit breaker, four-pole		

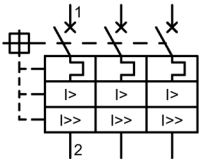
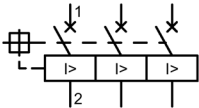
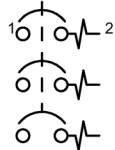
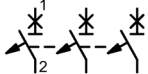
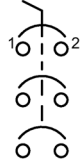
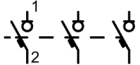
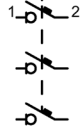
Overvoltage and undervoltage release

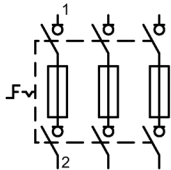
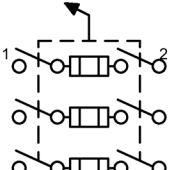
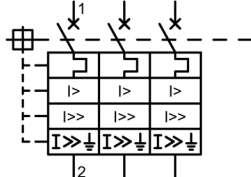
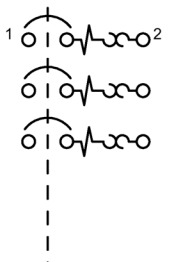
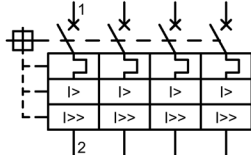
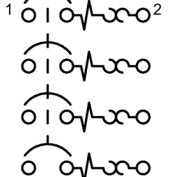
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Electromechanical operating mechanism of an overvoltage release		
Electromechanical operating mechanism of an undervoltage release		

Circuit breaker

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Circuit breaker, single-pole, tripping through thermal or electromagnetic overcurrent protection		
Miniature circuit breaker, single-pole		
Circuit breaker, single-pole (magnetic trip unit)		
Circuit breaker, single-pole (L, I characteristic)		
Miniature circuit breaker, two-pole		

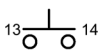
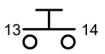
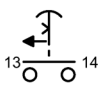
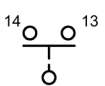
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

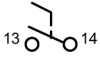
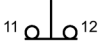
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Circuit breaker, three-pole, with breaker latching mechanism		
Circuit breaker, three-pole, with breaker latching mechanism		
Miniature circuit breaker, three-pole		
Switch disconnect, three-pole, with automatic release through built-in measuring relay		

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Switch disconnecter with fuse element, three-pole (double interruption)		
Circuit breaker, three-pole (L,S,I,G characteristic)		
Circuit breaker, four-pole, with breaker latching mechanism		

Sensors

Switches, buttons

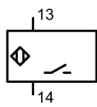
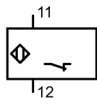
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Pushbutton, NO contact by pressing		
Switch, NO contact by pressing		
Switch, NO contact through mechanical operation		
Switch, NO contact through mechanical operation, actuated		
Switch, NO contact, proximity-sensitive		
Emergency off switch/emergency pushbutton, NO contact, with rotate to unlatch mechanism		
Switch, NO contact, actuation by roller		
Switch, NO contact by rotating		

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Switch disconnecter		
Pushbutton, NC contact, general		
Pushbutton, NC contact by rotating		
Switch, NC contact, actuation by roller		

Limit switch

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Limit switch, NO contact		
Limit switch, NC contact		

Proximity sensor

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Proximity sensor, NO contact		
Proximity sensor, NC contact		

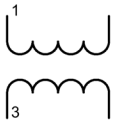
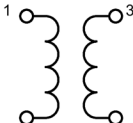
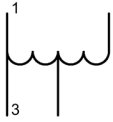
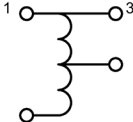
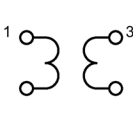
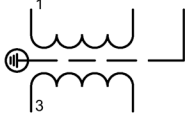
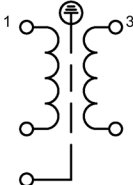
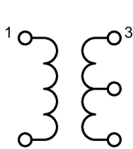
Analog sensor

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Thermocouple		
Resistor, NTC thermistor		
Resistor, PTC thermistor		

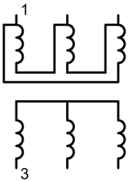
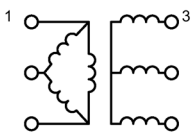
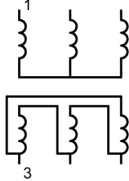
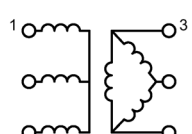
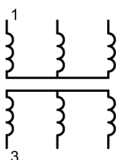
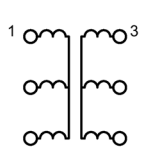
Voltage source

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Battery, primary or secondary element, accumulator		

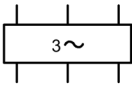
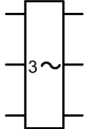
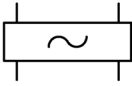
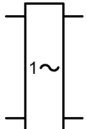
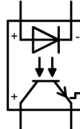
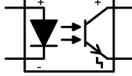
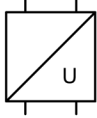
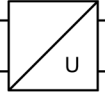
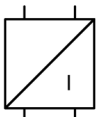
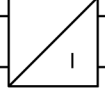
Transformer

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Single-phase transformer with two windings		
Single-phase auto-transformer		
Voltage transformer		
Single-phase transformer with two windings and shield		
Transformer with single-sided center tapping		

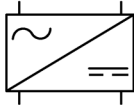
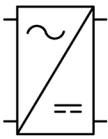
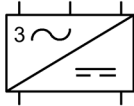
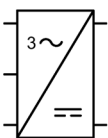
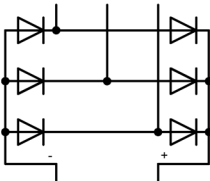
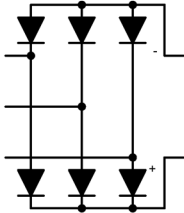
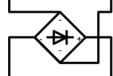
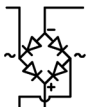
B.5 Graphical symbols and abbreviations in accordance with IEC and UL / NFPA

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Three-phase transformer, delta-wye circuit		
Three-phase transformer, wye-delta circuit		
Three-phase transformer, wye-wye circuit		

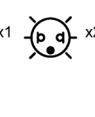
Transducer

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Line filter, three-pole		
Line filter, two-pole		
Optocoupler, 4-wire		
Transmitter, ideal voltage source		
Transmitter, ideal current source		

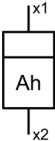
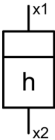
Rectifier

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Rectifier, bridge, two-phase, secondary, 2 connections		
Rectifier, three-phase bridge, three-phase, secondary, 2 connections		
Three-phase bridge connection		
Rectifier in bridge connection		

Signaling devices

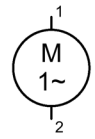
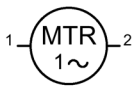
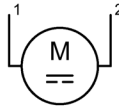
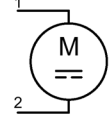
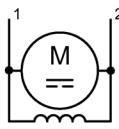
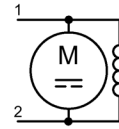
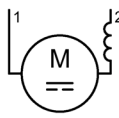
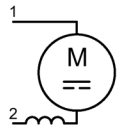
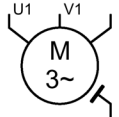
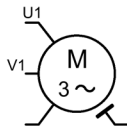
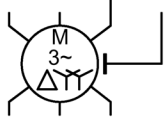
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Lamp / indicator light, general		
Glow lamp		
Light emitting diode (LED), general		
Siren		
Buzzer		
Horn		
Alarm / bell		
Fluorescent lamp without PE		

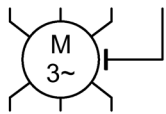
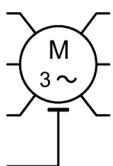
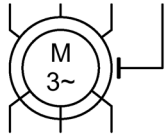
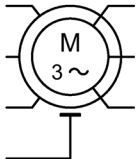
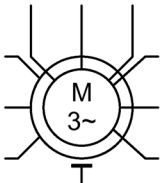
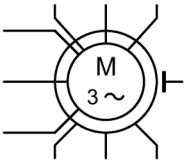
Measuring devices

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Ammeter, indicating, ampere meter		
Voltmeter, indicating		
Meter, amperehour meter		
Meter, operating hours		
Meter, watt-hour meter, electricity meter		

Power loads

Motor

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
AC motor, ventilator/fan		
DC motor, general		
DC shunt-wound motor		
DC series-wound motor		
Three-phase induction motor, one speed		
Three-phase induction motor, wye-delta circuit		

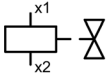
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Three-phase induction motor, one winding, pole-changing, two speeds		
Three-phase induction motor, two separate windings, pole-changing, two speeds		
Three-phase induction motor, two separate windings, pole-changing, three speeds		

Heating

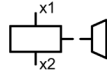
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Heater element		

Valve, brake, coupling

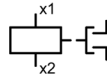
Valve

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Solenoid valve, general		

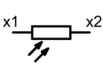
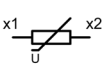
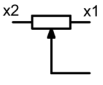
Brake

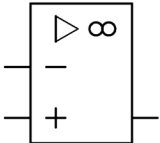
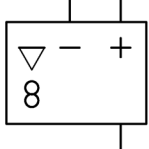
Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Magnetic brake		

Coupling

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Magnetic coupling		

Electronics, logic components

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Capacitor, general		
Inductance / coil / winding / reactor		
Current transformer (path 1)		
Resistor, general		
Photoresistor		
Resistor, modifiable		
Resistor, voltage-dependent / varistor		
Resistor with moving contact / potentiometer		

Description	IEC symbol	ANSI symbol
Semiconductor diode, general		
Thyristor diode, bidirectional, diac		
Z diode, avalanche diode, unidirectional, voltage limiting diode		
Thyristor triode		
Operational amplifier		

Glossary

C

Ambient Temperature

Ambient temperature of the air or another medium in which the electrical equipment is operated.

Appliance

Device for a specific application containing both power circuit components and control circuit components.

Examples include industrial control panel air-conditioning devices.

Approved

"Approved" means acceptance by "Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ)" has been achieved.

Available Fault Current

Max. prospective fault current which can occur at the infeed point of the control panel. The SCCR value marked on the industrial control panel nameplate shall be equal to or greater than the maximum available fault current.

Branch Circuit

Conductors and devices downstream of the last overcurrent protective device protecting the load branch circuit.

Example: Motor branch or heater branch

Branch Circuit Protection

Overcurrent protective device with a pre-defined or set rated current for protecting the load against overcurrents.

In motor branches, overcurrent protection is only required for short-circuits or ground faults. Separate overload protection is required for motor overload protection.

See the term "Overload Protection" in this context.

Branch Circuit Protective Device

The branch circuit protective device is either a circuit breaker in accordance with UL 489 or a fuse in accordance with UL 248-4 ... 12. In motor branch circuits, a motor circuit breaker with separate test can also be used for branch circuit protection.

See the term "Manual self-protected combination motor controller" in this context

Cable

A cable is a combination of conductors insulated from each other and assembled within a shared protective insulation. A cable is not synonymous with a flexible supply cord (see the glossary entry "Cord").

Class 1 Circuit

Control circuit that is protected against overcurrent at a maximum operating voltage ≤ 600 V. The power is not limited by the standard. The control circuit can also be supplied via a power-limiting source such as a control circuit transformer or a power supply.

Class 2 Circuit

Control circuit that is supplied via a source with limited power and whose maximum operating voltage is ≤ 30 V rms. The circuit is designed to operate special components requiring a Class 2 circuit.

Combination Motor Controller

One or more devices in an assembled state that deliver all four required functions for a single motor installation: Disconnecting, short-circuit protection, control, overload protection.

Control Circuit

A circuit that carries the signals for the controller. These circuits are not used for the actual end application and therefore not for the power circuits.

The rated current is limited in most cases to 15 amperes.

Cord

Flexible supply cord consisting of two or more insulated conductors and covered in a protective insulation for protection against mechanical damage.

Enclosed Industrial Control Panel

Industrial control panel that is already provided with an enclosure at the manufacturer.

Equipment

A general term for devices and components used in an electrical installation, for example, materials, devices, instruments, lighting, fixtures, connections, and similar.

Feeder Circuit

All conductors and feeder circuits on the incoming supply side of the branch circuit protection for a load in the power circuit. These include, for example, all upstream circuits of a motor circuit breaker in the power circuit.

Field Wiring

Conductors that are not connected by the panel builder, but instead are connected on-site at the installation location of the control panel or the electrical equipment, for example, incoming supply conductor, or external control circuit devices and main circuit loads outside the industrial control panel.

Field Wiring Terminal

Terminal for terminating field wiring (see Field Wiring).

Fuse for Branch Circuit Protection

Fuses of the class CC, G, H, J, K, L, R and T. These fuses can be used for branch circuit protection.

Fuse, Semiconductor Type

Semiconductor fuses for protecting semiconductor switching devices. These fuses can be used as branch circuit protection for motor circuits containing power conversion equipment, provided the relevant test has been performed.

Fuse, Supplementary Type

Fuses that are used as supplementary protection. These fuses shall not be used as the only source of branch circuit protection.

General-use Rating

Rating specified in volts and amperes that is assigned to a control device that may be used for the following types of loads:

- Devices with a continuous current or inrush current not exceeding the ampere rating of the control device
- With AC ratings, the power factor of the load shall be between 0.75 and 0.80
- Only resistive loads may be operated with AC ratings

Industrial Control Panel

Assembly of two or more components in the power circuit or the control circuit, or a combination of main and control circuits.

Industrial Machinery

A motor-operated machine or group of machines coordinated to process materials. Transport during operation is not possible here. The machines can also contain associated equipment parts here, for example, material transport, tool provision, testing equipment, or packaging systems.

In Sight From (Within Sight From, Within Sight)

This term indicates the distance between two described items of equipment that are within line-of-sight of each other. The distance shall not exceed 15 m (50 ft), and the other item of equipment shall be visible.

Instantaneous Trip Circuit Breaker

Circuit breakers that only have an instantaneous, magnetic trip unit. These circuit breakers may be used for motor branch circuit protection if they are part of Combination Motor controllers, and have been correspondingly tested.

Inverse-time Circuit Breaker

Circuit breakers with both a delayed, thermal trip unit, and an instantaneous, magnetic trip unit. These circuit breakers are generally suitable for branch circuit protection.

Load

Electrical load (equipment) connected in the power circuit.

Low-voltage limited energy circuit

Control circuit with a maximum peak voltage of 42.4 V AC or max. 60 V DC and output current limiting by means of a fuse or by limiting the power of the power supply or control transformer. The power shall be supplied via a battery or a source with galvanic isolation. Voltage dividers are not permissible for supply.

Machine supply circuit

The connecting cable between building installation and the disconnecter unit (see "Machine supply circuit disconnect").

Manual self-protected combination motor controller

A "Self-protected combination motor controller", which, however, can only be operated manually. (See also definition: "Self-protected combination motor controller")

Machine supply circuit disconnect

Disconnecter unit or even the main control switch which disconnects the infeed cable from the industrial control panel.

Motor Starter

An assembly of a motor overload relay and contactor.

Overcurrent Protection

Overcurrent protective device with corresponding technical features to enable safe disconnection of a circuit in the event of overload, short-circuit or ground fault if the current of the circuit exceeds a predetermined value.

Overload Protection

Overload protection for motor circuits to prevent overheating during operation or when starting.

Pilot Duty Rating

Utilization categories for relays in control circuits that themselves control other devices.

Qualified person

A qualified person is a person who is familiar with the design of the electrical equipment, and who has the abilities and knowledge to operate the equipment properly. Safety training is necessary to be able to detect and avoid the accompanying hazards that can arise with the equipment.

Safety Circuit

The part of a control consisting of one or multiple devices (acquisition, evaluation, control) which realizes the safety-oriented functions for the machine safety. (See also "Safety-related Function")

Safety-related Function

A safety-related function that helps to maintain safe operating conditions for machines, or prevents or at least minimizes hazardous situations.

Self-protected combination motor controller

A motor starter protector with short-circuit and overload function. Furthermore a disconnecting device is included and a motor control which can be controlled remotely.

Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR)

Available fault current at a specific voltage that the electrical equipment can withstand without undue damage and under specific criteria.

Supplementary Protection

A device intended to provide additional protection subsequent to the actual branch circuit protective device on the load side. These additional protective devices are not permitted to be used as the sole branch circuit protection.

Surge-Protection Device (SPD)

A protection device which protects devices and components against transient voltage peaks and surge voltages which occur because of network switching operations or lightning strikes.

Tap Conductor

Conductor with an upstream overcurrent protection whose rated value exceeds the maximum current carrying capacity of the conductor.

Tungsten Rating

Ratings for devices that control incandescent lamp loads.

Further Information

Always at your disposal: our extensive support
www.siemens.com/online-support

Published by
Siemens AG

Smart Infrastructure
Electrical Products
Postfach 10 09 53
93009 REGENSBURG, Germany

For the U.S. published by
Siemens Industry Inc.

100 Technology Drive
Alpharetta, GA 30005
United States

Subject to change.

SI EP
Online

